

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations  
and is not a part of the Official Record

## **BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representation of  
The original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,  
please do not report the images to the  
Image Problem Mailbox.**

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

# PCT

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

Applicant's or agent's file reference <b>RJW/LP5791926</b>	<b>FOR FURTHER ACTION</b>		see Notification of Transmittal of International Search Report (Form PCT/ISA/220) as well as, where applicable, item 5 below.
International application No. <b>PCT/GB 99/ 02838</b>	International filing date (day/month/year) <b>27/08/1999</b>	(Earliest) Priority Date (day/month/year) <b>27/08/1998</b>	
Applicant  <b>THE UNIVERSITY OF PORTSMOUTH HIGHER...et al.</b>			

This International Search Report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This International Search Report consists of a total of 6 sheets.

☒ It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

**1. Basis of the report**

a. With regard to the language, the international search was carried out on the basis of the international application in the language in which it was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this item.

☐ the international search was carried out on the basis of a translation of the international application furnished to this Authority (Rule 23.1(b)).

b. With regard to any nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosed in the international application, the international search was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing:

☐ contained in the international application in written form.

☐ filed together with the international application in computer readable form.

☐ furnished subsequently to this Authority in written form.

☐ furnished subsequently to this Authority in computer readable form.

☐ the statement that the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed has been furnished.

☐ the statement that the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing has been furnished.

2. ☒ Certain claims were found unsearchable (See Box I).

3. ☐ Unity of invention is lacking (see Box II).

4. With regard to the title,

☐ the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.

☒ the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:

**PYRROLOBENZODIAZEPINES**

5. With regard to the abstract,

☒ the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.

☐ the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box III. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority.

6. The figure of the drawings to be published with the abstract is Figure No.

☐ as suggested by the applicant.

☐ because the applicant failed to suggest a figure.

☐ because this figure better characterizes the invention.

☒ None of the figures.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/GB 99/ 02838

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claims 38, 40, 41, 43-45  
are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal  
body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged  
effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such  
an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this International application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all  
searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment  
of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report  
covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is  
restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

T/GB 99/02838

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 C07D487/04 A61K31/551 C07D519/00 //(C07D487/04,243:00,  
209:00),(C07D519/00,487:00,487:00)

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07D A61K A61P

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the International search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 90, no. 1, 1979 Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 4427a, H. UMEZAWA ET AL.: "Mazethramycins" page 428; XP002135056 compound IV & JP 07 882792 A (MICROBIOCHEMICAL RESEARCH FOUNDATION) 21 July 1978 (1978-07-21) --- -/--	1,39

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents:

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance  
 "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date  
 "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)  
 "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means  
 "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention  
 "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone  
 "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art  
 "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

10 April 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

03/05/2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
 Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
 Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Alfaro Faus, I



## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

T/GB 99/02838

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	<p>CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 98, no. 9, 1983  Columbus, Ohio, US;  abstract no. 72145x,  FUJISAWA: "Benzodiazepine derivatives"  page 638;  XP002135057  abstract  -&amp; DATABASE CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS 'Online!  Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus, Ohio  CA 98:72145x,  XP002135058  compound with RN 84447-45-0  (1H-pyrrolo'2,1-c!'1,4!benzodiazepine-2,5(3H,11aH)-dione, 8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-)  &amp; JP 57 131791 A (FUJISAWA)  14 August 1982 (1982-08-14)</p>	13
X	<p>GB 1 299 198 A (FUJISAWA)  6 December 1972 (1972-12-06)  example 5</p>	13
X	<p>CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 126, no. 13, 1997  Columbus, Ohio, US;  abstract no. 171573p,  I. O'NEIL ET AL: "The synthesis of functionalized pyrrolo'2,1-!'1,4!benzodiazepines"  page 618;  XP002135261  abstract  -&amp; DATABASE CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS 'Online!  Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus  CA 126:171573,  XP002135263  compounds with RNs  '187337-77-5!, '187083-54-1!, '187083-52-9!,  '187083-50-7!, '187083-49-4!  &amp; SYNLETT,  no. 1, 1997, pages 75-78,</p>	20

-/--

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

T/GB 99/02838

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 114, no. 25, 1991 Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 239940r, J.. FARMER ET AL.: "DNA binding properties of a new class of linked anthramycin analogs" page 25; XP002135262 abstract -& DATABASE CHEMICAL ABSTRACTCS 'Online! Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus CA 114 : 239940r, XP002135264 compounds with RNs '133954-36-6!'133954-35-5! & NUCLEIC ACIDS RES., vol. 19, no. 4, 1991, pages 899-904,	20
X	S.M. COURTNEY ET AL.: "A new convenient procedure for the synthesis of pyrrolo'2,1-c!'1,4!benzodiazepines" TETRAHEDRON LETTERS., vol. 34, no. 33, 1993, pages 5327-28, XP002135259 ELSEVIER SCIENCE PUBLISHERS, AMSTERDAM., NL ISSN: 0040-4039 compound 4b	20
P,X	S.J. GREGSON ET AL.: "Synthesis of a novel C2/C2'-exo unsaturated pyrrolobenzodiazepine cross-linking agent with remarkable DNA binding affinity and cytotoxicity " CHEMICAL COMMUNICATIONS., 1999, pages 797-798, XP002135055 ROYAL SOCIETY OF CHEMISTRY., GB ISSN: 1359-7345 compound 1	13
P,X	O'NEIL I A ET AL: "DPPE: A Convenient Replacement for Triphenylphosphine in the Staudinger and Mitsunobu Reactions" TETRAHEDRON LETTERS,NL,ELSEVIER SCIENCE PUBLISHERS, AMSTERDAM, vol. 39, no. 42, 15 October 1998 (1998-10-15), pages 7787-7790, XP004134309 ISSN: 0040-4039 table 1, compounds 1-5 and 8	20

-/--

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

T/GB 99/02838

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P,X	GUIOTTO A ET AL: "Synthesis of novel C7-aryl substituted pyrrolo'2,1-c!'1,4!benzodiazepines (PBDs) via Pro-N10-troc protection and suzuki coupling" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS,GB,OXFORD, vol. 8, no. 21, 3 November 1998 (1998-11-03), pages 3017-3018, XP004141866 compounds 4a-4d	20
P,X	D.E. THURSTON ET AL.: "Effect of A-ring modifications on the DNA-binding behavior and citotoxicity of pyrrolo'2,1-c!'1,4!benzodiazepines" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 42, 1999, pages 1951-1964, XP002135260 AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY. WASHINGTON., US ISSN: 0022-2623 table 1, compounds 23,29,16b,16a,52,53	20

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

T/GB 99/02838

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
JP 7882792 A		NONE	
GB 1299198 A	06-12-1972	JP 48043755 B	20-12-1973
		BG 19178 A	30-04-1975
		CH 531564 A	15-12-1972
		CH 539062 A	31-08-1973
		ES 375012 A	01-03-1972
		ES 375013 A	01-03-1972
		ES 375014 A	01-03-1972
		ES 375015 A	01-03-1972
		FI 46259 B	31-10-1972
		IE 33906 B	11-12-1974
		IL 33558 A	25-10-1973
		RO 55813 A	01-02-1974
		SU 474148 A	14-06-1975
		US 3692777 A	19-09-1972
		ZA 6908792 A	31-03-1971
		AT 299449 B	15-05-1972
		BE 743875 A	28-05-1970
		BG 20615 A	05-12-1975
		BG 17805 A	25-12-1973
		CA 955595 A	01-10-1974
		DE 1965304 A	23-07-1970
		DK 129169 B	02-09-1974
		FR 2027356 A	25-09-1970
		NL 6919607 A	02-07-1970
		US 3794644 A	26-02-1974

REC'D 27 NOV 2000

PCT

WIPO

PCT

## INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Article 36 and Rule 70)

15

Applicant's or agent's file reference RJW/LP5791926	<b>FOR FURTHER ACTION</b> See Notification of Transmittal of International Preliminary Examination Report (Form PCT/IPEA/416)	
International application No. PCT/GB99/02838	International filing date (day/month/year) 27/08/1999	Priority date (day/month/year) 27/08/1998
International Patent Classification (IPC) or national classification and IPC C07D487/00		
Applicant THE UNIVERSITY OF PORTSMOUTH HIGHER...et al.		

1. This international preliminary examination report has been prepared by this International Preliminary Examining Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 36.



2. This REPORT consists of a total of 8 sheets, including this cover sheet.

- ☒ This report is also accompanied by ANNEXES, i.e. sheets of the description, claims and/or drawings which have been amended and are the basis for this report and/or sheets containing rectifications made before this Authority (see Rule 70.16 and Section 607 of the Administrative Instructions under the PCT).

These annexes consist of a total of 4 sheets.

3. This report contains indications relating to the following items:

- I ☒ Basis of the report
- II ☐ Priority
- III ☒ Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- IV ☐ Lack of unity of invention
- V ☒ Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- VI ☐ Certain documents cited
- VII ☐ Certain defects in the international application
- VIII ☒ Certain observations on the international application

Date of submission of the demand  17/03/2000	Date of completion of this report  23.11.2000
Name and mailing address of the international preliminary examining authority:   European Patent Office D-80298 Munich Tel. +49 89 2399 - 0 Tx: 523656 epmu d Fax: +49 89 2399 - 4465	Authorized officer  Baston, E  Telephone No. +49 89 2399 2120  

# INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No. PCT/GB99/02838

## I. Basis of the report

1. This report has been drawn on the basis of *(substitute sheets which have been furnished to the receiving Office in response to an invitation under Article 14 are referred to in this report as "originally filed" and are not annexed to the report since they do not contain amendments (Rules 70.16 and 70.17).):*

### Description, pages:

1-214 as originally filed

### Claims, No.:

1-7,12 (part),13-15, as received on 03/07/2000 with letter of 29/06/2000  
28 (part),29-44

8-11,12 (part),16-27, as received on 21/08/2000 with letter of 17/08/2000  
28 (part)

### Drawings, sheets:

1/32-32/32 as originally filed

2. With regard to the **language**, all the elements marked above were available or furnished to this Authority in the language in which the international application was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this item.

These elements were available or furnished to this Authority in the following language: , which is:

- ☐ the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of the international search (under Rule 23.1(b)).
- ☐ the language of publication of the international application (under Rule 48.3(b)).
- ☐ the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international preliminary examination (under Rule 55.2 and/or 55.3).

3. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, the international preliminary examination was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing:

- ☐ contained in the international application in written form.
- ☐ filed together with the international application in computer readable form.
- ☐ furnished subsequently to this Authority in written form.
- ☐ furnished subsequently to this Authority in computer readable form.
- ☐ The statement that the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed has been furnished.
- ☐ The statement that the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing has been furnished.

# INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No. PCT/GB99/02838

4. The amendments have resulted in the cancellation of:

- ☐ the description, pages:
- ☐ the claims, Nos.:
- ☐ the drawings, sheets:

5. ☐ This report has been established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been considered to go beyond the disclosure as filed (Rule 70.2(c)):

*(Any replacement sheet containing such amendments must be referred to under item 1 and annexed to this report.)*

6. Additional observations, if necessary:

## III. Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability

The questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non-obvious), or to be industrially applicable have not been examined in respect of:

- ☐ the entire international application.
- ☒ claims Nos. 37,43,44 "with respect to industrial applicability".

because:

- ☒ the said international application, or the said claims Nos. 37,43,44 relate to the following subject matter which does not require an international preliminary examination (*specify*):  
**see separate sheet**
- ☐ the description, claims or drawings (*indicate particular elements below*) or said claims Nos. are so unclear that no meaningful opinion could be formed (*specify*):
- ☐ the claims, or said claims Nos. are so inadequately supported by the description that no meaningful opinion could be formed.
- ☐ no international search report has been established for the said claims Nos. .

2. A meaningful international preliminary examination report cannot be carried out due to the failure of the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listing to comply with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions:

- ☐ the written form has not been furnished or does not comply with the standard.
- ☐ the computer readable form has not been furnished or does not comply with the standard.

## V. Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability;

# INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No. PCT/GB99/02838

## **citations and explanations supporting such statement**

### 1. Statement

Novelty (N)	Yes:	Claims	1-11,15-18,20-36,40,42-44
	No:	Claims	12-14,19,37,38,39,41
Inventive step (IS)	Yes:	Claims	1-11,15-18,20-36,40,42-44
	No:	Claims	
Industrial applicability (IA)	Yes:	Claims	1-36,38-42
	No:	Claims	

### 2. Citations and explanations **see separate sheet**

## **VIII. Certain observations on the international application**

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:  
**see separate sheet**



**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/GB99/02838

**To section III**

Claims 37,43 and 44 relate to subject-matter considered by this Authority to be covered by the provisions of Rule 67.1(iv) PCT. Consequently, no opinion will be formulated with respect to the industrial applicability of the subject-matter of these claims (Article 34(4)(a)(i) PCT).

**To section V**

The following documents were cited in the search report and were taken into consideration for the examination of the present application:

- D1: CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 90, no. 1, 1979 Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 4427a, H. UMEZAWA ET AL.: 'Mazethramycins' page 428; XP002135056 & JP 07 882792 A (MICROBIOCHEMICAL RESEARCH FOUNDATION) 21 July 1978 (1978-07-21)
- D2: CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 98, no. 9, 1983 Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 72145x, FUJISAWA: 'Benzodiazepine derivatives' page 638; XP002135057 -& DATABASE CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS [Online] Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus, Ohio CA 98:72145x, XP002135058 & JP 57 131791 A (FUJISAWA) 14 August 1982 (1982-08-14)
- D3: GB-A-1 299 198 (FUJISAWA) 6 December 1972 (1972-12-06)
- D4: CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 126, no. 13, 1997 Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 171573p, I. O'NEIL ET AL.: 'The synthesis of functionalized pyrrolo[2,1-][1,4]benzodiazepines' page 618; XP002135261 -& DATABASE CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS [Online] Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus CA 126:171573, XP002135263 & SYNLETT, no. 1, 1997, pages 75-78,
- D5: CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 114, no. 25, 1991 Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 239940r, J.. FARMER ET AL.: 'DNA binding properties of a new class of linked anthramycin analogs' page 25; XP002135262 -& DATABASE CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS [Online] Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus CA 114 : 239940r, XP002135264 & NUCLEIC ACIDS RES., vol. 19, no. 4, 1991, pages 899-904,
- D6: S.M. COURTNEY ET AL.: 'A new convenient procedure for the synthesis of pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepines' TETRAHEDRON LETTERS., vol. 34, no. 33, 1993, pages 5327-28, XP002135259 ELSEVIER SCIENCE PUBLISHERS, AMSTERDAM., NL ISSN: 0040-4039

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/GB99/02838

The subject-matter of claims 1-11, 15-18 and 20-36 is novel (Art. 33(2) PCT) due to important structural differences in comparison to the prior art mainly with respect to the substituents in position 2 of the pyrrolo-benzodiazepine moiety.

The subject-matter of claims 12-14 is not novel (Art. 33(2) PCT), since a compound falling in the scope of these claims is already anticipated by the prior art, as indicated below:

D3: Compound, page 7, 2nd column, line 123-126.

Claim 19 is not novel in view of document D4 (page 76, table 1, compounds entry 1-4 and 6-8).

Claims 37 and 39 are not novel (Art. 33(2) PCT), since D3 (page 1, column 1, line 10-34) and D4 (page 75, 1st column, 2nd paragraph) already state the usefulness of compounds of claims 1-36 for the treatment of e.g. tumor diseases.

Claim 38 is not novel, since compounds suitable as pharmaceutical compositions are already mentioned in the prior art:

D3: Compound, page 7, 2nd column, line 123-126.

D4: Compounds entry 1-4 and 6-8, page 76, table 1.

Claim 40 is novel (Art. 33(2) PCT), since the prior art does not mention the usefulness of these compounds for the treatment of e.g. viral infections.

Claim 40 involves an inventive step (Art. 33(3) PCT), since the prior art does not provide any indication for e.g. a possible antiviral or antibacterial effect.

Claim 41 is not novel, since the following documents disclose processes for the preparation of compounds falling in the scope of some of claims 1 to 37:

D3: Example 5; D4: Scheme 1.

The subject-matter of claims 42-44 is considered novel (Art. 33(2) PCT), since the use of compounds and the method for treating cisplatin-refactory diseases is not anticipated by the prior art.

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/GB99/02838

Claims 42-44 are considered to involve an inventive step (Art. 33(3) PCT), since the prior art does not provide an indication for such methods or such a use.

The subject-matter of claims 1-11, 15-18,20-35 is considered to involve an inventive step (Art. 33.3 PCT), since no document of the prior art provides an indication to modify related structures to arrive at the claimed compounds for use as e.g. antitumor agents.

For the assessment of the present claims 37,43 and 44 on the question whether they are industrially applicable, no unified criteria exist in the PCT Contracting States. The patentability can also be dependent upon the formulation of the claims. The EPO, for example, does not recognize as industrially applicable the subject-matter of claims to the use of a compound in medical treatment, but may allow, however, claims to a known compound for first use in medical treatment and the use of such a compound for the manufacture of a medicament for a new medical treatment.

**To section VIII**

Description

The conclusion (page 205, line 14-15) concerning the effects of compound UP2001 is not clear (Art. 6 PCT), since it does not correlate with the results indicated in the table on page 204.

Claims

In view of the large number of compounds which are encompassed in certain claims due to unlimited expressions, it is not credible, that they all represent a solution to the problem underlying in the application (Art. 6 PCT, Guidelines PCT III 6.3, 6.5):

e.g. Claim 1( line 16), claim 12 (line 3), claim 19 (line 24), claim 24 (line 12/13), claim 28 : "functional group";

Claim 29: "nitrogen protecting group";

Claim 30: "electron withdrawing group".

Drawings

The structures of compounds 9 and 10 in figure 1 (1/32) are not correctly drawn, since a nitrogen atom should be present in position 4 and not a carbon.

Page 24/32 and page 26/32 both represent the same synthetic scheme (figure 24) and

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/GB99/02838

one figure has to be deleted.

The numbering of the compounds in the drawings is not clear (Art. 6 PCT), since for the biological testings UP-numbers are employed, which are not always indicated in the figures.

217

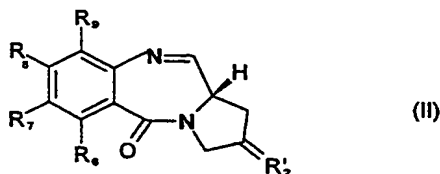
8. A compound according to claim 6, wherein  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are OR, and  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  are H.

9. A compound according to claim 8, wherein  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are independently either OMe or  $OCH_2Ph$ .

10. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims of formula Ia.

11. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims which is a dimer, wherein the dimer bridge is of the formula  $-O-(CH_2)_q-O-$ , where  $q$  is from 1 to 12.

12. A compound of formula II:



wherein:

$R'_2$  is selected from: O,  $CHR''_2$ , where  $R''_2$  is selected from H, R,  $CO_2R$ , COR, CHO,  $CO_2H$ , halo;

$R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_9$  are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ ;

where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or

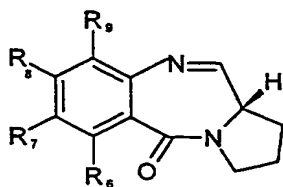
219

16. A compound according to claim 14, wherein  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are independently OR or a halogen atom and  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  are H.

5 17. A compound according to claim 16, wherein  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are independently selected from OMe,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{Ph}$  or I.

10 18. A compound according to any one of claims 12 to 17 which is a dimer, wherein the dimer bridge is of the formula  $-\text{O}-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}-$ , where  $q$  is from 1 to 12.

19. A compound of the formula III:



(III)

wherein:

15  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_9$  are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $\text{Me}_3\text{Sn}$ ;

where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple  
20 bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group;

220

and  $R_8$  is selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ , where R is as defined above or the compound is a dimer with each monomer being the same or different and being of formula III, where the  $R_8$  groups of the monomers form together a bridge having the  
5 formula  $-X-R'-X-$  linking the monomers, where  $R'$  is an alkylene chain containing from 3 to 12 carbon atoms, which chain may be interrupted by one or more hetero-atoms and/or aromatic rings and may contain one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or N; or  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  together form a  
10 group  $-O-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where p is 1 or 2; wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are not H; except that:

(i) when  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  are H,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are not both OMe, OMe and OBn respectively, or OMe and OH respectively;

15 (ii) when  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  are H,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are not Me and OH respectively;

(iii) when three of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are H, the other is not Me;

(iv) when  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$  are H,  $R_9$  is not OMe;

20 (v) when  $R_6$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are H,  $R_7$  is not OMe; and

(vi) when  $R_6$ , and  $R_9$  are H and  $R_7$  is OMe, the compound is not a dimer.

20. A compound according to claim 19, wherein only one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$   
25 and  $R_9$  is H.

21. A compound according to claim 20, wherein those of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_9$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  which are not H are OR.

## 221

22. A compound according to claim 21, wherein those of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  which are not H are selected from OMe, and OBn.

5 23. A compound according to either claim 19 or claim 20, wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  is  $\text{NH}_2$ .

10 24. A compound according to claim 19, claim 20 or claim 23, wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  is an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, which is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally contains one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group.

15 25. A compound according to claim 24, wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$ , is a phenyl group, optionally substituted by one or more methoxy, ethoxy or nitro groups.

20 26. A compound according to claim 25, wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$ , is selected from: Ph, p-MeO-Ph, m-NO<sub>2</sub>-Ph and p-NO<sub>2</sub>-Ph.

25 27. A compound according to any one of claims 19 to 26 where the compound is a dimer, wherein the dimer bridge is of the formula  $-\text{O}-(\text{CH}_2)_q-\text{O}-$ , where q is from 1 to 12.

28. A compound of formula IV:



## PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

NOTIFICATION OF THE RECORDING  
OF A CHANGE(PCT Rule 92bis.1 and  
Administrative Instructions, Section 422)

To:

WATSON, Robert, J.  
Mewburn Ellis  
York House  
23 Kingsway  
London WC2B 6HP  
ROYAUME-UNI

<b>Date of mailing</b> (day/month/year) 22 January 2001 (22.01.01)	<b>IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION</b>
<b>Applicant's or agent's file reference</b> RJW/LP5791926	
<b>International application No.</b> PCT/GB99/02838	<b>International filing date</b> (day/month/year) 27 August 1999 (27.08.99)

1. The following indications appeared on record concerning:		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the applicant	<input type="checkbox"/> the inventor	<input type="checkbox"/> the agent
<input type="checkbox"/> the common representative		
Name and Address THE UNIVERSITY OF PORTSMOUTH HIGHER EDUCATION CORPORATION University House Winston Churchill Avenue Portsmouth PO1 2UP United Kingdom	State of Nationality GB	State of Residence GB
	Telephone No.	
	Facsimile No.	
	Teleprinter No.	
2. The International Bureau hereby notifies the applicant that the following change has been recorded concerning:		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the person	<input type="checkbox"/> the name	<input type="checkbox"/> the address
<input type="checkbox"/> the nationality		
<input type="checkbox"/> the residence		
Name and Address SPIROGEN LIMITED 79 George Street Ryde Isle of Wight PO33 2JF United Kingdom	State of Nationality GB	State of Residence GB
	Telephone No.	
	Facsimile No.	
	Teleprinter No.	
3. Further observations, if necessary:		
4. A copy of this notification has been sent to:		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the receiving Office	<input type="checkbox"/> the designated Offices concerned	
<input type="checkbox"/> the International Searching Authority	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the elected Offices concerned	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the International Preliminary Examining Authority	<input type="checkbox"/> other:	

<b>The International Bureau of WIPO</b> 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland	<b>Authorized officer</b>  R. Chrem
Facsimile No.: (41-22) 740.14.35	Telephone No.: (41-22) 338.83.38

## PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

NOTIFICATION OF THE RECORDING  
OF A CHANGE(PCT Rule 92bis.1 and  
Administrative Instructions, Section 422)

To:

WATSON, Robert, J.  
Mewburn Ellis  
York House  
23 Kingsway  
London WC2B 6HP  
ROYAUME-UNI

Date of mailing (day/month/year) 10 April 2000 (10.04.00)	IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION
Applicant's or agent's file reference RJW/LP5791926	
International application No. PCT/GB99/02838	International filing date (day/month/year) 27 August 1999 (27.08.99)

1. The following indications appeared on record concerning:

☒ the applicant    ☒ the inventor    ☐ the agent    ☐ the common representative

Name and Address

THURSTON, David, Edwin  
University of Portsmouth  
St Michael's Building  
White Swan Road  
Portsmouth  
Hampshire PO1 2UP  
United Kingdom

State of Nationality

GB

State of Residence

GB

Telephone No.

Facsimile No.

Teleprinter No.

2. The International Bureau hereby notifies the applicant that the following change has been recorded concerning:

☐ the person    ☐ the name    ☒ the address    ☐ the nationality    ☐ the residence

Name and Address

THURSTON, David, Edwin  
Cancer Research Campaign  
Experimental Cancer Chemotherapy  
Laboratories  
University of Nottingham  
University Park, Nottingham  
Nottinghamshire NG7 2RD  
United Kingdom

State of Nationality

GB

State of Residence

GB

Telephone No.

Facsimile No.

Teleprinter No.

3. Further observations, if necessary:

4. A copy of this notification has been sent to:

☒ the receiving Office    ☒ the designated Offices concerned  
☐ the International Searching Authority    ☐ the elected Offices concerned  
☐ the International Preliminary Examining Authority    ☐ other:

The International Bureau of WIPO  
34, chemin des Colombettes  
1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland

Facsimile No.: (41-22) 740.14.35

Authorized officer

Ting Zhao

Telephone No.: (41-22) 338.83.38

## TENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

## NOTIFICATION OF ELECTION

(PCT Rule 61.2)

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

Assistant Commissioner for Patents  
United States Patent and Trademark  
Office  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C.20231  
ETATS-UNIS D'AMERIQUE

in its capacity as elected Office

<b>Date of mailing</b> (day/month/year) 18 April 2000 (18.04.00)	
<b>International application No.</b> PCT/GB99/02838	<b>Applicant's or agent's file reference</b> RJW/LP5791926
<b>International filing date</b> (day/month/year) 27 August 1999 (27.08.99)	<b>Priority date</b> (day/month/year) 27 August 1998 (27.08.98)
<b>Applicant</b> THURSTON, David, Edwin et al	

1. The designated Office is hereby notified of its election made:

☒ in the demand filed with the International Preliminary Examining Authority on:

17 March 2000 (17.03.00)

☐ in a notice effecting later election filed with the International Bureau on:
2. The election ☒ was
☐ was not

made before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date or, where Rule 32 applies, within the time limit under Rule 32.2(b).

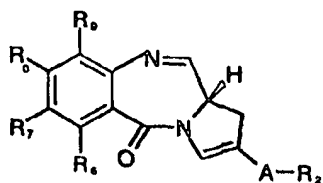
<p>The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland</p> <p>Facsimile No.: (41-22) 740.14.35</p>	<p>Authorized officer</p> <p>S. Mafla</p> <p>Telephone No.: (41-22) 338.83.38</p>
--	---



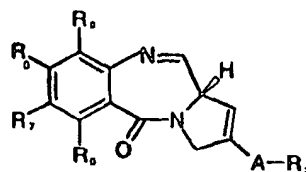
## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>7</sup> : <b>C07D 487/00</b>	<b>A2</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 00/12508</b> (43) International Publication Date: 9 March 2000 (09.03.00)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/GB99/02838 (22) International Filing Date: 27 August 1999 (27.08.99) (30) Priority Data: 9818733.9                      27 August 1998 (27.08.98)                      GB 9901929.1                      28 January 1999 (28.01.99)                      GB (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): THE UNIVERSITY OF PORTSMOUTH HIGHER EDUCATION CORPORATION [GB/GB]; University House, Winston Churchill Avenue, Portsmouth PO1 2UP (GB). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): THURSTON, David, Edwin [GB/GB]; University of Portsmouth, St Michael's Building, White Swan Road, Portsmouth, Hampshire PO21 2UP (GB). HOWARD, Philip, Wilson [GB/GB]; University of Portsmouth, St Michael's Building, White Swan Road, Portsmouth, Hampshire PO1 2DT (GB). (74) Agents: WATSON, Robert, J. et al.; Mewbum Ellis, York House, 23 Kingsway, London WC2B 6HP (GB).	(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.</i>	

(54) Title: COMPOUNDS



(Ia)



(Ib)

## (57) Abstract

Compounds of formula (Ia) and (Ib) wherein A is CH<sub>2</sub>, or a single bond; R<sub>2</sub> is selected from: R, OH, OR, CO<sub>2</sub>H, CO<sub>2</sub>R, COH, COR, SO<sub>2</sub>R, CN; R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn; and R<sub>8</sub> is selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn, where R is as defined above, or the compound is a dimer with each monomer being the same or different and being of formula (Ia) or (Ib), where the R<sub>8</sub> groups of the monomers form together a bridge having the formula -X-R'-X- linking the monomers, where R' is an alkylene chain containing from 3 to 12 carbon atoms, which chain may be interrupted by one or more hetero-atoms and/or aromatic rings and may contain one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or N; except that in a compound of formula (Ia) when A is a single bond, then R<sub>2</sub> is not CH=CH(CONH<sub>2</sub>) or CH=CH(CONMe<sub>2</sub>). Other related compounds are also disclosed.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

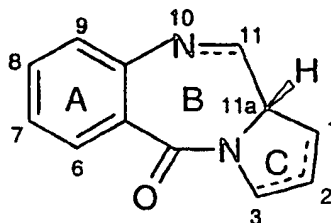
AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

COMPOUNDS

The present invention relates to pyrrolobenzodiazepines (PBDs).

Background to the invention

- 5 Some pyrrolobenzodiazepines (PBDs) have the ability to recognise and bond to specific sequences of DNA; the preferred sequence is PuGpu. The first PBD antitumour antibiotic, anthramycin, was discovered in 1965 (Leimgruber et al., 1965 *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **87**, 5793-5795; Leimgruber et al., 1965 *J.*  
10 *Am. Chem. Soc.*, **87**, 5791-5793). Since then, a number of naturally occurring PBDs have been reported, and over 10 synthetic routes have been developed to a variety of analogues (Thurston et al., 1994 *Chem. Rev.* **1994**, 433-465). Family members include abbeymycin (Hochlowski et al., 1987 *J.*  
15 *Antibiotics*, **40**, 145-148), chicamycin (Konishi et al., 1984 *J. Antibiotics*, **37**, 200-206), DC-81 (Japanese Patent 58-180 487; Thurston et al., 1990, *Chem. Brit.*, **26**, 767-772; Bose et al., 1992 *Tetrahedron*, **48**, 751-758), mazethramycin (Kuminoto et al., 1980 *J. Antibiotics*, **33**, 665-667), neothramycins A and B  
20 (Takeuchi et al., 1976 *J. Antibiotics*, **29**, 93-96), porothramycin (Tsunakawa et al., 1988 *J. Antibiotics*, **41**, 1366-1373), prothracarcin (Shimizu et al., 1982 *J. Antibiotics*, **29**, 2492-2503; Langley and Thurston, 1987 *J. Org. Chem.*, **52**, 91-97), sibanomicin (DC-102) (Hara et al., 1988 *J. Antibiotics*,  
25 **41**, 702-704; Itoh et al., 1988 *J. Antibiotics*, **41**, 1281-1284), sibiromycin (Leber et al., 1988 *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **110**, 2992-2993) and tomamycin (Arima et al., 1972 *J. Antibiotics*, **25**, 437-444). PBDs are of the general structure:

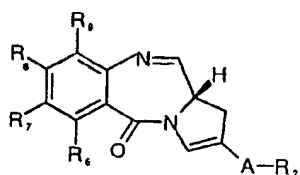


- 30 They differ in the number, type and position of substituents, in both their aromatic A rings and pyrrolo C rings, and in the degree of saturation of the C ring. In the B-ring there is

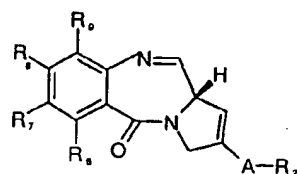
either an imine (N=C), a carbinolamine (NH-CH(OH)), or a carbinolamine methyl ether (NH-CH(OMe)) at the N10-C11 position which is the electrophilic centre responsible for alkylating DNA. All of the known natural products have an (S)-configuration at the chiral C11a position which provides them with a right-handed twist when viewed from the C ring towards the A ring. This gives them the appropriate three-dimensional shape for isohelicity with the minor groove of B-form DNA, leading to a snug fit at the binding site (Kohn, 1975 In *Antibiotics III*. Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 3-11 ; Hurley and Needham-VanDevanter, 1986 *Acc. Chem. Res.*, **19**, 230-237). Their ability to form an adduct in the minor groove, enables them to interfere with DNA processing, hence their use as antitumour agents.

#### 15 Disclosure of the invention

A first aspect of the present invention is a compound with the formula **Ia** or **Ib**:



(Ia)



(Ib)

wherein:

A is CH<sub>2</sub>, or a single bond;

20 R<sub>2</sub> is selected from: R, OH, OR, CO<sub>2</sub>H, CO<sub>2</sub>R, COH, COR, SO<sub>2</sub>R, CN;  
R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn;

where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group (i.e. an alkyl group with one or more aryl substituents), preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy,

amino, or nitro groups, and optionally containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group; or  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  together form a group  $-O-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where  $p$  is 1 or 2;

5 and  $R_8$  is selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ , where R is as defined above, or the compound is a dimer with each monomer being the same or different and being of formula **Ia** or **Ib**, where the  $R_8$  groups of the monomers form together a bridge having the formula  $-X-R'-X-$  linking the  
10 monomers, where  $R'$  is an alkylene chain containing from 3 to 12 carbon atoms, which chain may be interrupted by one or more hetero-atoms and/or aromatic rings, e.g. benzene or pyridine, and may contain one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or N;  
15 except that in a compound of formula **Ia** when A is a single bond, then  $R_2$  is not  $CH=CH(CONH_2)$  or  $CH=CH(CONMe_2)$ .

If A is a single bond then  $R_2$  is bonded directly to the C-ring of the PBD.

20 If R is an aryl group, and contains a hetero atom, then R is a heterocyclic group. If R is an alkyl chain, and contains a hetero atom, the hetero atom may be located anywhere in the alkyl chain, e.g.  $-O-C_2H_5$ ,  $-CH_2-S-CH_3$ , or may form part of or be a functional group e.g. carbonyl, hydroxy.

25 It is preferred that in a compound of formula **Ia** when A is a single bond, then  $R_2$  is not  $CH=CR^A R^B$ , where  $R^A$  and  $R^B$  are independently selected from H,  $R^C$ ,  $COR^C$ ,  $CONH_2$ ,  $CONHR^C$ ,  $CONR^C$ , cyano or phosphonate, where  $R^C$  is an unsubstituted alkyl group having 1 to 4 carbon atoms.

30 R is preferably selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, or an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups. It is more preferred that R is selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms  
35 optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or



nitro groups. It is particularly preferred that R is an unsubstituted straight or branched chain alkyl, having 1 to 10, preferably 1 to 6, and more preferably 1 to 4, carbon atoms, e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, n-butyl or t-butyl.

- 5 Alternatively,  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  may preferably be independently selected from R groups with the following structural characteristics:
- (i) an optionally substituted phenyl group;
  - (ii) an optionally substituted ethenyl group;
  - 10 (iii) an ethenyl group conjugated to an electron sink.

The term 'electron sink' means a moiety covalently attached to a compound which is capable of reducing electron density in other parts of the compound. Examples of electron sinks include cyano, carbonyl and ester groups.

- 15 It may be preferred that A is  $\text{CH}_2$  and/or that  $R_1$  is  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , or  $\text{CH}_2\text{OR}$ . It may be further preferred that  $R_1$  is  $\text{CO}_2\text{Me}$ ,  $\text{CO}_2^t\text{Bu}$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , or  $\text{CH}_2\text{OAc}$ .

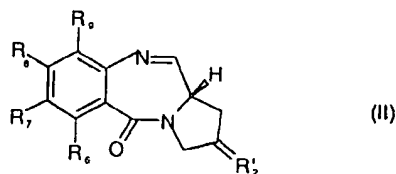
- $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$ , unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  are preferably selected from H and OR, and more particularly H, OMe and  $\text{OCH}_2\text{Ph}$ . It is further preferred that  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are OR, more preferably OMe or  $\text{OCH}_2\text{Ph}$ , and that  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  are H.
- 20

- If A is a single bond, then  $R_2$  is preferably an aryl group, eg Ph, p-MeO-Ph, or an alkyl or alkaryl group which contains at least one double bond which forms part of a conjugated system with the double bond of the C-ring, eg  $\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ,  $\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_3$ .
- 25

Compounds of the first aspect of the invention are preferably of formula Ia.

- If the compound of formula Ia or Ib is a dimer, the dimer bridge may be of the formula  $-\text{O}-(\text{CH}_2)_p-\text{O}-$ , where p is from 1 to 12, more preferably 3 to 9.
- 30

A second aspect of the present invention is a compound with the formula **II**:



wherein:

5  $R'_2$  is selected from: O,  $CHR''_2$ , where  $R''_2$  is selected from H, R,  $CO_2R$ , COR, CHO,  $CO_2H$ , halo;

$R_4$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ ;

where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group (i.e. an alkyl group with one or more aryl substituents), preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group;

and  $R_8$  is selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ , where R is as defined above or the compound is a dimer with each monomer being the same or different and being of formula **II**, where the  $R_8$  groups of the monomers form together a bridge having the formula  $-X-R'-X-$  linking the monomers, where  $R'$  is an alkylene chain containing from 3 to 12 carbon atoms, which chain may be interrupted by one or more hetero-atoms and/or aromatic rings, e.g. benzene or pyridine, and may contain one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or N; or  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  together form a group  $-O-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where p is 1 or 2; except that:

- 30 (i) when  $R'_2$  is CH-Et, and  $R_4$ ,  $R_6$  and  $R_8$  are H,  $R_7$  is not sibirosamine pyranoside; and
- (ii) when  $R'_2$  is CH-Me, and  $R_6$  and  $R_8$  are H,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are not both H or both OMe, or OMe and OH respectively.

If R is an aryl group, and contains a hetero atom, then R is a heterocyclic group. If R is an alkyl chain, and contains a hetero atom, the hetero atom may be located anywhere in the alkyl chain, e.g.  $-O-C_2H_5$ ,  $-CH_2-S-CH_3$ , or may form part of or be a functional group e.g. carbonyl, hydroxy.

R is preferably selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, or an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups. It is more preferred that R is selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups. It is particularly preferred that R is an unsubstituted straight or branched chain alkyl, having 1 to 10, preferably 1 to 6, and more preferably 1 to 4, carbon atoms, e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, n-butyl or t-butyl.

Alternatively,  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$ , and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  may preferably be independently selected from R groups with the following structural characteristics:

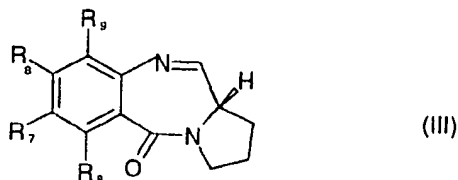
- (i) an optionally substituted phenyl group;
- (ii) an optionally substituted ethenyl group;
- (iii) an ethenyl group conjugated to an electron sink.

$R'_1$  is preferably O,  $CH_2$  or  $CHCH_3$ , and more preferably  $CH_2$  or  $CHCH_3$ .

$R_6$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$ , and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  are preferably selected from H and OR and a halogen atom, and more particularly H, OMe and  $OCH_2Ph$ , and I. It is further preferred that  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are OR or a halogen atom, more preferably OMe,  $OCH_2Ph$  or I, and that  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  are H. Most preferably  $R_9$  is BnO.

If the compound of formula II is a dimer, the dimer bridge may be of the formula  $-O-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where p is from 1 to 12, more preferably 3 to 9, and most preferably 3 to 5.

A third aspect of the present invention is a compound with the formula **III**:



wherein:

$R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ ;  
 where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group (i.e. an alkyl group with one or more aryl substituents), preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group;  
 and  $R_9$  is selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ , where R is as defined above or the compound is a dimer with each monomer being the same or different and being of formula **III**, where the  $R_9$  groups of the monomer form together a bridge having the formula  $-X-R'-X-$  linking the monomers, where  $R'$  is an alkylene chain containing from 3 to 12 carbon atoms, which chain may be interrupted by one or more hetero-atoms and/or aromatic rings, e.g. benzene or pyridine, and may contain one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or N; or  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  together form a group  $-O-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where p is 1 or 2; wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are not H; except that:

- (i) when  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  are H,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are not both OMe, OMe and OBn respectively, or OMe and OH respectively;
- (ii) when  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  are H,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are not Me and OH respectively;
- (iii) when three of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are H, the other is not Me;

- (iv) when  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$  are H,  $R_9$  is not OMe;
- (v) when  $R_6$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are H,  $R_7$  is not OMe; and
- (vi) when  $R_6$ , and  $R_9$  are H and  $R_7$  is OMe, the compound is not a dimer.

- 5 If R is an aryl group, and contains a hetero atom, then R is a heterocyclic group. If R is an alkyl chain, and contains a hetero atom, the hetero atom may be located anywhere in the alkyl chain, e.g.  $-O-C_2H_5$ ,  $-CH_2-S-CH_3$ , or may form part of or be a functional group e.g. carbonyl, hydroxy.
- 10 R is preferably selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, or an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups. It is more preferred that R is
- 15 selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups. It is particularly preferred that R is an unsubstituted straight or branched chain alkyl, having 1 to 10, preferably 1 to 6, and more preferably 1 to 4, carbon
- 20 atoms, e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, n-butyl or t-butyl.

Alternatively,  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$ , may preferably be independently selected from R groups with the following structural characteristics:

- (i) an optionally substituted phenyl group;
- 25 (ii) an optionally substituted ethenyl group;
- (iii) an ethenyl group conjugated to an electron sink.

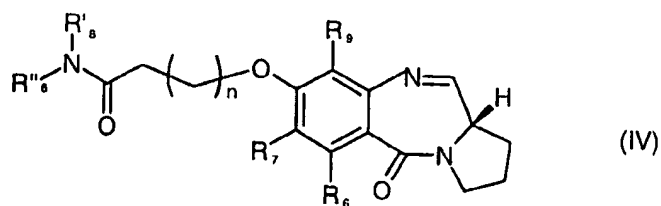
It is preferred that either:

- (i) only one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  is H; or
- (ii) at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$ , and  $R_9$  is  $NH_2$ ; or
- 30 (iii) at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  is an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, which is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally contains one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group.

If only one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$ , it is further preferred that the A-ring substituents (i.e. those of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  which are not H) are OR, and are more preferably selected from OMe, and OBn.

- 5 If at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  is an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, which is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally contains one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group, it is further  
10 preferred that at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$ , is a phenyl group optionally substituted by one or more methoxy, ethoxy or nitro groups, although the nitro groups are less preferred. More preferably, the aryl group is selected from: Ph and p-MeO-Ph.
- 15 If the compound of formula III is a dimer, the dimer bridge may be of the formula  $-O-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where p is from 1 to 12, more preferably 3 to 9. Also in this case, it is preferred that  $R_6$  and  $R_8$  are H, and  $R_7$  is an alkoxy or aryloxy group.

20 A fourth aspect of the present invention provides a compound with the formula IV:



wherein:

- $R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ ;  
where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or  
25 an aralkyl group (i.e. an alkyl group with one or more aryl substituents), preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms;

and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group;

- 5      $R_8'$  and  $R_8''$  are either independently selected from H, R or together form a cyclic amine; and  
n is from 1 to 7.

10     If  $R_8'$  and  $R_8''$  form a cyclic amine, then there is usually a single N atom in a ring which is otherwise carbocyclic and is preferably 5- or 6- membered and may be saturated or unsaturated. The ring may be fused to another ring system which may be aromatic, e.g. being a benzene ring. Thus for example the cyclic amine may be an indolyl or isoindolyl group. It is also possible that the cyclic amine contains one  
15     or more hetero atoms, in addition to N in the amine ring and/or in a fused ring and may also be substituted by one or more R groups.

20     If R is an aryl group, and contains a hetero atom, then R is a heterocyclic group. If R is an alkyl chain, and contains a hetero atom, the hetero atom may be located anywhere in the alkyl chain, e.g.  $-O-C_2H_5$ ,  $-CH_2-S-CH_3$ , or may form part of or be a functional group e.g. carbonyl, hydroxy.

25     R is preferably selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, or an aryl group, preferably of up to 12 carbon atoms, optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups. It is more preferred that R is selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or  
30     nitro groups. It is particularly preferred that R is an unsubstituted straight or branched chain alkyl, having 1 to 10, preferably 1 to 6, and more preferably 1 to 4, carbon atoms, e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, n-butyl or t-butyl.

35     It may be preferred that one of  $R'$ , and  $R''$ , is a nitrogen protecting group, such as Fmoc.

R<sub>1</sub> is preferably an electron donating group, and is more preferably of the formula OR; particularly preferred are the groups OMe, OEt, and OBn. The term 'electron donating group' means a moiety covalently attached to a compound which is capable of increasing electron density in other parts of the compound.

In addition R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>3</sub> are more preferably selected from H and OR; particularly preferred are OMe, OEt and OBn.

Alternatively, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> may preferably be independently selected from R groups with the following structural characteristics:

- (i) an optionally substituted phenyl group;
- (ii) an optionally substituted ethenyl group;
- (iii) an ethenyl group conjugated to an electron sink.

n is preferably 1 to 3, and more preferably 1.

A fifth aspect of the present invention is the use of a compound as described in the first, second, third or fourth aspects of the invention in a method of therapy. Conditions which may be treated include gene-based diseases, including, for example, neoplastic diseases and Alzheimer's Disease, and also bacterial, parasitic and viral infections. Any condition which may be treated by the regulation of gene expression may be treated using compounds of the invention. In accordance with this aspect of the present invention, the compounds provided may be administered to individuals. Administration is preferably in a "therapeutically effective amount", this being sufficient to show benefit to a patient. Such benefit may be at least amelioration of at least one symptom. The actual amount administered, and rate and time-course of administration, will depend on the nature and severity of what is being treated. Prescription of treatment, e.g. decisions on dosage, is within the responsibility of general practitioners and other medical doctors.

A compound may be administered alone or in combination with



other treatments, either simultaneously or sequentially dependent upon the condition to be treated.

Pharmaceutical compositions according to the present invention, and for use in accordance with the present invention, may comprise, in addition to the active ingredient, i.e. a compound of formula Ia, Ib, II, III or IV, a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, carrier, buffer, stabiliser or other materials well known to those skilled in the art. Such materials should be non-toxic and should not interfere with the efficacy of the active ingredient. The precise nature of the carrier or other material will depend on the route of administration, which may be oral, or by injection, e.g. cutaneous, subcutaneous, or intravenous.

Pharmaceutical compositions for oral administration may be in tablet, capsule, powder or liquid form. A tablet may comprise a solid carrier or an adjuvant. Liquid pharmaceutical compositions generally comprise a liquid carrier such as water, petroleum, animal or vegetable oils, mineral oil or synthetic oil. Physiological saline solution, dextrose or other saccharide solution or glycols such as ethylene glycol, propylene glycol or polyethylene glycol may be included. A capsule may comprise a solid carrier such as a gelatin.

For intravenous, cutaneous or subcutaneous injection, or injection at the site of affliction, the active ingredient will be in the form of a parenterally acceptable aqueous solution which is pyrogen-free and has suitable pH, isotonicity and stability. Those of relevant skill in the art are well able to prepare suitable solutions using, for example, isotonic vehicles such as Sodium Chloride Injection, Ringer's Injection, Lactated Ringer's Injection. Preservatives, stabilisers, buffers, antioxidants and/or other additives may be included, as required.

A sixth aspect of the present invention is a pharmaceutical composition containing a compound of any one of formulae Ia, Ib, II, III, or IV as described above, and a pharmaceutically

acceptable carrier or diluent. The preparation of pharmaceutical compositions is described in relation to the fifth aspect of the invention above.

5 A seventh aspect of the present invention provides the use of a compound of any one of formulae **Ia**, **Ib**, **II**, **III**, or **IV** as described above to prepare a medicament for the treatment of a gene-based disease, preferably a proliferative disease. The compound of formula **Ia**, **Ib**, **II**, **III**, or **IV** may be provided together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or  
10 diluent. The compounds may be used for the selective killing of oxic and hypoxic tumour cells in methods for the treatment of cancers, for example leukemias and particularly solid cancers including colon, CNS, renal, and lung tumours, including small cell lung carcinoma, and melanomas. In  
15 particular, dimers of formula **II** may be used for the selective killing of lung, colon, and CNS tumours and melanomas. The compounds of formula **III** and **IV** may be used selectively against melanomas.

20 A further aspect of the present invention provides the use of a compound of any one of formulae **Ia**, **Ib**, **II**, **III**, or **IV** as described above to prepare a medicament for the treatment of a viral, parasitic or bacterial infection. The preparation of a medicament is described in relation to the fifth aspect of the invention above.

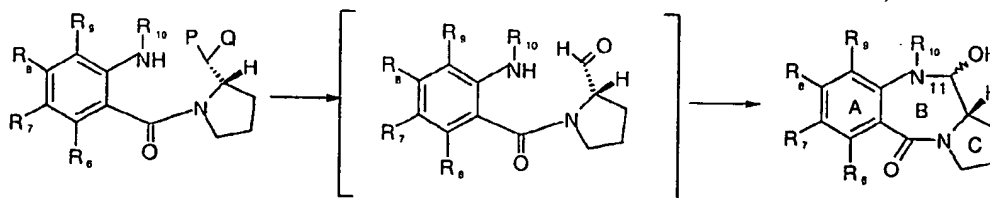
25 In further aspects, the invention provides processes for preparing compounds according to the first, second, third and fourth aspects of the present invention.

Aspects of the invention will now be further described with reference to the accompanying drawings in which:  
30 Figures 1 to 6a/b are synthesis routes for compounds of formula **Ia** of the present invention;  
Figures 7 to 14 are synthesis routes for compounds of formula **II** of the present invention;  
Figures 15 to 25 are synthesis routes for compounds of formula  
35 **III** of the present invention;

Figure 26 is a synthesis route for a compound of formula IV;  
 Figure 27 is a synthesis of an intermediate in the preparation  
 of compounds of formula IV of the present invention;  
 Figure 28 is a synthesis routes for compounds of formula IV of  
 5 the present invention; and  
 Figures 29 to 32 are graphs illustrating the cytotoxicity  
 results of examples 5 to 8 respectively.

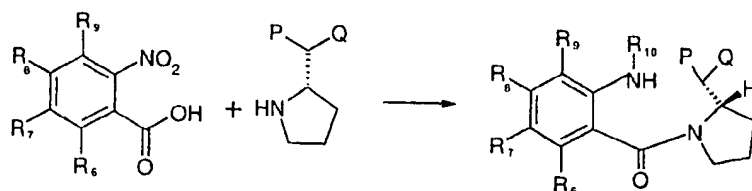
### Preferred General Synthetic Strategies

A key step in a preferred route to compounds of formula Ia,  
 10 Ib, II, III or IV is a cyclisation to produce the B-ring,  
 involving generation of an aldehyde (or functional equivalent  
 thereof) at what will be the 11-position, and attack thereon  
 by the Pro-N10-nitrogen:



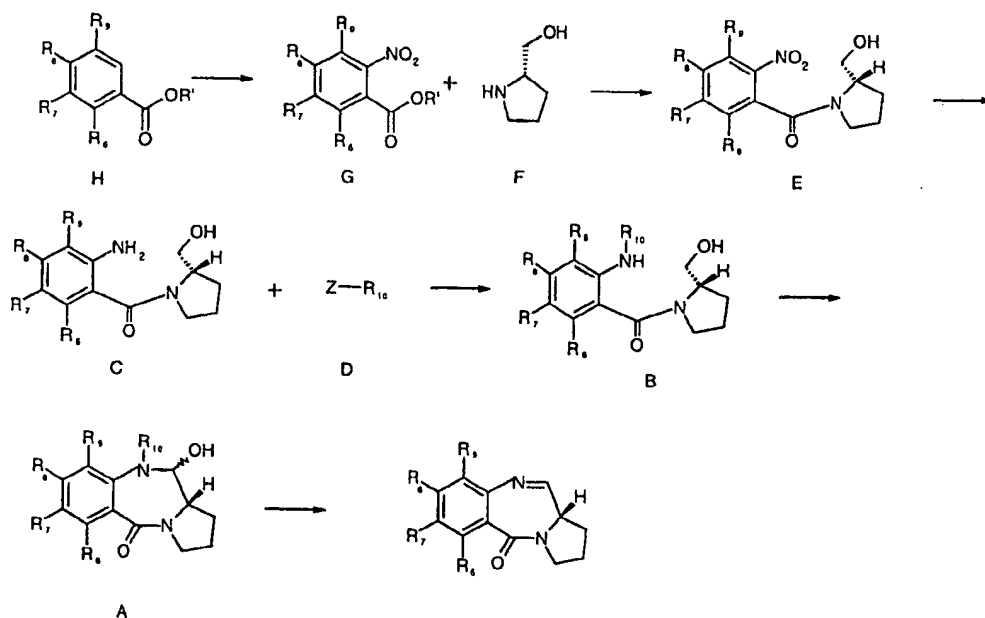
In this structure, no C-ring substitution or unsaturation is  
 15 shown. R<sub>8</sub> represents O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COR', in compounds of formula IV.  
 R<sub>10</sub> is a nitrogen protecting group, preferably with a carbamate  
 functionality bonded to the nitrogen of the PBD. The "masked  
 aldehyde" -CPQ may be an acetal or thioacetal (possibly  
 cyclic), in which case the cyclisation involves unmasking.  
 20 Alternatively, the masked aldehyde may be an aldehyde  
 precursor, such as alcohol -CHOH, in which case the reaction  
 involves oxidation, e.g. by means of TPAP or DMSO (Swern  
 oxidation).

The masked aldehyde compound can be produced by condensing a  
 25 corresponding 2-substituted pyrrolidine with a 2-nitrobenzoic  
 acid:



The nitro group can then be reduced to  $\text{-NH}_2$  and protected by reaction with a suitable reagent, e.g. a chloroformate, which provides the removable nitrogen protecting group in the synthesis route.

- 5 A process involving the oxidation-cyclization procedure is illustrated in scheme 1 (an alternative type of cyclisation will be described later with reference to scheme 2).



Scheme 1

- 10 The imine/carbinolamine bond in the PBD (**A**) can be unprotected by standard methods to yield the desired compound, e.g. if  $\text{R}_{10}$  is Alloc, then the deprotection is carried out using palladium to remove the N10 protecting group, followed by the elimination of water to give the imine.

- 15 Exposure of the alcohol (**B**) (in which the Pro-N10-nitrogen is generally protected as carbamate) to tetrapropylammonium

perruthenate (TPAP)/N-methylmorpholine N-oxide (NMO) over A4 sieves results in oxidation accompanied by spontaneous B-ring closure to afford the desired product. The TPAP/NMO oxidation procedure is found to be particularly convenient for small scale reactions while the use of DMSO-based oxidation methods, particularly Swern oxidation, proves superior for larger scale work (e.g. > 1 g).

The uncyclized alcohol (B) may be prepared by the reaction of a nitrogen protection reagent of formula D, which is preferably a chloroformate or acid chloride, to a solution of the amino alcohol C, generally in solution, generally in the presence of a base such as pyridine (preferably 2 equivalents) at a moderate temperature (e.g. at 0°C). Under these conditions little or no O-acylation is usually observed.

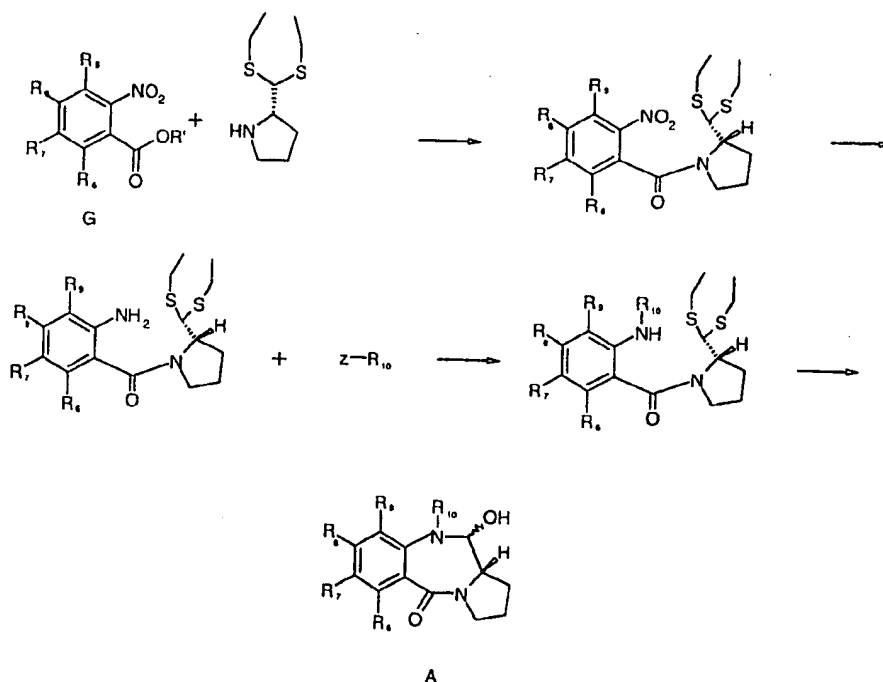
The key amino alcohol C may be prepared by reduction of the corresponding nitro compound E, by choosing a method which will leave the rest of the molecule intact. Treatment of E with tin (II) chloride in a suitable solvent, e.g. refluxing methanol, generally affords, after the removal of the tin salts, the desired product in high yield.

Exposure of E to hydrazine/Raney nickel avoids the production of tin salts and may result in a higher yield of C, although this method is less compatible with the range of possible C and A-ring substituents. For instance, if there is C-ring unsaturation (either in the ring itself, or in R<sub>2</sub> or R<sub>3</sub>), this technique may be unsuitable.

The nitro compound of formula E may be prepared by coupling the appropriate o-nitrobenzoyl chloride to a compound of formula F, e.g. in the presence of K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> at -25°C under a N<sub>2</sub> atmosphere. Compounds of formula F can be readily prepared, for example by olefination of the ketone derived from L-trans-hydroxy proline. The ketone intermediate can also be exploited by conversion to the enol triflate for use in palladium mediated coupling reactions.

The *o*-nitrobenzoyl chloride is synthesised from the *o*-nitrobenzoic acid (or alkyl ester after hydrolysis) of formula **G**, which itself is prepared from the vanillic acid (or alkyl ester) derivative **H**. Many of these are commercially available and some are disclosed in Althuis, T.H. and Hess, H.J., *J. Medicinal Chem.*, 20(1), 146-266 (1977).

Alternative Cyclisation (Scheme 2)



Scheme 2

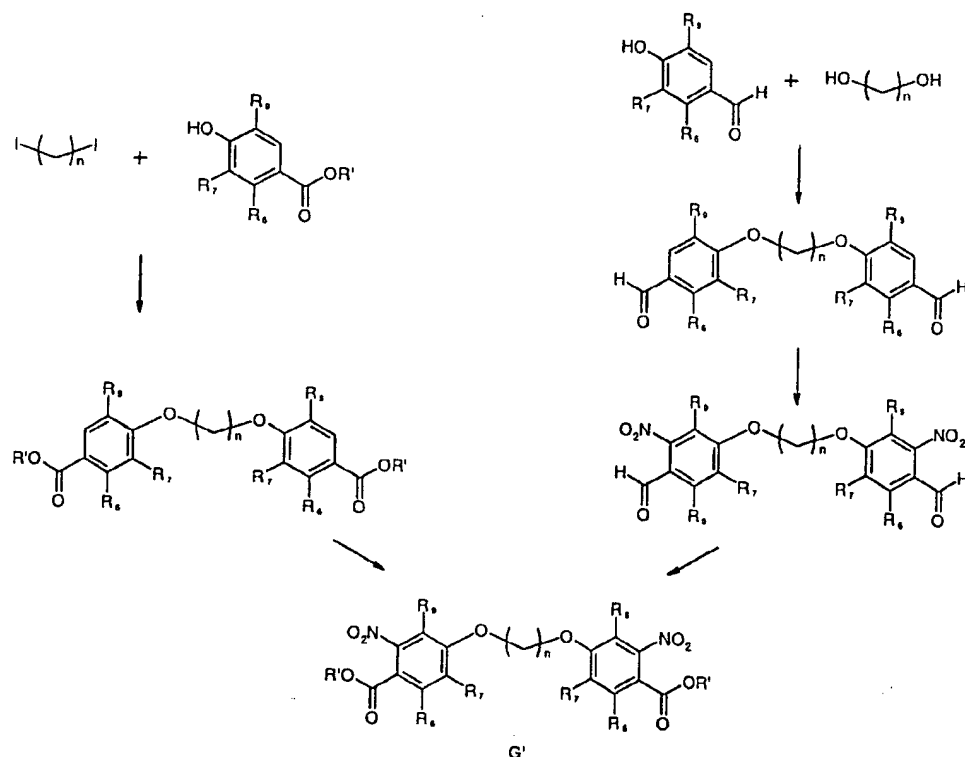
In scheme 1, the final or penultimate step was an oxidative cyclisation. An alternative, using thioacetal coupling, is shown in scheme 2. Mercury-mediated unmasking causes cyclisation to the protected PBD compound (**A**).

The thioacetal compound may be prepared as shown in scheme 2: the thioacetal protected C-ring [prepared via a literature method: Langley, D.R. & Thurston, D.E., *J. Organic Chemistry*, **52**, 91-97 (1987)] is coupled to the *o*-nitrobenzoic acid (or alkyl ester after hydrolysis) (**G**) using a literature procedure. The resulting nitro compound cannot be reduced by hydrogenation, because of the thioacetal group, so the tin(II)

chloride method is used to afford the amine. This is then N-protected, e.g., by reaction with a chloroformate or acid chloride, such as 2,2,2-trichloroethylchloroformate.

Acetal-containing C-rings can be used as an alternative in this type of route with deprotection involving other methods, including the use of acidic conditions.

### Dimer Synthesis (Scheme 3)



Scheme 3

PBD dimers may be synthesized using the strategy developed for the synthesis of the protected PBD monomers. The synthesis routes illustrated in scheme 3 show compounds when the dimer linkage is of the formula  $-O-(CH_2)_n-O-$ . The step of dimer formation is normally carried out to form a bis(nitro acid) **G'**. This compound can then be treated as compound **G** in either scheme 1 or scheme 2 above.

The bis(nitro acid) **G'** may be obtained by nitrating (e.g. using 70% nitric acid) the bis(carboxylic acid). This can be

synthesised by alkylation of two equivalents of the relevant benzoic acid with the appropriate diiodoalkane under basic conditions. Many benzoic acids are commercially available and others can be synthesised by conventional methods.

5 Alternatively, the relevant benzoic acid esters can be joined together by a Mitsunobo etherification with an appropriate alkanediol, followed by nitration, and then hydrolysis (not illustrated).

10 An alternative synthesis of the bis(nitro acid) involves oxidation of the bis(nitro aldehyde), e.g. with potassium permanganate. This can be obtained in turn by direct nitration of the bis(aldehyde), e.g. with 70% HNO<sub>3</sub>. Finally, the bis(aldehyde) can be obtained via the Mitsunobu etherification of two equivalents of the benzoic aldehyde with

15 the appropriate alkanediol.

An alternative synthesis approach to those detailed above is to protect the pro N10 position on the component which will form the A-ring, before joining the component which will form the C-ring.

20 **Preferred Synthetic Strategies for Compounds of formula Ia**  
The synthesis route of scheme 1 is generally applicable to compounds of formula Ia.

25 C2/C3-endo-unsaturated PBDs of formula Ia may be synthesised from their N10-carbamate protected precursors. Typically, palladium catalysed removal of an allyl carbamate may be used to generate the N10-C11 imine without affecting the key C2-unsaturation. For example, if the N10-C11 imine/carbinolamine is protected by an Alloc group, the C2/C3-endo-unsaturation is maintained during the Alloc cleavage reaction.

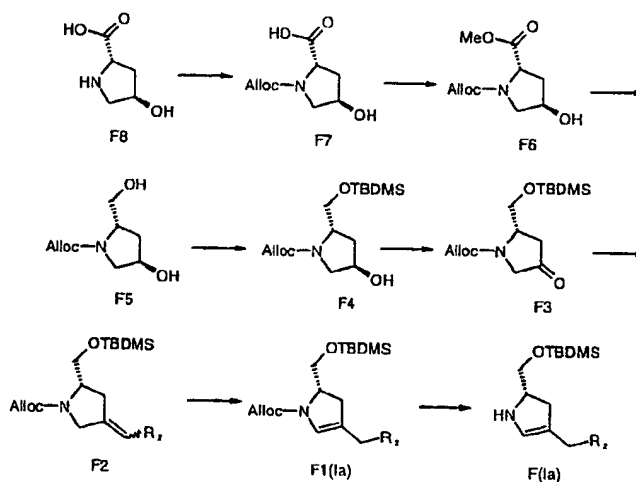
30 The reduction of the nitro-compound E as shown in scheme 1 with tin (II) chloride in refluxing methanol leaves the C2/C3-unsaturation unaffected. The hydrazine/Raney nickel method would not be suitable due to the double bond.



The compound of formula **F** may be used in its TBDMS protected form, and therefore a deprotection step has to be included to produce the amino-alcohol compound **E**.

5 The TBDMS ether, which is the product of the coupling of TBDMS protected compound with the appropriate o-nitrobenzoyl chloride, can be treated with AcOH:THF:H<sub>2</sub>O (3:1:1). TBAF was found to be unsuitable for this transformation due to the rapid degradation of reaction products.

10 A class of requisite C-ring providing compounds **F** can be obtained as shown in scheme 4.



Scheme 4

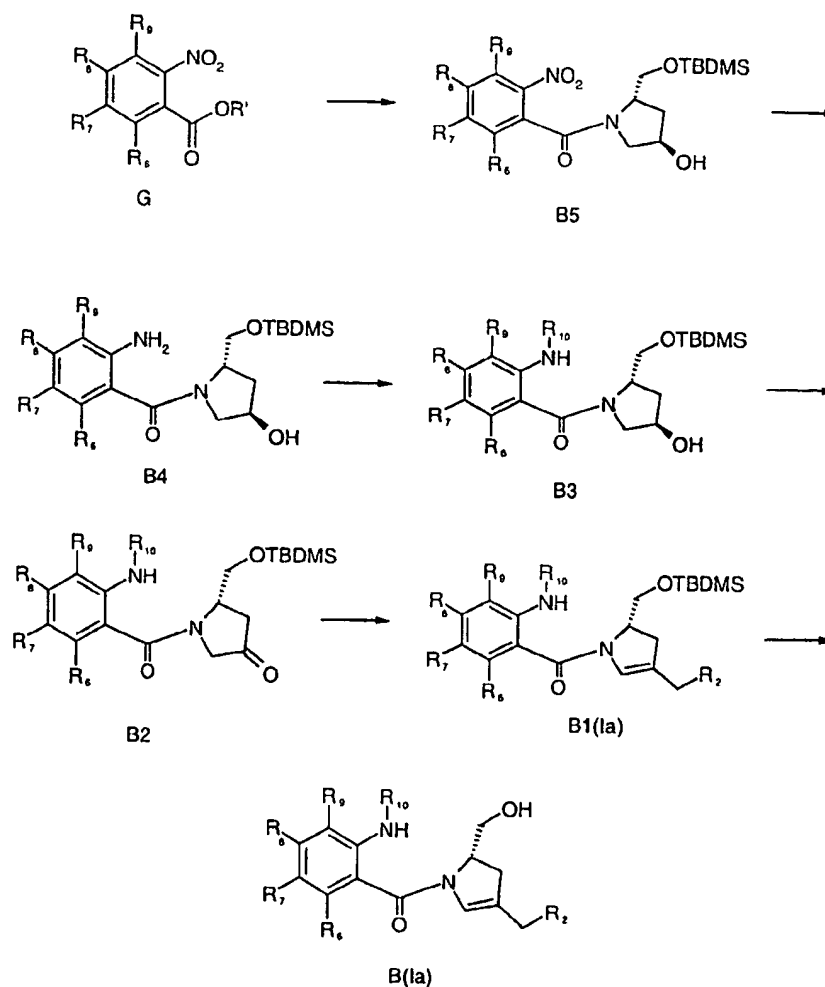
15 Commercially available trans-4-hydroxy-L-proline **F8** can be N-alloc protected to give the allyl carbamate **F7** which can then be esterified using standard conditions. Hydride reduction of the ester **F6** furnishes the diol **F5**. Selective TBDMS protection of the diol gives a silyl ether **F4**, which can then be oxidised, using either Swern or TPAP oxidation, to provide the ketone **F3**.

20 The ketone **F3** can then undergo a Wittig reaction to yield a mixture of the E/Z exo-esters **F2** which can then be converted to the C2/C3-endo compound **F1(Ia)** upon treatment with excess sodium

hydride. Palladium-mediated cleavage of the N-alloc protecting group (Dangles O.; Guibé, F.; Balavoine, G.; Lavielle, S.; Marquet, A.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1987**, 52, 4984) yields the compound **F(Ia)**.

5 Alternative route to compounds of formula Ia

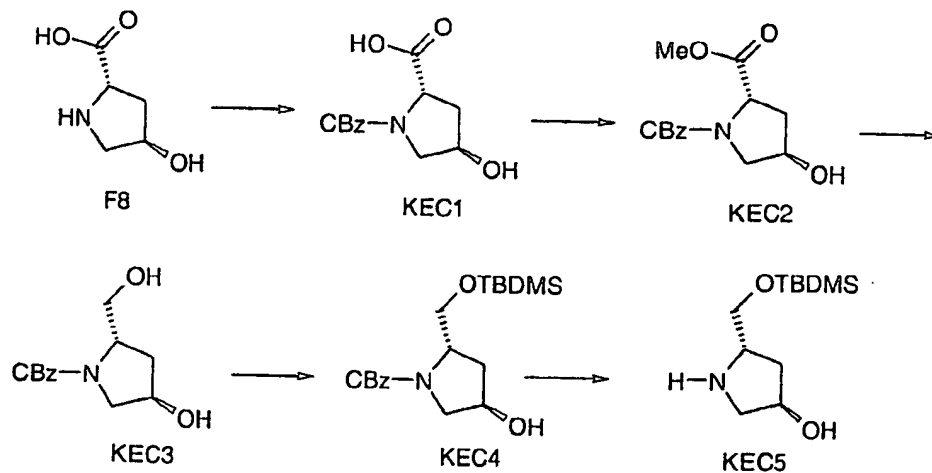
A more linear synthetic route to compound **B** of scheme 1 has been developed which enables larger scale production of the C2/C3-endo-unsaturated PBDs, and is shown in scheme 5.



Scheme 5

10 The silyl protecting group may be cleaved in good yield by treating **B1(Ia)** with AcOH:THF:H<sub>2</sub>O (3:1:1). The key C2/C3-endo-

- unsaturation present in **B1 (Ia)** may be introduced directly by performing the Horner-Emmons reaction on a ketone of type **B2**. Unlike the previous route (**Scheme 4**), the addition of extra NaH to ensure double-bond migration was not necessary for this substrate. Swern oxidation of the secondary alcohol **B3** may be used to furnish the ketone **B2**. The carbamate protected aniline **B3** may be prepared from the nitro compound **B5** in two steps. Firstly, the nitro group may be reduced to the aniline by employing the Raney nickel/hydrazine method because a compound of type **B5** lacks C2-unsaturation. This method is more advantageous than the tin (II) chloride procedure since the product is easier to isolate. The aniline **B4** may then be N-carbamate protected in high yield without significant carbonate formation at the C2 oxygen.
- An amide of type **B5** may be synthesised by coupling an acid chloride of type **G** to the key amine **KEC5** (**Scheme 6**).



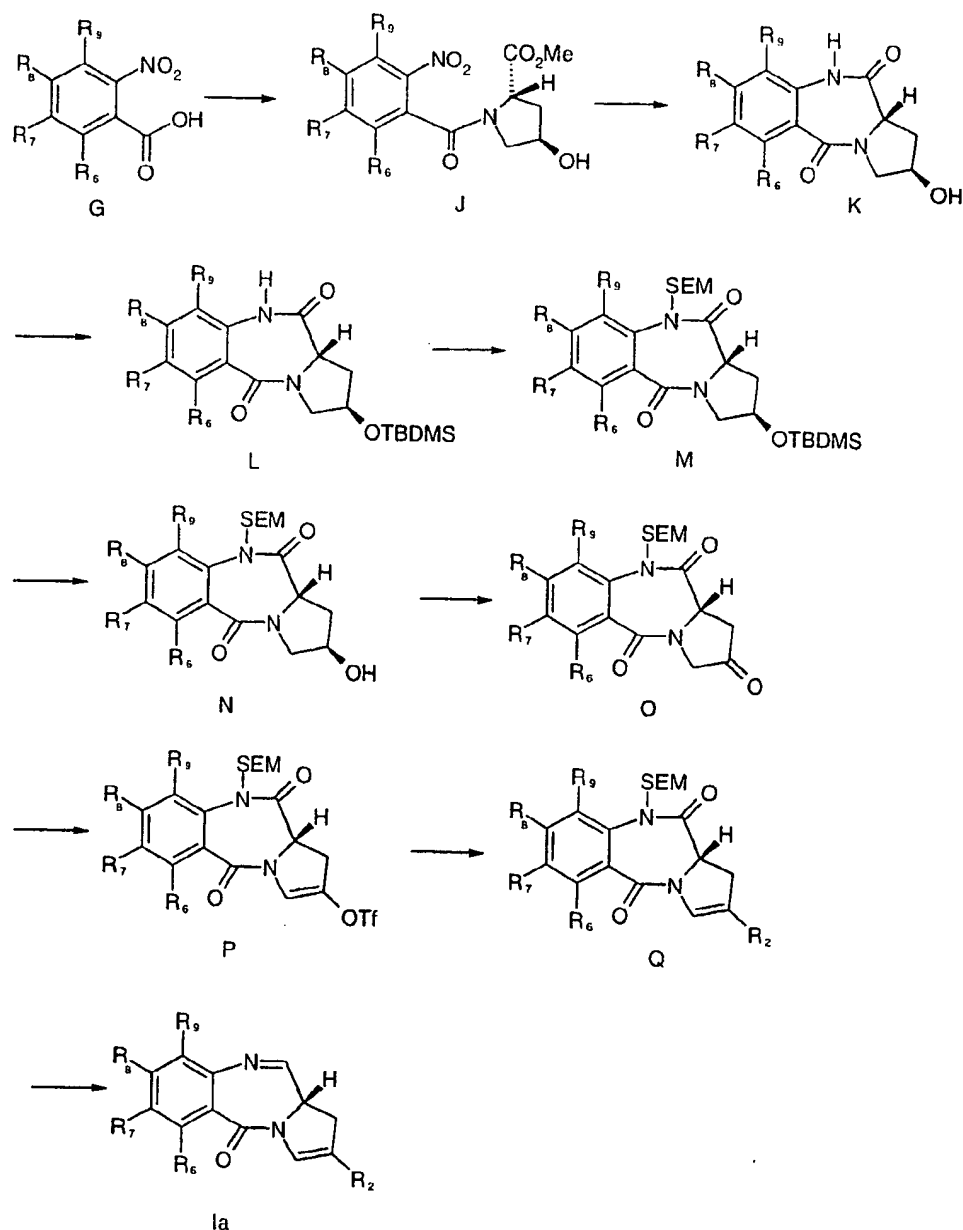
Scheme 6

- Overall, this route has several advantages over the previous route which results in the larger scale production of the C2/C3-endo-unsaturated PBDs. Firstly, catalytic hydrogenation of **KEC4** allows large scale preparation of key intermediate **KEC5**. Secondly, this more efficient nitro reduction step may be carried out on an intermediate devoid of C2-unsaturation. Importantly, the double-bond migration observed during the

Horner-Emmons reaction is spontaneous, so excess sodium hydride is not necessary. This double-bond migration has also been observed by other workers (Leimgruber, W.; Batcho, A. D.; Czajkowski, R. C. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1968**, *90*, 5641).

5 Parr-hydrogenation of **KEC4**, in order to cleave the Cbz protecting group, allowed the large scale synthesis of the key amino intermediate **KEC5**. The TBDMS ether **KEC4** was prepared in an analogous fashion to the corresponding Alloc protected intermediate **F4** (Scheme 4). Selective silylation of the  
10 primary alcohol **KEC3** was achieved using DBU as a silyl transfer agent. The diol **KEC3** was obtained from hydride reduction of ester **KEC2** which in turn was synthesised from carboxylic acid **KEC1**. N-Cbz protection of *trans*-4-hydroxy-L-proline (**F4**) was achieved by adopting a procedure reported in  
15 the literature (Bridges, R. J.; Stanley, M. S.; Anderson, M. W.; Cotman, C. W.; Chamberlain, R. A. *J. Med. Chem.* **1991**, *34*, 717).

Certain R<sub>2</sub> groups may require protection during the synthesis routes set out above, e.g. alcohols can be protected by using  
20 an acetate protecting group (see example 1(d))

Further alternative route to compound of formula Ia

Scheme 7

The following route is particularly suited to a compound of formula Ia where A is a single bond, and R<sub>2</sub> is an allyl group or contains a double bond which is conjugated to that in the C-ring. However, elements of the synthesis, eg the SEM protection, may be useful in a route to other compounds.

The target PBDs were prepared by reduction of the SEM

protected dilactam (Q) with sodium tetraborohydride followed by treatment with silica gel. The sodium tetraborohydride, initially, converts the dilactam into a protected carbinolamine. However, this species is very unstable and treatment with silica gel is sufficient to provoke fragmentation of the SEM protecting group accompanied by imine formation.

The SEM protected dilactams (Q) were prepared by Suzuki and Stille coupling reactions on the enol triflate intermediate (P). The Suzuki reaction is particularly useful as it can be used to install both aryl and vinyl substituents at the C2 position of the PBD. In excess of 70 boronic acids are commercially available allowing great diversity to be introduced into the PBD system. Heck reactions can also be performed smoothly on the enol triflate intermediate.

The enol triflate (P) was prepared from the ketone precursor (O) using triflic anhydride in DCM in the presence of pyridine. The ketone (O) was prepared from the secondary alcohol precursor (N) by Swern oxidation. Other oxidation methods involving TPAP or the Dess Martin reagent provide the ketone in equally good yields. The secondary alcohol was obtained by selective removal of a TBDMS group of compound M in the presence of the SEM N10 protecting group. The SEM group was installed by quenching the N10 dilactam anion (from L) with SEM-Cl; this is a general method and can be used to install related protecting groups such as MOM. In order to prevent the C2 hydroxy of compound K interfering with the N10 protection step it was protected as a TBDMS ether. The 2-hydroxy dilactam (K) was formed by hydrogenating the A-ring nitro group of compound J and coupling to the C-ring methyl ester. The A-ring nitro C-ring ester compound (J) was prepared by coupling commercially available acid (G) to methyl 4-hydroxyprolinate.

The alternative synthesis routes are equally applicable to the synthesis of dimers.

Preferred Synthesis Strategies for Compounds of formula II

The synthesis route of scheme 1 is generally applicable to compounds of formula II.

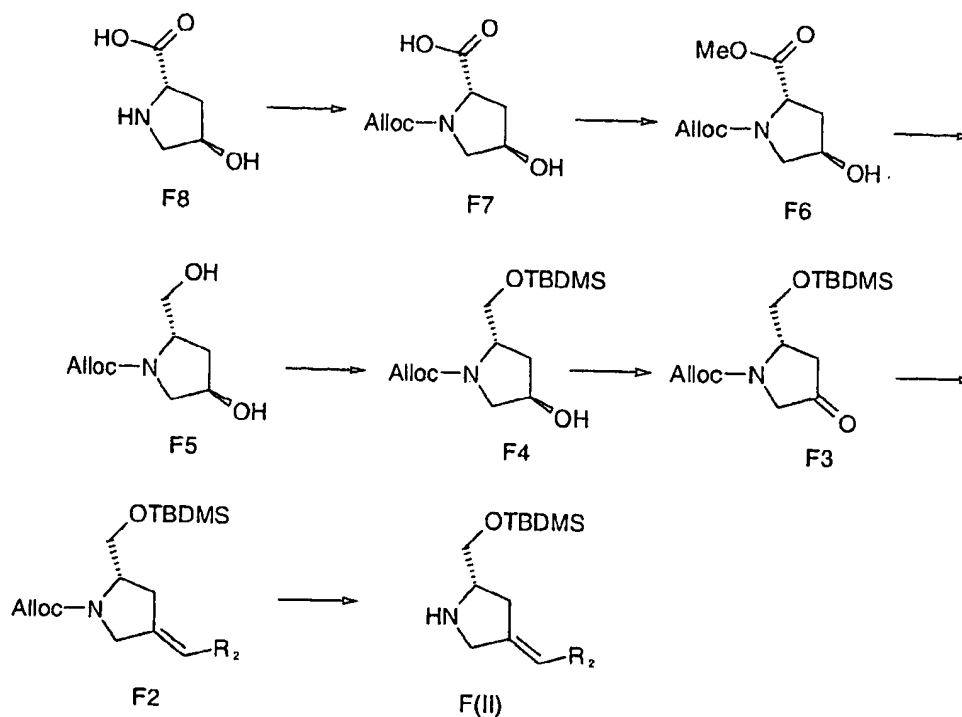
5 C2-unsaturated PBDs of formula II may be synthesised from their N10-carbamate protected precursors. Typically, palladium catalysed removal of an allyl carbamate may be used to generate the N10-C11 imine without affecting the key C2-unsaturation. Alternatively, cadmium-lead couple may be employed to cleave an N10-2,2,2-trichloroethyl carbamate from  
10 the protected PBD.

The reduction of the nitro-compound E as shown in scheme 1 with tin (II) chloride maintains the C2-unsaturation, although isolating the aniline C from the tin salts can be problematic.

15 The compound of formula F may be used in its TBDMS protected form, and therefore a deprotection step has to be included to produce the amino-alcohol compound E.

The TBDMS ether of type E, which is the product of the coupling of the TBDMS protected compound with the appropriate o-nitrobenzoyl chloride, can be treated with AcOH:THF:H<sub>2</sub>O  
20 (3:1:1). TBAF was found to be unsuitable for this transformation due to the rapid degradation of reaction products.

C-ring providing compounds F(II) can be obtained as shown in scheme 8.

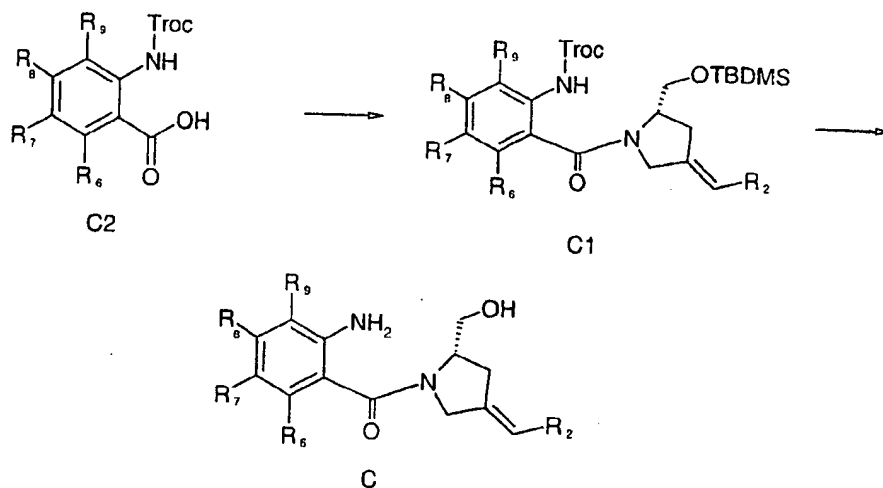


Scheme 8

Commercially available *trans*-4-hydroxy-L-proline **F8** can be N-alloc protected to give the allyl carbamate **F7** which can then be esterified using standard conditions. Hydride reduction of the ester **F6** furnishes the diol **F5**. Selective TBDMS protection of the diol gives a silyl ether **F4**, which can then be oxidised, using either Swern or TPAP oxidation, to provide the ketone **F3**.

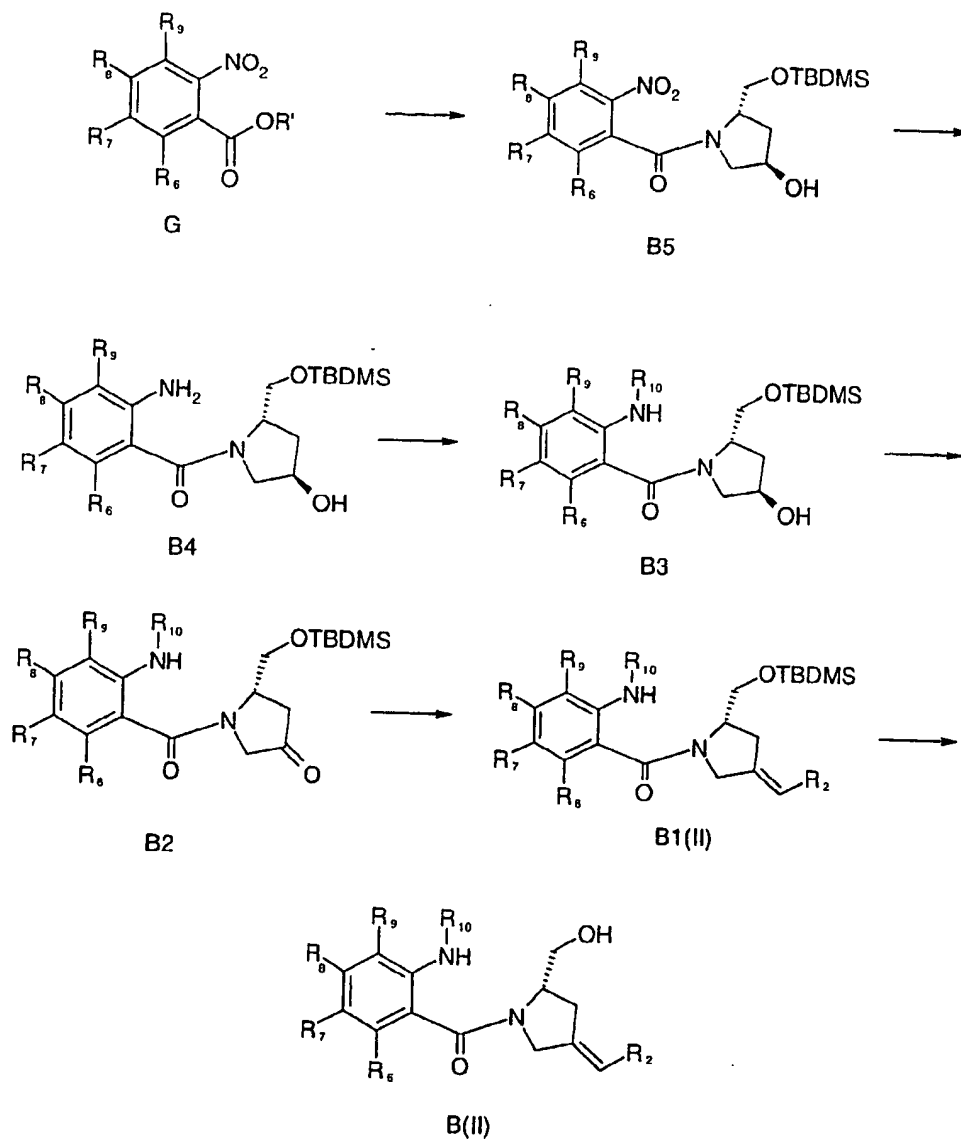
The C2-olefinic functionality present in **F2** may be introduced by performing the Wittig reaction on ketone **F3**. Palladium-mediated cleavage of the N-alloc protecting group (Dangles O.; Guibé, F.; Balavoine, G.; Lavielle, S.; Marquet, A.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1987**, 52, 4984) yields compound **F(II)**.



Alternative route to compound C

Scheme 9

An alternative route to compound C has been developed (**Scheme 9**). The amide of formula **C1** may be synthesised by forming the acid chloride of an N-Troc protected anthranilic acid of type **C2**. Interestingly, N-Troc anthranilic acids do not generate isatoic anhydrides, thus enabling amide formation reactions with amines of type **F(II)**. Simultaneous TBAF-mediated cleavage of the 2,2,2-trichloroethyl carbamate and TBDMS groups from **C1** may provide the key amino-alcohol **C**.

Alternative Route to compounds of formula II

Scheme 10

A more linear synthetic route to compound **B** of scheme 1 has  
 been developed which enables larger scale production of the  
 C2-unsaturated PBDs, and is shown in scheme 10. TBAF-mediated  
 cleavage of the TBDMS group may be used to produce **B(II)** from  
**B1(II)**. The key C2-unsaturation present in **B1(II)** may be  
 introduced by performing the Wittig olefination reaction on a

ketone of type **B2**. Swern oxidation of the secondary alcohol **B3** may be used to furnish the ketone **B2**. The carbamate protected aniline **B3** may be prepared from the nitro compound **B5** in two steps. Firstly, the nitro group may be reduced to the aniline by employing the Raney nickel/hydrazine method because a compound of type **B5** lacks C2-unsaturation. This method is more advantageous than the tin (II) chloride procedure since the product is easier to isolate. The aniline **B4** may then be N-carbamate protected in high yield without significant carbonate formation at the C2 oxygen.

An amide of type **B5** may be synthesised by coupling an acid chloride of type **G** to the key amine **KEC5** (see scheme 6). Overall, this route has several advantages over the convergent route which allow larger scale production of the C2-unsaturated PBDs. Firstly, catalytic hydrogenation of **KEC4** allows large scale preparation of key intermediate **KEC5**. Secondly, the nitro reduction step may be carried out on an intermediate devoid of C2-unsaturation. Finally, the Wittig olefination may be performed in the latter stages of the synthetic route where large scale limitations are tolerated.

In dimer synthesis, the routes set out above may be used in preference to those set out in the overall synthetic strategies. In particular, the nitrogen-protecting group may advantageously be a carbamate, as protecting groups of this type may be removed in the final step by a variety of methods which, in general, do not affect the key C2-unsaturation.

#### General Experimental Methods

Melting points (mp) were determined on a Gallenkamp P1384 digital melting point apparatus and are uncorrected. Infrared (IR) spectra were recorded using a Perkin-Elmer 297 spectrophotometer. <sup>1</sup>H- and <sup>13</sup>C- NMR spectra were recorded on a Jeol GSX 270 MHz FT-NMR spectrometer operating at 20°C +/-1°C. Chemical shifts are reported in parts per million (δ) downfield from tetramethylsilane (TMS). Spin multiplicities are described as: s (singlet), bs (broad singlet), d (doublet), dd (doublet of doublets), t (triplet), q (quartet),

p (pentuplet) or m (multiplet). Mass spectra (MS) were recorded using a Jeol JMS-DX 303 GC Mass Spectrometer (EI mode: 70eV, source 117-147°C). Accurate molecular masses (HRMS) were determined by peak matching using

5 perfluorokerosene (PFK) as an internal mass marker, and FAB mass spectra were obtained from a

glycerol/thioglycerol/trifluoroacetic acid (1:1:0.1) matrix with a source temperature of 180°C. Optical rotations at the Na-D line were obtained at ambient temperature using a Perkin-

10 Elmer 141 Polarimeter. Analytical results were generally within +/-0.2% of the theoretical values. Flash chromatography was performed using Aldrich flash chromatography "Silica Gel-60" (E. Merck, 230-400 mesh).

Thin-layer chromatography (TLC) was performed using GF<sub>254</sub> silica

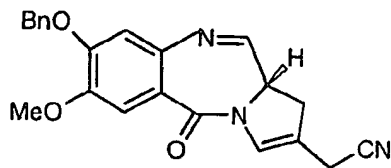
15 gel (with fluorescent indicator) on glass plates. All solvents and reagents, unless otherwise stated, were supplied by the Aldrich Chemical Company Ltd. and were used as supplied without further purification. Anhydrous solvents were

prepared by distillation under a dry nitrogen atmosphere in

20 the presence of an appropriate drying agent, and were stored over 4Å molecular sieves or sodium wire. Petroleum ether refers to the fraction boiling at 40-60°C.

### Examples

25 Example 1(a): Synthesis of the 2-Cyanomethyl PBD (10, SB-A67) (see Figure 1)



### **Synthesis of the Nitro Alcohol (3)**

A solution of the acid 1 (3.03 g, 10 mmol, 1 equiv) in freshly distilled CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL) was treated with oxalyl chloride (1.05 mL, 12 mmol, 1.2 equiv) under a nitrogen atmosphere and

30 stirred. DMF (0.1 mL) was added and the solution effervesced. The reaction was allowed to stir overnight at RT. The following day the acid chloride solution was added dropwise over 2 hours to a stirred mixture of the amine 2 (2.31 g, 10

mmol, 1 equiv) and TEA (3.48 mL, 25 mmol, 2.5 equiv) in freshly distilled  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (30 mL) while the temperature was kept under  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm to RT and stirred overnight. The solution was washed with  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (100 mL), saturated  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  (100 mL),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a brown oil which was purified by flash chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , EtOAc) and provided the coupled compound 3 (3.24 g, 6.28 mmol, 62.8%) as a yellow glass:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 270 MHz) rotamers:  $\delta$  -0.10 (s, 6H,  $\text{Si}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ), 0.80 (s, 9H,  $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), 2.04-2.55 (m, 3H, 1-H, OH), 3.05-4.60 (m, 9H, 11-H, 11a-H, OMe, 3-H, 2-H), 5.20 (br s, 2H, OBn), 6.78 and 6.85 (2xs, 1H, 6-H), 7.27-7.47 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.73 and 7.76 (2xs, 1H, 9-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 270 MHz):  $\delta$  -5.5, -5.4, 18.2, 25.7, 25.8, 36.3, 56.6, 57.2, 62.6, 70.2, 71.3, 109.0, 109.4, 127.6-128.8, 135.2, 137.3, 147.9, 154.7, 166.6; IR (neat): 3401, 3065, 3033, 2951, 2856, 2739, 2628, 1956, 1743, 1620, 1578, 1522, 1462, 1434, 1378, 1336, 1277, 1221, 1075, 1051, 1002, 914, 836, 779, 752, 697, 669, 650, 615; EIMS  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 516 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 0.6), 460 (29.8), 459 (92.6), 368 (7.9), 286 (49.6), 91 (100.0), 73 (9.5); FAB  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 517 ( $\text{M}^+$  +1, 15.1), 385 (9.2), 286 (19.3), 92 (9.3), 91 (100.0), 75 (14.0), 73 (42.2).

#### Reduction to the Amino Alcohol (4)

A solution of hydrazine (3.11 mL, 100 mmol, 5 equiv) in MeOH (50 mL) was added dropwise to a refluxing solution of the nitro compound 3 (10.32 g, 20 mmol, 1 equiv), antibumping granules and Raney Ni (3.5 g) in MeOH (150 mL). After 1 hour at reflux TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 5% MeOH- $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) revealed total consumption of starting material. The mixture was then treated with sufficient Raney Ni to decompose any unreacted hydrazine. After cooling to RT the mixture was filtered through Celite and the filtrate evaporated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was dissolved in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (300 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to provide 4 (6.80 g, 14 mmol, 70%) as a pink oil which was carried through to the next stage without purification:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 270 MHz) rotamers:  $\delta$  -0.001 (s, 6H,  $\text{Si}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ), 0.88 (br s, 9H,  $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), 1.96-2.23 (m, 2H, 1-

H), 3.44-4.48 (m, 12H, 11-H, 3-H, OMe, NH<sub>2</sub>, OH, 2-H, 11a-H), 5.09 (br s, 2H, OBn), 6.25 and 6.27 (2xs, 1H, 6-H), 6.68 and 6.73 (2xs, 1H, 9-H), 7.26-7.42 (m, 5H, Ph); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ -5.4, 18.2, 25.9, 35.7, 56.9, 57.2, 70.4, 70.7, 103.2, 112.9, 113.4, 127.2, 127.4, 127.9, 128.6, 128.6, 136.7, 141.6; IR (neat): 3356.80, 2930.13, 2857.36, 2247.82, 1622.19, 1514.60, 1463.60, 1408.95, 1261.43, 1176.55, 1118.48, 1003.88, 911.00, 836.61, 778.15, 733.59, 697.72, 646.32.

#### Synthesis of the Alloc Pro-N10-Protected C2-Alcohol (5)

A solution of allyl chloroformate (1.54 mL, 14.48 mmol, 1.05 equiv) in freshly distilled CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred mixture of the amine 4 (6.70 g, 13.79 mmol, 1 equiv), pyridine (2.45 mL, 30.34 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in freshly distilled CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (200 mL), at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. The mixture was allowed to warm at RT and stirred overnight. The following day TLC (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 5% MeOH-CHCl<sub>3</sub>) revealed reaction completion. The mixture was washed with saturated CuSO<sub>4</sub> (100 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to give a dark yellow oil. Flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 30% EtOAc-petroleum ether) afforded the pure Alloc-compound 5 (6.70 g, 11.75 mmol, 85.2%) as a yellow oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz) rotamers: δ 0.03 and 0.04 (2xs, 6H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 0.89 (br s, 9H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 1.99-2.40 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.56 (br s, 4H, 11-H, 3-H), 3.79 (s, 3H, OMe), 4.05-4.20 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 4.38 (s, 1H, 2-H), 4.58-4.62 (m, 3H, OH, Alloc), 5.16-5.37 (m, 4H, OBn, Alloc), 5.86-6.00 (m, 1H, Alloc), 6.80 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.30-7.48 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.80 (s, 1H, 9-H), 8.86 (br s, 1H, NH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ -5.5, -5.4, 18.1, 25.8, 35.6, 56.4, 57.2, 60.4, 65.8, 70.5, 70.7, 106.4, 111.7, 116.4, 118.0, 127.7-128.6, 132.5, 136.3, 144.3, 150.2, 153.8, 169.4; IR (neat): 3336, 3067, 2953, 2931, 2858, 1732, 1600, 1525, 1464, 1408, 1327, 1225, 1175, 1121, 1048, 1028, 1002, 937, 837, 812, 778, 744, 698, 671, 636, 608, 562; EIMS m/z (relative intensity) 570 (M<sup>+</sup>, 35.0), 513 (27.2), 340 (19.3), 149 (24.3), 91 (24.1), 77 (16.4), 58 (33.0), 57 (100.0), 44 (27.2), 39 (39.8); [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = -55.94° (c = 1.010, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

**Oxidation to the C2-Ketone (6)**

A solution of DMSO (2.50 mL, 35.25 mmol, 3 equiv) in freshly distilled  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (200 mL) was added dropwise over 1.5 hours to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (8.81 mL of a 2M solution in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , 17.62 mmol, 1.5 equiv) at  $-55/-60^\circ\text{C}$  (liquid nitrogen/ $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) under a nitrogen atmosphere. After 30 minutes stirring at  $-55^\circ\text{C}$ , a solution of the secondary alcohol 5 (6.70 g, 11.75 mmol, 1 equiv) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (150 mL) was added dropwise to the reaction mixture over 1.5 h. Following stirring at  $-55/-60^\circ\text{C}$  for 45 minutes the reaction was treated dropwise with a solution of TEA (11.14 mL, 79.90 mmol, 6.8 equiv) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (50 mL) over a period of 40 minutes. The mixture was stirred for a further 45 minutes at  $-30^\circ\text{C}$  and was then allowed to warm to RT. The reaction was then treated with brine (150 mL), cooled to  $0^\circ\text{C}$  and acidified to pH=2 with concentrated HCl. The organic phase was washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (150 mL), brine (150 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the ketone 6 as a dark orange oil (6.18 g, 10.88 mmol, 93%), sufficiently pure by TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 40% EtOAc-petroleum ether) to be carried through to the next stage without further purification:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 270 MHz) rotamers:  $\delta$  0.04 and 0.05 (2xs, 6H,  $\text{Si}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ), 0.87 (s, 9H,  $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), 2.47-2.78 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.66-4.10 (m, 8H, 3-H, OMe, 11-H, 11a-H), 4.62-4.65 (m, 2H, Alloc), 4.80-5.40 (m, 4H, OBn, Alloc), 5.88-6.03 (m, 1H, Alloc), 6.76 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.27-7.49 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.90 (s, 1H, 9-H), 8.62 (br s, 1H, NH);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 270 MHz):  $\delta$  -5.8, -5.7, 18.0, 25.6, 25.7, 56.5, 65.8, 68.0, 70.7, 106.4, 111.0, 118.2, 127.7-128.6, 132.4, 136.1, 150.6, 153.4, 208.9; IR (neat): 3510, 3332, 2957, 2870, 2740, 1959, 1771, 1738, 1633, 1537, 1428, 1274, 1233, 1120, 1029, 844, 785, 700; EIMS  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 568 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 90.6), 512 (28.7), 511 (79.8), 453 (12.1), 340 (38.6), 298 (12.7), 282 (16.9), 172 (23.9), 91 (100.0), 41 (15.1);  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -1.98^\circ$  ( $c = 1.010$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ).

**Insertion of the C2-Cyanomethyl Group (7)**

Sodium hydride (0.70 g of a 60% dispersion in minuteseral oil, 17.60 mmol, 2.5 equiv) was stirred in petroleum ether for 10 minutes. The suspension was allowed to settle and the

solvent transferred under nitrogen from the flask via a double-tipped needle. The remaining residue was suspended in freshly distilled anhydrous THF (50 mL), cooled to 0°C and treated dropwise with a solution of the diethyl

5 cyanomethylphosphonate (11.14 mL, 79.90 mmol, 6.8 equiv) in THF (60 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The mixture was allowed to warm to RT and stir for 1.5 h. After cooling to 0°C the reaction mixture was treated dropwise with a solution of

10 the ketone 6 (11.14 mL, 79.90 mmol, 6.8 equiv) in THF (40 mL). After stirring overnight TLC (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 30% EtOAc-petroleum ether) revealed almost complete consumption of starting material. THF was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue treated

15 with a saturated solution of NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (100 mL) and EtOAc (100 mL). The aqueous layer was washed with EtOAc (100 mL) and the combined organic layers were then washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a brown glass which was subjected to flash

20 chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 30% EtOAc-petroleum ether) to provide the pure cyano compound 7 (2.6 g, 4.40 mmol, 63%) as a yellow glass: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ 0.03-0.09 (m, 6H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 0.88 (m, 9H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 2.68-2.91 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.12-3.13 (m, 2H, 12-H), 3.72-3.76 (m, 2H, 11-H), 3.82 (s, 3H, OMe), 4.62-4.65 (m, 2H, Alloc), 4.75 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 5.19 (s, 2H, OBn), 5.22-5.39 (m, 2H, Alloc), 5.88-6.02 (m, 1H, Alloc), 6.59 (s, 1H, 3-H), 6.68 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.32-7.50 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.95 (s, 1H, 9-H), 8.72 (s, 1H, NH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ -5.4, 17.5, 18.1, 25.6-25.7, 34.0, 56.6, 59.8, 62.3, 65.8, 70.7, 106.1, 111.8, 114.0, 116.2, 118.1, 127.7-129.3, 132.4, 132.8, 136.1, 144.2, 150.9, 153.4, 166.1; IR (neat): 3337, 3067, 3034, 2954, 2930, 2857, 2253, 1732, 1622, 1599, 1524, 1495, 1464, 1408, 1362, 1336, 1259, 1205, 1166, 1116, 1051, 1026, 992, 914, 839, 778, 735, 698, 647; EIMS *m/z* (relative intensity) 591 (M<sup>+</sup>, 20.1), 534 (15.0), 340 (67.5), 282 (20.9), 252 (25.6), 195 (32.4), 91 (100.0); HRMS *m/z* Calcd for 591.2765 (C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>Si). Found 591.2758; [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = -83.25° (c = 1.015, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).



**Deprotected Alcohol (8)**

Glacial AcOH (15 mL) was added to a stirred solution of the silyl ether 7 (2.10 g, 3.55 mmol) in THF (10 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (15 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at RT and monitored every hour by TLC (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 30% EtOAc-petroleum ether). Over the course of 3 hours AcOH (10 mL) was added in two further portions. The mixture was stirred for a total of 4 hours at which time the reaction had gone to completion. The mixture was then cooled to 0°C and treated dropwise with a 10% solution of NaHCO<sub>3</sub> in H<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL). The aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (3x20 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (20 mL), brine (20 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to give a yellow oil. Flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 5% MeOH-CHCl<sub>3</sub>) afforded the free alcohol 8 (1.40 g, 2.93 mmol, 83%) as a yellow glass: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ 2.41-3.02 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.13 (s, 2H, 12-H), 3.70-4.10 (m, 6H, 11-H, OMe, OH), 4.61-4.64 (m, 2H, Alloc), 4.76 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 5.16 (s, 2H, OBn), 5.23-5.28 (m, 2H, Alloc), 5.87-6.02 (m, 1H, Alloc), 6.53 (s, 1H, 3-H), 6.78 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.27-7.48 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.75 (s, 1H, 9-H), 8.45 (s, 1H, NH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ 17.4, 34.8, 56.8, 61.5, 65.1, 65.9, 70.8, 106.9, 111.8, 114.4, 116.1, 118.2, 127.7-129.1, 132.1, 132.4, 136.0, 144.8, 151.1, 153.7, 167.3; IR (neat): 3340, 3067, 2934, 2856, 2252, 1732, 1601, 1523, 1455, 1407, 1374, 1336, 1226, 1167, 1111, 1048, 1028, 996, 938, 869, 838, 768, 745, 698, 668, 636, 608; EIMS m/z (relative intensity) 477 (M<sup>+</sup>, 14.6), 340 (46.9), 282 (13.0), 91 (100.0); HRMS m/z Calcd for 477.1900 (C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>27</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>). Found 477.1962; [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = -67.42° (c = 1.068, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

**N10-Protected Cyclized PBD (9)**

A solution of DMSO (0.75 mL, 10.55 mmol, 3.6 equiv) in freshly distilled CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (40 mL) was added dropwise at a rapid rate to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (2.64 mL of a 2M solution in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, 5.27 mmol, 1.8 equiv) at -40/-50°C (liquid nitrogen/chlorobenzene) under a nitrogen atmosphere. After 5 minutes stirring at -45°C, a solution of the primary alcohol 8 (1.40 g, 2.93 mmol, 1 equiv) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL) was added

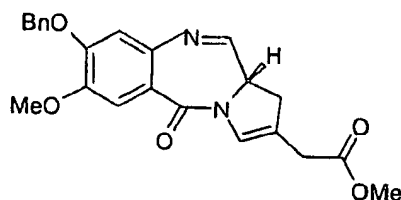
dropwise to the reaction mixture over 45minutes. Following stirring at -45°C for 45minutes the reaction was treated dropwise with a solution of TEA (1.72 mL, 12.31 mmol, 4.2 equiv) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (20 mL) over a period of 30minutes. The mixture was stirred for a further 40minutes at -45°C and was then allowed to warm to RT and diluted with 20 mL CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The reaction was then cooled to 0°C and washed with 1N HCl (200 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a yellow foam which was subjected to flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 5% MeOH-CHCl<sub>3</sub>) to provide the pure ring closed compound **9** (0.95 g, 2.00 mmol, 68%) as a slightly yellow glass: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ 2.69-3.14 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.24 (s, 2H, 12-H), 3.84-3.98 (m, 6H, 11-H, OMe, OH), 4.46 (m, 2H, Alloc), 5.07-5.18 (m, 4H, OBn, Alloc), 5.60-5.80 (m, 2H, Alloc, 11a-H), 6.74 (s, 1H, 3-H), 7.04 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.24-7.43 (m, 6H, Ph, 9-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270MHz): δ 17.5, 36.5, 56.2, 59.6, 66.9, 71.1, 85.7, 111.0, 113.2, 114.7, 116.1, 118.3, 124.6, 127.3-128.7, 131.7, 136.0, 149.2, 150.6, 163.6; IR (neat): 3396, 3089, 2938, 2615, 2251, 1707, 1602, 1513, 1432, 1308, 1219, 1113, 1045, 918, 869, 790, 735, 698, 648; EIMS *m/z* (relative intensity) 475 (M<sup>+</sup>, 34.2), 340 (25.4), 339 (35.0), 279 (10.3), 134 (10.6), 91 (100.0); HRMS *m/z* Calcd for 475.1743 (C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>25</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>). Found 475.1883; [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = +101.46° (c = 1.030, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

**C2-Cyanomethyl PBD (10, SB-A67)**

Triphenylphosphine (25 mg, 0.095 mmol, 0.05 equiv), pyrrolidine (167 μl, 2.0 mmol, 1.05 equiv) and Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (56 mg, 0.048 mmol, 0.025 equiv) were added sequentially to a stirred solution of the Alloc-compound **9** (900 mg, 1.90 mmol, 1 equiv) in freshly distilled dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (100 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at RT under a nitrogen atmosphere for 2 hours by which time TLC (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 1% MeOH-CHCl<sub>3</sub>) revealed reaction completion. The mixture was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue applied to a gravity chromatography column (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 1% MeOH-CHCl<sub>3</sub>) to isolate the PBD **SB-A67** (720 mg, 1.93 mmol, 100%) as a yellow glass: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): 3.05-3.40 (m, 4H, 1-H, 12-H), 3.95 (s, 3H, OMe), 4.38 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 5.21 (s, 2H, OBn), 6.84 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.06 (s, 1H, 3-H), 7.27-7.70

(m, 6H, Ph, 9-H), 7.80 (d, 1H, 11a-H,  $J = 3$  Hz);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 270 MHz):  $\delta$  17.4, 36.8, 53.9, 56.3, 70.9, 111.7, 111.9, 112.8, 116.0, 118.7, 120.7, 127.1-128.7, 132.0, 136.0, 140.2, 148.3, 151.2, 161.8; IR (neat): 3353, 2931, 2251, 2222, 1604, 1508, 1437, 1247, 1120, 1000, 913, 874, 724, 697, 542; EIMS  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 373 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 9.8), 371 (24.4), 280 (12.5), 91 (100.0); HRMS  $m/z$  Calcd for 373.1426 ( $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{19}\text{N}_3\text{O}_3$ ). Found 373.1364;  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = 254.5^\circ$  ( $c = 1.045$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ).

**Example 1(b): Synthesis of the 2-Methoxycarbonylmethyl PBD (24, SJG-245) (see Figure 2)**



**(2S,4R)-N-(Allyloxycarbonyl)-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (12)**

A solution of allyl chloroformate (29.2 mL, 33.2 g, 275 mmol) in THF (30 mL) was added dropwise to a suspension of *trans*-4-hydroxy-L-proline (11) (30 g, 229 mmol) in a mixture of THF (150 mL) and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (150 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  (ice/acetone), whilst maintaining the pH at 9 with 4 N NaOH. After stirring at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  for 1 hour at pH 9, the aqueous layer was saturated with NaCl, and the mixture diluted with EtOAc (100 mL). The aqueous layer was separated, washed with EtOAc (100 mL) and the pH adjusted to 2 with conc. HCl. The resulting milky emulsion was extracted with EtOAc (2 X 100 mL), washed with brine (200 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the allyl carbamate 12 as a clear viscous oil (42.6 g, 87%):  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -62.1^\circ$  ( $c = 0.69$ , MeOH);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$  + DMSO- $d_6$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  5.98-5.81 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 5.40-5.14 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.64-4.42 (m, 4H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2$  and  $\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$ ), 3.82-3.51 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2$ ), 2.34-2.08 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$  + DMSO) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  175.0 and 174.5 ( $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ), 155.1 and 154.6 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}$ ), 132.9 and 132.8 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 117.6 and 116.7 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 69.5 and 68.8 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOH}$ ), 65.9 and 65.8 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 58.0 and 57.7

(CHCO<sub>2</sub>H), 55.0 and 54.5 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOH), 39.3 and 38.3 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 215 (M<sup>+</sup>, 10) 197(12), 170 (M-CO<sub>2</sub>H, 100), 152 (24), 130 (M-CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>3</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, 97), 126 (34), 112 (50), 108 (58), 86 (11), 68 (86), 56 (19); IR (Neat) 3500-2100 (br, OH), 2950, 1745 and 1687 (br, C=O), 1435, 1415, 1346, 1262, 1207, 1174, 1133, 1082, 993, 771 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>13</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>, *m/e* 215.0794, obsd *m/e* 215.0791.

**Methyl (2*S*,4*R*)-*N*-(Allyloxycarbonyl)-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylate (13)**

A catalytic amount of concentrated H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (4.5 mL) was added to a solution of Alloc-hydroxyproline (12) (43 g, 200 mmol) in MeOH (300 mL) at 10°C (ice) and the reaction mixture was then heated at reflux for 2 h. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was treated with TEA (43 mL) and the MeOH evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc (300 mL), washed with brine (200 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give a viscous oil. Purification by flash chromatography (40% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) removed the high R<sub>f</sub> impurity to provide the pure ester 13 as a transparent yellow oil (19.6 g, 43%): [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = -79.0° (*c* = 0.35, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers) δ 5.98-5.78 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.35-5.16 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.65-4.45 (m, 4H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>, NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCH<sub>2</sub> and NCHCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.75 and 3.72 (s x 2, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.70-3.54 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCH<sub>2</sub>), 3.13 and 3.01 (br s x 2, 1H, OH), 2.39-2.03 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers) δ 173.4 and 173.2 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 155.0 and 154.6 (NC=O), 132.6 and 132.4 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 117.6 and 117.3 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 70.0 and 69.2 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOH), 66.2 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 57.9 and 57.7 (NCHCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 55.2 and 54.6 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOH), 52.4 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 39.1 and 38.4 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 229 (M<sup>+</sup>, 7), 170 (M-CO<sub>2</sub>Me, 100), 144 (M-CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>3</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, 12), 126 (26), 108 (20), 68 (7), 56 (8); IR (Neat) 3438 (br, OH), 2954, 1750 and 1694 (br, C=O), 1435, 1413, 1345, 1278, 1206, 1130, 1086, 994, 771 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>15</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>, *m/e* 229.0950, obsd *m/e* 229.0940.

**(2S,4R)-N-(Allyloxycarbonyl)-4-hydroxy-2-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine (14)**

A solution of the ester **13** (19.5 g, 85 mmol) in THF (326 mL) was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and treated with LiBH<sub>4</sub> (2.78 g, 128 mmol) in portions. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred under a nitrogen atmosphere for 2.5 hours at which time TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed complete consumption of ester **13**. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and water (108 mL) was carefully added followed by 2 N HCl (54 mL). After evaporation of the THF *in vacuo*, the mixture was neutralised to pH 7 with 10 N NaOH and saturated with solid NaCl. The saturated aqueous solution was then extracted with EtOAc (5 x 100 mL), the combined organic layers washed with brine (200 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to furnish the pure diol **14** as a clear colourless oil (16.97 g, 99%):  $[\alpha]_D^{24} = -57.0^\circ$  (*c* = 0.61, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  6.01-5.87 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.36-5.20 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.84 (br s, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 4.60 (d, 2H, *J* = 5.31 Hz, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.39 (br s, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 4.18-4.08 (m, 1H, 3.35, NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOH), 3.90-3.35 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOH, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, and OH), 3.04 (br s, 1H, OH), 2.11-2.03 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCH<sub>2</sub>), 1.78-1.69 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  157.1 (NC=O), 132.6 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 117.7 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 69.2 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOH), 66.4 and 66.2 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> and NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 59.2 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 55.5 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOH), 37.3 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 201 (*M*<sup>+</sup>, 2), 170 (*M*-CH<sub>2</sub>OH, 100), 144 (*M*-OC<sub>3</sub>H<sub>7</sub>, 6), 126 (26), 108 (20), 68 (9); IR (Neat) 3394 (br, OH), 2946, 2870, 1679 (C=O), 1413, 1339, 1194, 1126, 1054, 980, 772 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>11</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>, *m/e* 201.1001, obsd *m/e* 201.1028.

**(2S,4R)-N-(Allyloxycarbonyl)-2-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (15)**

A solution of the diol **14** (16.97 g, 84 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (235 mL) was treated with TEA (11.7 mL, 8.5 g, 84 mmol) and stirred for 15 minutes at room temperature. TBDMSCl (9.72 g, 64 mmol) and DBU (16.8 mmol, 2.51 mL, 2.56 g) were added and the reaction mixture stirred for a further 16 hours under a nitrogen

atmosphere. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (500 mL), washed with saturated  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  (160 mL), brine (160 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to give an oil which was a mixture of the required product (major component), unreacted diol and the presumed disilylated compound by TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether). Flash chromatography (20-100% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) isolated the 3 components, to provide the monosilylated compound **15** as a slightly yellow transparent oil (13.85 g, 52%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -58.6^\circ$  ( $c = 1.14$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  6.01-5.86 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 5.34-5.18 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.59-4.49 (m, 3H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$  and  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ ), 4.06-3.50 (m, 5H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOH}$ ,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOH}$  and  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ ), 2.20-2.01 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2$ ), 0.87 (s, 9H,  $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), 0.0 (s, 6H,  $\text{Si}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  155.0 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}$ ), 133.1 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 117.6 and 117.1 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 70.3 and 69.7 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOH}$ ), 65.9 and 65.6 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 63.9 and 62.8 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ ), 57.8 and 57.4 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ ), 55.7 and 55.2 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOH}$ ), 37.3 and 36.6 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2$ ), 25.9 ( $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), 18.2 ( $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), -5.5 ( $\text{Si}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ); MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 316 ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ , 29), 315 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 4), 300 ( $\text{M}-\text{CH}_3$ , 26), 284 (4), 261 (8), 260 (50), 259 (100), 258 ( $\text{M}-\text{OC}_3\text{H}_7$  or  $\text{M}-t\text{Bu}$ , 100), 218 (13), 215 (10), 214 (52), 200 (12), 170 ( $\text{M}-\text{CH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ , 100), 156 (40), 126 (58), 115 (33), 108 (41), 75 (35); IR (Neat) 3422 (br, OH), 2954, 2858, 1682 ( $\text{C}=\text{O}$ ), 1467, 1434, 1412 ( $\text{SiCH}_3$ ), 1358, 1330, 1255 ( $\text{SiCH}_3$ ), 1196, 1180, 1120, 1054, 995, 919, 837, 776, 669  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{22}\text{NO}_4\text{Si}$   $m/e$  315.1866, obsd  $m/e$  315.1946.

**(2S)-N-(Allyloxycarbonyl)-2-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-oxopyrrolidine (16).**

**Method A:** A solution of DMSO (12.9 mL, 14.3 g, 183 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (90 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of oxalyl chloride (45.1 mL of a 2.0 M solution in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , 90.2 mmol) at  $-60^\circ\text{C}$  (dry ice/acetone) under a nitrogen atmosphere. After stirring at  $-70^\circ\text{C}$  for 30 minutes, a solution of the alcohol **15** (25.8 g, 81.9 mmol) dissolved in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (215 mL) was added dropwise at  $-60^\circ\text{C}$ . After 1.5 hours at  $-70^\circ\text{C}$ , the mixture was treated dropwise with TEA (57.2 mL, 41.5 g, 410 mmol) and allowed to warm to  $10^\circ\text{C}$ . The reaction mixture was treated with

brine (150 mL) and acidified to pH 3 with conc. HCl. The layers were separated and the organic phase washed with brine (200 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an orange oil. Purification by flash chromatography (40% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the ketone **16** as a pale yellow oil (24.24 g, 95%):

**Method B:** A solution of the alcohol **15** (4.5 g, 14.3 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (67.5 mL) was treated with CH<sub>3</sub>CN (7.5 mL), 4 Å powdered molecular sieves (3.54 g) and NMO (2.4 g, 20.5 mmol). After 15 minutes stirring at room temperature, TPAP (0.24 g, 0.7 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture and a colour change (green - black) was observed. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for a further 2.5 hours at which time complete consumption of starting material was observed by TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum ether 40 °- 60°). The black mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the pure ketone **16** was obtained by flash chromatography (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) as a golden oil (4.1 g, 92%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +1.25^\circ$  ( $c = 10.0$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  6.0-5.90 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.35-5.22 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.65-4.63 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.48-4.40 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 4.14-3.56 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=O and NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 2.74-2.64 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=OCH<sub>2</sub>), 2.46 (d, 1H,  $J = 18.69$  Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=OCH<sub>2</sub>), 0.85 (s, 9H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.0 (s, 6H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  210.1 (C=O), 154.1 (NC=O), 132.7 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 118.0 and 117.7 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 66.0 and 65.8 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 65.0 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 55.7 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 53.6 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=O), 40.8 and 40.1 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=OCH<sub>2</sub>), 25.7 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.1 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.7 and -5.8 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (CI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 314 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 100), 256 (M-OC<sub>3</sub>H<sub>7</sub> or M-<sup>t</sup>Bu, 65); IR (Neat) 2930, 2858, 1767 (C=O), 1709 (NC=O), 1409 (SiCH<sub>3</sub>), 1362, 1316, 1259 (SiCH<sub>3</sub>), 1198, 1169, 1103, 1016, 938, 873, 837, 778, 683 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>2</sub>Si  $m/e$  313.1710, obsd  $m/e$  313.1714.

**(2S)-N-(Allyloxycarbonyl)-2-(tert-butylidimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (17).**

Petroleum ether 40°-60° (100 mL) was added to a sample of NaH

(0.80 g of a 60% dispersion in oil, 20.12 mmol) and stirred at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere. After 0.5 hours the mixture was allowed to settle and the Petroleum Ether was transferred from the flask via a double-tipped needle under nitrogen. THF (100 mL) was added to the remaining residue and the mixture was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone). The cool solution was treated dropwise with a solution of methyldiethylphosphonoacetate (3.69 mL, 4.23 g, 20.12 mmol) in THF (100 mL) under nitrogen. After 1 hour at room temperature, the mixture was cooled to 0°C and treated dropwise with a solution of the ketone **16** (3.0 g, 9.58 mmol) in THF (30 mL) under nitrogen. After 16 hours at room temperature, TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed the complete consumption of ketone and further TLC (5% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed the formation of mainly the *exo*-product. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and transferred via a double-tipped needle under nitrogen to another flask containing NaH (0.40 g of a 60% dispersion in oil, 10.1 mmol) at 0°C, freshly washed as above. The reaction mixture was maintained at 0 °C, and after 40 minutes TLC revealed the almost complete conversion to *endo*-product. The THF was evaporated *in vacuo* and the mixture partitioned between saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (100 mL) and EtOAc (100 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with EtOAc (2 X 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an orange oil. Purification by flash chromatography (5% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the *endo*-ester **17** (2.22 g, 63%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -97.7^\circ$  ( $c = 2.78$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  6.47 and 6.42 (br s x 2, 1H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 5.98-5.86 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.31 (d, 1H,  $J = 16.85$  Hz, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.22 (d, 1H,  $J = 10.62$  Hz, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.65-4.49 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.37-4.18 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 3.76-3.69 (m, 5H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS and CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.09 (br s, 2H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.86-2.80 (m, 1H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.59 (d, 1H,  $J = 17.40$  Hz, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.87 (s, 9H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.04 and 0.03 (s x 2, 6H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  171.2 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 151.9 (NC=O), 132.8 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 127.1 and 126.4 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 118.0 and 117.7 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 114.6 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 65.9



(NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 63.4 and 62.6 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 59.0 and 58.7 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 51.9 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 36.0 and 34.8 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 34.2 and 33.9 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 25.8 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.2 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.4 and -5.5 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 369 (M<sup>+</sup>, 58), 354 (28), 326 (31), 312 (M-OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> or M-<sup>t</sup>Bu, 100), 268 (80), 236 (21), 227 (86), 210 (22), 192 (22), 168 (93), 152 (55), 138 (22), 120 (79), 89 (70), 73 (75); IR (NEAT) 3086, 2954, 2930, 2885, 2857, 1744, 1709, 1670, 1463, 1435, 1413, 1362, 1337, 1301, 1253, 1195, 1107, 1064, 1014, 983, 937, 887, 838, 778, 758, 680, 662 555 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>31</sub>NO<sub>2</sub>Si *m/e* 369.1972, obsd *m/e* 369.1868.

**(2S)-2-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (18)**

A catalytic amount of PdCl<sub>2</sub>(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (84 mg, 0.12 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of the allyl carbamate **17** (1.10 g, 2.98 mmol) and H<sub>2</sub>O (0.32 mL, 17.8 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (36 mL). After 5 minutes stirring at room temperature, Bu<sub>3</sub>SnH (0.89 mL, 0.96 g, 3.30 mmol) was added rapidly in one portion. A slightly exothermic reaction with vigorous gas evolution immediately ensued. The mixture was stirred for 16 hours at room temperature under nitrogen at which time TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed the formation of amine along with the complete consumption of starting material. After diluting with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL), the organic solution was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to give an orange oil which was purified by flash chromatography (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford the enamine **18** as a slightly orange oil (0.57 g, 67%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.53 and 7.48 (br s x 2, 1H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 4.35-4.13 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 3.82-3.17 (m, 7H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS and CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.64-2.04 (m, 2H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.90-0.88 (m, 9H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.09-0.00 (m, 6H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 285 (M<sup>+</sup>, 1), 270 (M-CH<sub>3</sub>, 7), 254 (6), 242 (4), 230 (6), 228 (M-<sup>t</sup>Bu, 100), 212 (4), 196 (3), 168 (13), 115 (3), 89 (10), 80 (4), 73 (13); MS (CI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 342 (M<sup>+</sup>+57, 7), 302 (M<sup>+</sup>+17, 7), 286 (M<sup>+</sup>+1, 100), 228 (M-<sup>t</sup>Bu, 100).

(2*S*)-*N*-(4-Benzoyloxy-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)-2-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (19).

A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a stirred solution of the acid **1** (0.506 g, 1.67 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (0.17 mL, 0.25 g, 1.98 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (33 mL). After 16 hours at room temperature the acid chloride solution was added dropwise to a stirred mixture of the enamine **18** (0.524 g, 1.84 mmol) and TEA (0.47 g, 0.65 mL, 4.60 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (12 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 2.5 h. The mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL), washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (50 mL), saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (50 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the crude product as a dark orange oil. Purification by flash chromatography (25% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) isolated the pure enamide **19** as an orange oil (0.55 g, 58%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.77 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 7.45-7.28 (m, 5H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.81 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.80 (s, 1H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 5.22 (s, 2H, PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.76-4.64 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 3.97 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.72-3.66 (m, 5H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS and CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.02 (s, 2H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.01-2.63 (m, 2H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.90 (s, 9H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.11 (s, 6H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 170.7 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 154.6 (NC=O), 148.3 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 137.6 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 135.2 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 128.8, 128.5 and 127.6 (BnC-H<sub>arom</sub>), 126.7 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 126.1 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 118.8 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 109.9 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 109.0 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 71.3 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.7 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 59.0 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 56.7 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.0 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 35.1 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 33.8 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 25.8 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.2 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.3 and -5.4 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>).

(2*S*)-*N*-(4-Benzoyloxy-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (20).

A solution of the silyl protected compound **274** (0.45 g, 0.79 mmol) in THF (8 mL) was treated with H<sub>2</sub>O (8 mL) and glacial acetic acid (24 mL). After 5 hours stirring at room temperature TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) showed the

complete consumption of starting material. The mixture was carefully added dropwise to a stirred solution of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (64 g) in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (640 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 X 100 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the crude product as an orange glass. Purification by flash chromatography (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the pure alcohol **20** as a light orange glass (0.35 g, 98%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.78 (s,  $1\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 7.48-7.33 (m,  $5\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 6.86 (s,  $1\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 5.82 (s, 1H,  $\text{NCH}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 5.22 (s, 2H,  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.81-4.71 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 3.98-3.92 (m, 5H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$  and  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.72 (s, 3H,  $\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 3.10-2.22 (m, 3H,  $\text{NCH}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$  and  $\text{NCH}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 2.50-2.35 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCH}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  170.6 ( $\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 154.8 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}$ ), 148.5 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 137.5 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 135.1 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 128.9, 128.6 and 127.6 ( $\text{BnC-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 126.2 ( $\text{NCH}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 119.4 ( $\text{NCH}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 109.8 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 109.0 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 71.4 ( $\text{PhCH}_2\text{O}$ ), 61.5 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 61.4 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 56.8 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 52.1 ( $\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 35.6 ( $\text{NCH}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 33.5 ( $\text{NCH}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ); MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 456 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 7), 286 ( $\text{M}-\text{NCHC}=\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$ , 25), 270 ( $\text{NCHC}=\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$ , 6), 91 ( $\text{PhCH}_2$ , 100), 80 (6); exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_8$   $m/e$  456.1533, obsd  $m/e$  456.1557.

**(2S)-N-(2-Amino-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxybenzoyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (21).**

A solution of the nitro-alcohol **20** (0.35 g, 0.77 mmol) and  $\text{SnCl}_2/2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (0.87 g, 3.86 mmol) in methanol (16 mL) was heated to reflux and monitored by TLC (90%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ). After 1 hour the MeOH was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue cooled (ice), and treated carefully with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (65 mL). The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (65 mL), and after 16 hours stirring at room temperature the inorganic precipitate was removed by filtration through celite. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine (100 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the crude amine **21** as a pale orange glass (0.29 g, 88%) which was carried through to the next step without further purification or analysis due to the instability of the amine.

(2*S*)-*N*-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxybenzoyl]-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (22)

A solution of the amino-alcohol **21** (0.29 g, 0.68 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (12 mL) was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and treated with pyridine (0.11 mL, 0.11 g, 1.39 mmol). A solution of allyl chloroformate (79 µL, 90 mg, 0.75 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (10 mL) was then added dropwise to the stirred mixture. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 2.5 h, at which point TLC (EtOAc) revealed complete consumption of the amine **21**. The mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL) and washed with saturated CuSO<sub>4</sub> (20 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (20 mL), brine (20 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (70% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford the pure alloc-amino compound **22** as a colourless glass (0.14 g, 40%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.58 (br s, 1H, NH), 7.88 (br s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 7.50-7.29 (m, 5H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.83 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.42 (br s, 1H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 6.03-5.89 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.39-5.22 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.18 (s, 2H, PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.77-4.73 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 4.65-4.62 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.32-3.84 (m, 5H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH and OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.69 (s, 3H, CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.09 (s, 2H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.05-2.95 (m, 1H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.35 (dd, 1H, *J* = 3.76, 16.72 Hz, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 170.6 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 167.4 (NC=O<sub>amido</sub>), 153.5 (NC=O<sub>carbamate</sub>), 151.1 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 144.4 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 136.1 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 132.6 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 132.4 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 128.6, 128.1 and 127.7 (BnC-H<sub>arom</sub>), 118.5 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 118.2 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 112.1 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 106.3 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 70.7 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 66.5 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 65.9 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 61.9 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 56.7 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.1 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 35.6 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 33.6 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (FAB), *m/z* (relative intensity) 618 (M<sup>+</sup> + Thioglycerol, 2), 511 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 5), 510 (M<sup>+</sup>, 1), 340 (M-NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 20), 300 (3), 282 (14), 256 (7), 192 (6), 171 (16), 149 (22), 140 (12), 112 (4), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 100), 80 (6), 65 (1), 57 (3).

(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-Allyloxycarbonyl-8-benzyloxy-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-1,10,11,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (23).

A solution of the alcohol 22 (0.14 g, 0.28 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>CN (12 mL, 3:1) was treated with 4 Å powdered molecular sieves (0.15 g) and NMO (49 mg, 0.42 mmol). After 15 minutes stirring at room temperature, TPAP (4.90 mg, 14 μmol) was added and stirring continued for a further 1 hour 30 minutes at which point TLC (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) showed product formation along with some unoxidised starting material. The mixture was then treated with a further quantity of NMO (49 mg, 0.42 mmol) and TPAP (4.9 mg, 14 μmol), and allowed to stir for a further 0.5 hours when TLC revealed reaction completion. The mixture was evaporated *in vacuo* onto silica and subjected to flash chromatography (60% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to provide the protected carbinolamine 23 as a colourless glass (39 mg, 28%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.43-7.25 (m, 6H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.90 (br s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.74 (s, 1H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 5.79-5.64 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.77 (d, 1H, *J* = 10.26 Hz, NCHCHOH), 5.19-5.06 (m, 4H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> and PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.64-4.45 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.18-3.83 (m, 4H, OCH<sub>3</sub> and NCHCHOH), 3.71 (s, 3H, CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.19 (s, 2H, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.09 (dd, 1H, *J* = 11.09, 16.70 Hz, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.74 (d, 1H, *J* = 17.03 Hz, NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 170.7 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 163.3 (NC=O<sub>amide</sub>), 155.9 (NC=O<sub>carbamate</sub>), 150.3 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 149.1 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 136.1 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 131.8 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 128.7, 128.2 and 127.3 (BnCH<sub>arom</sub>), 126.2 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 125.1 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 118.1 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 117.7 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 114.7 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 111.0 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 85.9 (NCHCHOH), 71.1 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 66.8 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 59.5 (NCHCHOH), 56.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.1 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 37.0 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 33.7 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 508 (M<sup>+</sup>, 16), 449 (3), 422 (3), 404 (2), 368 (3), 340 (19), 324 (2), 282 (6), 255 (2), 225 (1), 206 (2), 192 (3), 169 (4), 152 (2), 140 (10), 131 (5), 108 (5), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 100), 80 (9), 57 (9); IR (NUJOL®) 3600-2500 (br, OH), 2924, 2853, 2360, 1715, 1602, 1514, 1462, 1377, 1271, 1219, 1169, 1045, 722, 699; exact mass calcd for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>28</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>, *m/e* 508.1846, obsd *m/e* 508.1791.

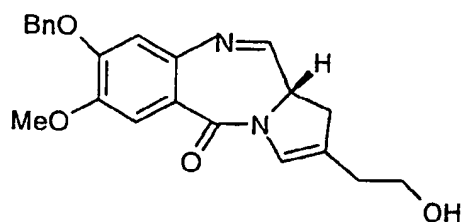
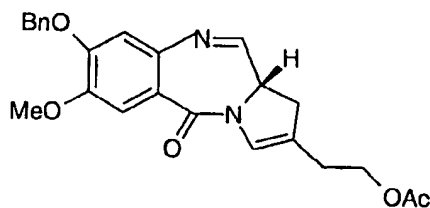
(11*S*,11*aS*)&(11*R*,11*aS*)-8-Benzoyloxy-7,11-dimethoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-1,10,11,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (24, SJG-245).

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (5.0 mg, 4.33  $\mu$ mol) was added to a stirred solution of the Alloc-protected carbinolamine 23 (88 mg, 0.17 mmol), triphenylphosphine (2.27 mg, 8.65  $\mu$ mol) and pyrrolidine (13 mg, 0.18 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (15 mL). After 2 hours stirring at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere, TLC (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (60% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford the novel PBD (SJG-245) as a colourless glass (54 mg, 77%) which was repeatedly evaporated *in vacuo* with  $\text{CHCl}_3$  in order to provide the N10-C11 imine form 24:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (imine)  $\delta$  7.80 (d, 1H,  $J = 4.03$  Hz,  $\text{HC=N}$ ), 7.50 (s, 1 $\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 7.45-7.26 (m, 5 $\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 6.91 (br s, 1H,  $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 6.83 (s, 1 $\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 5.21-5.12 (m, 2H,  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.94 (s, 3H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.73 (s, 3H,  $\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 3.23 (s, 2H,  $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 3.15 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (imine)  $\delta$  170.7 ( $\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 162.7 ( $\text{HC=N}$ ), 161.4 ( $\text{NC=O}$ ), 150.9 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 148.1 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 140.1 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 136.0 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 128.7, 128.2 and 127.3 ( $\text{BnC-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 127.3 ( $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 119.2 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 117.5 ( $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 111.8 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 111.5 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 70.8 ( $\text{PhCH}_2\text{O}$ ), 56.2 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 53.8 ( $\text{NCHHC=N}$ ), 52.0 ( $\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 37.4 ( $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 33.6 ( $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ).

Repeated evaporation *in vacuo* of 24 with  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  provided the N10-C11 methyl ether forms 25:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ ) (11*S*,11*aS* isomer)  $\delta$  7.44-7.25 (m, 5 $\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 7.16 (s, 1 $\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 6.85 (br s, 1H,  $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 6.62 (s, 1 $\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 5.09 (s, 2H,  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.52 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.80$  Hz,  $\text{NCHCHOCH}_3$ ), 4.00-3.85 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCHCHOCH}_3$ ), 3.80 (s, 3H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.69 (s, 3H,  $\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 3.41 (s, 3H,  $\text{NCHCHOCH}_3$ ), 3.24 (br s, 2H,  $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 3.20-3.00 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 2.60-2.50 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ ) (11*S*,11*aS* isomer)  $\delta$  172.7 ( $\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 166.8 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 153.3 ( $\text{NC=O}$ ), 146.4 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 139.7 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 138.0 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 132.4 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 129.6, 129.1 and 128.8 ( $\text{BnC-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 127.0 ( $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 120.8 ( $\text{NCH=CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ ), 113.7 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 109.2

(C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 97.1 (NCHCHOCH<sub>3</sub>), 71.7 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.2 (NCHCHOCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.8 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 55.2 (NCHCHOCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.5 (CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 38.7 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 34.1 (NCH=CCH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 420 (M<sup>+</sup>, methyl ether, 1), 418 (methyl ether - 2, 2), 406 (M<sup>+</sup>, imine, 23), 404 (41), 375 (2), 345 (6), 333 (7), 313 (22), 299 (10), 285 (6), 253 (6), 242 (4), 225 (2), 214 (2), 198 (2), 183 (4), 168 (2), 155 (6), 136 (3), 105 (3), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 100), 80 (4), 65 (7); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3318 (br, OH of carbinolamine form), 2923, 2853, 1737, 1692, 1658, 1627, 1601, 1552, 1511, 1501, 1464, 1461, 1452, 1378, 1244, 1072, 1006, 786, 754, 698 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calculated for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>22</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>, *m/e* 406.1529, obsd *m/e* 406.1510.

Examples 1(c & d): Synthesis of SJG-301 (31, UP2051) and SJG-303 (33, UP2052) (see Figure 3)



Example 1(c)

Example 1(d)

(2*S*)-*N*-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxybenzoyl]-2-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (26)

Petroleum Ether (100 mL) was added to a sample of NaH (1.41 g of a 60% dispersion in oil, 35.25 mmol) and stirred at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere. After 0.5 hours the mixture was allowed to settle and the Petroleum Ether was transferred from the flask via a double-tipped needle under nitrogen. THF (80 mL) was added to the remaining residue and the mixture was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone). The cool solution

was treated dropwise with a solution of methyldiethylphosphonoacetate (6.47 mL, 7.41 g, 35.25 mmol) in THF (80 mL) under nitrogen. After 1.5 hours at room temperature, the mixture was cooled to 0°C and treated dropwise with a solution of the ketone 6 (8.0 g, 14.1 mmol) in THF (50 mL) under nitrogen. After 16 hours at room temperature, TLC (20% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed reaction completion. The THF was evaporated *in vacuo* and the mixture partitioned between saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (200 mL) and EtOAc (220 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with EtOAc (2 X 200 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (200 mL), brine (200 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give a dark red oil. Purification by flash chromatography (15% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the endo-ester 26 (7.02 g, 80%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -93.0^\circ$  ( $c = 1.04$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.78 (br s, 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H), 7.50-7.29 (m, 5H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 6.46 (br s, 1H), 6.02-5.88 (m, 1H), 5.35 (dd, 1H,  $J = 2.93, 17.22$  Hz), 5.24 (d, 1H,  $J = 10.44$  Hz), 5.18 (s, 2H), 4.70-4.61 (m, 3H), 3.96-3.82 (m, 5H), 3.68 (s, 3H), 3.08 (s, 2H), 2.91-2.82 (m, 1H), 2.71-2.65 (m, 1H), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.06 and 0.04 (s x 2, 6H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  170.7, 165.8, 153.5, 150.6, 144.0, 136.2, 132.7, 132.5, 128.6, 128.2, 128.1, 127.7, 118.1, 118.0, 114.4, 112.0, 106.0, 70.6, 65.7, 62.3, 59.4, 56.6, 52.0, 34.6, 33.9, 25.8, 18.1, -5.4; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 626 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 3), 625 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 7), 624 ( $M^+$ , 14), 568 (5), 567 (11), 509 (3), 476 (3), 341 (5), 340 (17), 339 (4), 299 (3), 286 (18), 285 (87), 282 (11), 256 (4), 242 (3), 229 (3), 228 (14), 226 (11), 168 (10), 166 (3), 152 (6), 141 (5), 140 (50), 139 (9), 108 (3), 92 (10), 91 (100), 89 (6), 80 (11), 75 (11), 73 (10), 65 (5), 57 (6), 41 (12); IR (NEAT) 3332 (br, NH), 3019, 2953, 2930, 2857, 1733, 1622, 1599, 1524, 1491, 1464, 1408, 1362, 1335, 1258, 1205, 1171, 1113, 1051, 1027, 938, 839, 757, 697, 666 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>44</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>8</sub>Si  $m/e$  624.2867, obsd  $m/e$  624.2936.



(2*S*)-*N*-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxybenzoyl]-2-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-(hydroxy-2-ethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (27)

5 A solution of the ester 26 (4.0 g, 6.41 mmol) in THF (55 mL) was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and treated with LiBH<sub>4</sub> (0.21 g, 9.62 mmol) in portions. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred under a nitrogen atmosphere for 26 hours at which point TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The  
10 mixture was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and water (14 mL) was carefully added. Following evaporation of the THF *in vacuo*, the mixture was cooled and then neutralised with 1 N HCl. The solution was then diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 X 100 mL), the combined organic layers washed with  
15 brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude oil was purified by flash chromatography (30 - 40% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to furnish the pure *endo*-alcohol 27 as a transparent yellow oil (2.11 g, 55%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -86.43^\circ$  ( $c = 1.38$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.76 (br s, 1H), 7.92 (br s, 1H), 7.50-7.28 (m, 5H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 6.36 (br s, 1H), 6.02-5.87 (m, 1H), 5.35 (d, 1H,  $J = 17.22$  Hz), 5.24 (d, 1H,  $J = 11.72$  Hz), 5.18 (s, 2H), 4.64-4.61 (m, 3H), 4.10-3.99 (m, 1H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 3.79-3.66 (m, 3H), 2.85-2.75 (m, 1H), 2.64-2.60 (m, 1H), 2.30 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.23$  Hz), 1.74 (br s, 1H),  
20 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.06 and 0.04 (s x 2, 6H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  165.3, 153.5, 150.5, 144.2, 136.3, 132.5, 128.6, 128.1, 127.7, 126.7, 122.8, 118.0, 114.3, 112.0, 106.1, 70.7, 65.7, 62.8, 60.4, 59.1, 56.6, 34.4, 31.7, 25.8, 18.2, -5.4; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 598 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 3), 597 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 5), 596 ( $M^+$ , 13), 581 (2), 541 (2), 540 (4), 539 (9), 448 (2), 341 (2), 340 (12), 282 (7), 259 (5), 258 (20), 257 (100), 256 (3), 227 (3), 226 (12), 200 (5), 168 (6), 124 (3), 113 (3), 112 (50), 111(4), 94 (10), 91 (25), 73 (3); IR (NEAT) 3340 (br), 3066, 3033, 2930, 2857, 1732, 1598, 1520, 1456, 1409,  
30 1328, 1205, 1166, 1113, 1049, 1023, 938, 839, 778, 744, 697, 677, 637 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

(2S)-N-[(2-Allyloxy-carbonylamino)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxybenzoyl]-4-(acyloxy-2-ethyl)-2-(tert-butyl-dimethylsilyloxymethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (28)

Acetic anhydride (8.17 g, 7.55 mL, 80 mmol) and pyridine (30.2 mL) were added to the alcohol 27 (0.953 g, 1.60 mmol) and the solution stirred for 16 hours under nitrogen at which point TLC revealed reaction completion (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether). The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and treated dropwise with MeOH (15 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 1 hour the mixture was treated dropwise with H<sub>2</sub>O (30.2 mL) and allowed to stir for a further 16 h. Following dilution with EtOAc (56 mL), the solution was cooled to 0°C and treated dropwise with 6 N HCl (56 mL). The layers were separated and the organic phase was washed with 6N HCl (2 X 28 mL) and the combined aqueous layers were then extracted with EtOAc (70 mL). The combined organic phases were then washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (60 mL), brine (60 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude oil was a mixture of the desired product 28 and the TBDMS cleaved compound 29 as judged by TLC. Purification by flash chromatography (20 - 100% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) provided 29 (0.2 g) and desired acyl-TBDMS compound 28 (0.59 g, 58%) as a colourless oil:  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -87.04^\circ$  ( $c = 4.91$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  8.77 (br s, 1H), 7.94 (br s, 1H), 7.49-7.31 (m, 5H), 6.80 (s, 1H), 6.37 (br s, 1H), 6.02-5.89 (m, 1H), 5.35 (dd, 1H,  $J = 17.22, 1.65$  Hz), 5.24 (d, 1H,  $J = 10.30$  Hz), 5.19 (s, 2H), 4.64-4.61 (m, 3H), 4.12 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.78$  Hz), 4.03-3.95 (m, 1H), 3.83-3.75 (m, 4H), 2.85-2.75 (m, 1H), 2.64-2.60 (m, 1H), 2.40-2.26 (m, 2H), 2.03 (s, 3H), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.04, 0.01 and -0.01 (s x 3, 6H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  170.9, 165.5, 153.5, 150.6, 144.1, 136.3, 132.7, 132.5, 128.6, 128.1, 127.7, 126.5, 122.2, 118.0, 114.3, 112.2, 106.1, 70.7, 65.7, 62.4, 60.4, 59.2, 56.7, 34.6, 31.7, 27.9, 25.8, 20.9, 18.2, -5.4; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 640 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 3), 639 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 7), 638 ( $M^+$ , 15), 623 (2), 583 (3), 582 (6), 581 (14), 539 (2), 523 (3), 490 (3), 341 (5), 340 (22), 301 (5), 300 (18), 299 (75), 283 (3), 282 (14), 256 (4), 242 (7), 241 (5), 240 (16), 239 (62), 226 (6), 192 (3), 182 (8), 181 (5), 180 (3), 168 (5), 166 (5), 154 (10), 131 (3), 106 (3), 95 (4), 94 (48),

93 (5), 92 (8), 91 (100), 89 (5), 75 (6), 73 (8), 65 (3), 57 (3); IR (NEAT) 3324 (br, NH), 3066, 3018, 2954, 2930, 2857, 1737, 1622, 1598, 1523, 1489, 1464, 1409, 1363, 1327, 1230, 1205, 1168, 1115, 1080, 1030, 994, 937, 839, 756, 697, 667, 638, 606, 472, 459, 443  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_2\text{O}_8\text{Si}$   $m/e$  638.3024, obsd  $m/e$  638.3223.

**(2S)-N-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxybenzoyl]-4-(acyloxy-2-ethyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (29)**

10 A solution of the silyl ether **28** (0.83 g, 1.30 mmol) in THF (14 mL) was treated with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (14 mL) and glacial acetic acid (42 mL). After 2 hours stirring at room temperature TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) showed the complete consumption of  
15 starting material. The mixture was cooled (ice) and treated dropwise with a solution of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (64 g) in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (640 mL). The aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (3 X 100 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (150 mL), brine (100 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the crude product as an orange oil. Purification by  
20 flash chromatography (60% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the pure alcohol **29** as a white glass (0.537 g, 81%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -83.60^\circ$  ( $c = 0.25$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.56 (br s, 1H), 7.89 (br s, 1H), 7.49-7.29 (m, 5H), 6.81 (s, 1H), 6.28 (br s, 1H), 6.03-5.89 (m, 1H), 5.35 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 17.22, 3.11, 1.46$ , Hz), 5.25 (d, 1H,  $J = 10.44$  Hz), 5.19 (s, 2H), 4.80-4.70 (m, 1H), 4.65-4.62 (m, 2H), 4.41-4.31 (m, 1H), 4.20-4.06 (m, 2H), 3.84-3.77 (m, 5H), 2.98-2.88 (m, 1H), 2.39 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.51$  Hz), 2.33-2.25 (m, 1H), 2.03 (s, 3H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  170.8, 167.1, 153.5, 151.0, 144.3, 136.1, 132.6, 132.4,  
30 128.6, 128.1, 127.7, 126.3, 122.6, 118.1, 112.2, 106.3, 70.7, 66.5, 65.8, 62.0, 61.7, 56.8, 35.4, 31.7, 27.8, 20.9; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 525 ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ , 5), 524 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 14), 341 (5), 340 (16), 299 (2), 283 (3), 282 (14), 256 (4), 227 (5), 208 (2), 192 (3), 190 (2), 186 (9), 185 (60), 168 (2), 167 (5), 166 (2), 164 (2), 163 (2), 154 (3), 136 (3), 131 (3), 126 (7), 125 (53), 108 (2), 107 (2), 106 (2), 105 (3), 95 (3), 94 (19), 93 (3), 92 (9), 91 (100), 83 (2), 69 (2), 68 (3), 67 (3), 65 (5), 58 (6), 57 (17); IR ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3335 (br), 2933,

1732, 1599, 1524, 1455, 1434, 1408, 1231, 1170, 1112, 1029, 995, 932, 868, 765, 698, 638, 606  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O}_8$   $m/e$  524.2159, obsd  $m/e$  524.2074.

5     **(11*S*,11*aS*)-2-(Acyloxy-2-ethyl)-10-allyloxycarbonyl-8-benzyloxy-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-1,10,11,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (30)**

10     **Method A:** A solution of DMSO (0.25 mL, 0.27 g, 3.49 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (10 mL) was added dropwise over 35minutes to a solution of oxalyl chloride (0.87 mL of a 2.0 M solution in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , 1.75 mmol) at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$  (liq. $\text{N}_2$ /Chlorobenzene) under a nitrogen atmosphere. After stirring at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$  for 40minutes, a solution of the alcohol **29** (0.51 g, 0.97 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (7 mL) was added dropwise over 35minutes at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$ . After 55minutes at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$ , the mixture was treated dropwise with a solution of TEA (0.57 mL, 0.41 g, 4.10 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (5 mL) over 40minutes at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$ . After a further 45minutes, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and was diluted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (60 mL), washed with 1N HCl (60 mL),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (60 mL), brine (30 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. TLC (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) of the crude material revealed complete reaction. Purification by flash chromatography (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the protected carbinolamine **30** as a creamy glass (0.25 g, 49%).

25     **Method B:** A solution of the alcohol **29** (0.21 g, 0.40 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  (30 mL, 3:1) was treated with 4 Å powdered molecular sieves (0.15 g) and NMO (69 mg, 0.59 mmol). After 15minutes stirring at room temperature, TPAP (6.9 mg, 19.8  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) was added and stirring continued for a further 1 hour at which point TLC (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) showed product formation along with some unoxidised starting material. The mixture was then treated with a further quantity of NMO (35 mg, 0.30 mmol) and TPAP (3.50 mg, 10  $\mu\text{mol}$ ), and allowed to stir for a further 1.5 hours after which time TLC revealed complete reaction. The mixture was evaporated *in vacuo* onto silica and subjected to flash chromatography (50%

30

35

EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to provide the protected carbinolamine **30** as a creamy glass (95 mg, 46%):  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = +113.85^\circ$  ( $c = 0.95$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.49-7.26 (m, 6H), 6.80 (s, 1H), 6.76 (s, 1H), 5.79-5.59 (m, 1H), 5.75 (d, 1H,  $J = 10.08$  Hz), 5.19-5.05 (m, 4H), 4.52-4.29 (m, 2H), 4.28-4.08 (m, 3H), 3.95-3.80 (m, 4H), 2.99 (dd, 1H,  $J = 10.72, 16.94$  Hz), 2.66 (d, 1H,  $J = 16.86$  Hz), 2.46 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.41$  Hz), 2.06 (s, 3H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  171.1, 163.1, 155.9, 150.3, 149.1, 136.1, 131.8, 128.7, 128.6, 128.2, 127.3, 125.3, 124.4, 121.6, 118.0, 114.8, 111.0, 85.9, 71.1, 66.8, 62.0, 70.7, 59.4, 56.2, 37.0, 27.9, 21.0; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 522 ( $M^+$ , 13), 463 (9), 462 (13), 341 (8), 340 (32), 282 (11), 256 (3), 183 (5), 154 (3), 123 (8), 94 (20), 91 (100), 65 (4), 57 (15); exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{30}\text{N}_2\text{O}_8$   $m/e$  522.2002, obsd  $m/e$  522.2008.

**Example 1(c): (11aS)-2-(Acyloxy-2-ethyl)-8-benzyloxy-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (31, UP2051, SJG-301)**

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (5.26 mg, 4.55  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) was added to a stirred solution of the Alloc-protected carbinolamine **30** (95 mg, 0.18 mmol), triphenylphosphine (2.39 mg, 9.10  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) and pyrrolidine (13.6 mg, 0.19 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (10 mL). After 1 hour stirring at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere, TLC (97%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (99.5%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) to afford the PBD (**31**, **SJG-301**, **UP2051**) as an orange glass which was repeatedly evaporated *in vacuo* with  $\text{CHCl}_3$  in order to provide the N10-C11 imine form (66.3 mg, 87%):  $[\alpha]_D^{21} = +741.67^\circ$  ( $c = 0.66$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (imine)  $\delta$  7.78 (d, 1H,  $J = 4.03$  Hz), 7.70-7.28 (m, 6H), 6.83 (s, 1H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 5.19-5.18 (m, 2H), 4.27-4.16 (m, 2H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.44-3.35 (m, 1H), 3.28-3.15 (m, 1H), 3.04-2.97 (m, 1H), 2.52-2.47 (m, 2H), 2.06 (s, 3H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  170.9, 162.6, 161.1, 150.9, 148.2, 140.1, 136.1, 132.1, 132.0, 128.7, 128.6, 128.1, 127.3, 124.7, 121.4, 111.9, 111.6, 70.8, 61.9, 56.2, 53.6, 37.4, 27.9, 21.0; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative

intensity) 421 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 4), 420 ( $M^+$ , 14), 419 (12), 418 (36), 361 (6), 360 (20), 328 (3), 313 (8), 270 (4), 269 (7), 268 (9), 267 (22), 256 (4), 129 (3), 105 (3), 94 (4), 93 (3), 92 (12), 91 (100), 83 (3), 80 (3), 73 (5), 71 (3), 69 (3), 65 (5), 60 (4), 57 (5), 55 (4); IR ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3313 (br), 2957, 2934, 1736, 1598, 1509, 1455, 1437, 1384, 1243, 1179, 1120, 1096, 1037, 753, 696, 666, 542  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{14}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ ,  $m/e$  420.1685, obsd  $m/e$  420.1750.

10 **(11S,11aS)-10-Allyloxycarbonyl-8-benzyloxy-11-hydroxy-2-(hydroxy-2-ethyl)-7-methoxy-1,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (32).**

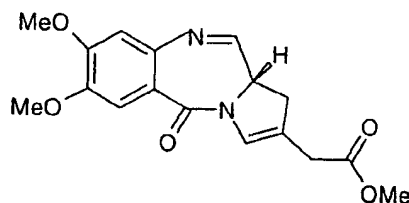
A solution of  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$  (328 mg, 2.38 mmol) in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (6 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of the acyl compound **30** (0.248 g, 0.475 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (3 mL) and MeOH (8 mL). After 15 stirring for 16 hours at room temperature TLC (EtOAc) revealed complete reaction. The MeOH/ $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  was evaporated *in vacuo* to give a cloudy aqueous solution which was diluted with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 X 30 mL). The combined 20 organic layers were then washed with brine (30 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to provide a creamy oil. Purification by flash chromatography (97%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) furnished the homoallylic alcohol **32** as a transparent 25 colourless glass (178 mg, 78%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +48.43^\circ$  ( $c = 1.56$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.43-7.24 (m, 6H), 6.84 (s, 1H), 6.73 (s, 1H), 5.74-5.55 (m, 1H), 5.73 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.79$  Hz), 5.19-5.06 (m, 4H), 4.46-4.23 (m, 2H), 3.92-3.70 (m, 6H), 3.07-2.97 (m, 1H), 2.67 (d, 1H,  $J = 16.49$  Hz), 2.40-2.17 (m, 2H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  163.1, 155.8, 150.3, 149.1, 136.1, 131.8, 128.6, 128.1, 127.7, 127.4, 125.3, 124.1, 124.0, 123.1, 123.0, 117.9, 114.9, 110.9, 86.0, 71.1, 66.7, 60.3, 30 59.6, 56.2, 37.1, 31.5; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 482 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 4), 481 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 10), 480 ( $M^+$ , 26), 449 (4), 378 (12), 347 (7), 341 (7), 340 (25), 339 (4), 284 (4), 282 (10), 143 (4), 141 (13), 131 (6), 112 (24), 110 (4), 94 (10), 92 35 (9), 91 (100), 80 (4), 70 (5), 69 (7), 65 (4), 58 (11), 57 (29); exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}$ ,  $m/e$  480.1897, obsd  $m/e$  480.1886.

**Example 1(d): (11a*S*)-8-Benzylloxy-2-(hydroxy-2-ethyl)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (33, UP2052, SJG-303).**

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (9.39 mg, 8.13  $\mu$ mol) was added to a stirred solution of the Alloc-protected carbinolamine **30** (156 mg, 0.33 mmol), triphenylphosphine (4.26 mg, 16.3  $\mu$ mol) and pyrrolidine (24.3 mg, 0.34 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (15 mL). After 1 hour 50 minutes stirring at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere, TLC (90%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (98%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) to afford the PBD (**33**, **SJG-303**, **UP2052**) as an orange glass which was repeatedly evaporated *in vacuo* with  $\text{CHCl}_3$  in order to provide the N10-C11 imine form (103 mg, 84%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  7.75 (d, 1H,  $J = 4.03$  Hz), 7.58-7.22 (m, 6H), 6.82-6.80 (m, 2H), 5.17-4.88 (m, 2H), 4.65-4.20 (m, 2H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.35-3.25 (m, 1H), 3.18-3.15 (m, 1H), 3.04-2.97 (m, 1H), 2.52-2.47 (m, 2H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  162.8, 161.1, 152.3, 150.9, 148.1, 142.3, 138.3, 136.4, 128.7, 128.6, 128.2, 127.4, 124.2, 123.1, 111.8, 111.6, 70.8, 60.4, 56.2, 53.6, 37.7, 31.5; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 380 (13), 379 (11), 378 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 42), 377 (36), 376 (77), 375 (6), 347 (8), 345 (5), 334 (5), 333 (19), 288 (14), 287 (14), 286 (36), 285 (50), 272 (6), 271 (22), 269 (6), 268 (6), 267 (5), 259 (5), 257 (13), 255 (24), 243 (15), 155 (6), 136 (5), 124 (7), 106 (6), 93 (6), 92 (38), 91 (100), 65 (16), 63 (5), 51 (5); IR ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3313, 2918, 1623, 1598, 1568, 1509, 1455, 1436, 1386, 1328, 1243, 1218, 1175, 1130 1061, 1007, 870, 831, 792, 752, 697, 662  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calculated for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$ ,  $m/e$  378.1580, obsd  $m/e$  378.1576.

Repeated evaporation *in vacuo* of **UP2052** with  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  provided the N10-C11 methyl ether forms:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  7.66-7.22 (m, 6H), 6.82-6.81 (m, 2H), 5.21-4.76 (m, 2H), 4.61-4.15 (m, 1H), 4.03-3.71 (m, 5H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 3.35-1.92 (m, 7H).

Example 1(e): Synthesis of the C7,C8-Dimethoxy-C2-Methoxycarbonylmethyl PBD AN-SJG (42, UP2065) (see Figure 4)



**(2S) (4R)-N-(4,5-Dimethoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)-2-(tert-butyltrimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (35)**

- 5 A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a stirred solution of the nitro-acid **34** (12.45 g, 54.8 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (5.75 mL, 8.37 g, 65.9 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (300 mL). After 16 hours at room temperature the resulting acid chloride solution was added dropwise over 4.5 hours to a stirred
- 10 mixture of the amine **2** (12.65 g, 54.8 mmol) and TEA (13.86 g, 19.1 mL, 137 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (300 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 2.5 h. The mixture was washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (300 mL),
- 15 saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (300 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (250 mL), brine (300 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the crude product as a dark orange oil. Purification by flash chromatography (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) isolated the pure amide **35** as a sticky orange oil (18.11 g, 75%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -105.7^\circ$  ( $c = 1.17$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  7.71 and 7.68 (s x 2, 1H), 6.86 and 6.79 (s x 2, 1H), 4.50 and 4.38 (br s x 2, 2H), 4.13-4.10 (m, 1H), 3.98 (s, 3H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.78-3.74 (m, 1H), 3.35-3.27 (m, 1H), 3.07 (d, 1H,  $J = 11.17$  Hz), 3.01-2.79 (br s, 1H), 2.35-2.26 (m, 1H), 2.11-2.04 (m, 1H), 0.91 and 0.81 (s x 2, 9H), 0.10, 0.09, -0.07, and -0.10 (s x 4, 6H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  166.6, 154.2 and 154.1, 149.3 and 148.9, 137.5, 128.0, 109.2, 107.1, 70.1 and 69.4, 64.7 and 62.5, 59.0 and 54.9, 57.3, 56.6, 56.5, 37.4 and 36.3, 25.9 and 25.7, 18.2, -5.4, -5.5 and -5.7; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 440 ( $M^+$ , 2), 426 (9), 386 (4), 385 (20), 384 (65), 383 (100), 367 (4), 320 (4), 308 (7), 295 (8), 286 (5), 211 (15), 210 (100), 194 (12), 180 (4), 165 (17), 164 (8), 137 (4), 136 (25), 121 (4), 93 (6), 91 (9), 82 (6), 75



(15), 73 (15), 59 (4), 57 (4); IR (NEAT) 3391 (br, OH), 3012, 2952, 2931, 2857, 1616, 1578, 1522, 1456, 1436, 1388, 1338, 1279, 1225, 1183, 1151, 1074, 1053, 1029, 1004, 939, 870, 836, 816, 785, 757, 668, 650, 620  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_7\text{Si}$   $m/e$  440.1979, obsd  $m/e$  440.1903.

**(2S)(4R)-N-(2-Amino-4,5-dimethoxybenzoyl)-2-(tert-butyl)-dimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (36)**

A solution of hydrazine (6.59 g, 6.40 mL, 205.5 mmol) in MeOH (110 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of the nitro-compound **35** (18.1 g, 41.1 mmol), over anti-bumping granules and Raney Ni (2.6 g) in MeOH (325 mL) and heated at reflux. After 1 hour at reflux TLC (95%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) revealed some amine formation. The reaction mixture was treated with further Raney Ni (2.6 g) and hydrazine (6.40 mL) in MeOH (50 mL) and was heated at reflux for an additional 30 minutes at which point TLC revealed reaction completion. The reaction mixture was then treated with sufficient Raney Ni to decompose any remaining hydrazine and heated at reflux for a further 1.5 h. Following cooling to room temperature the mixture was filtered through a sinter and the resulting filtrate evaporated in vacuo. The resulting residue was then treated with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (300 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to provide the amine **36** as a green oil (16.03 g, 95%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -116.32^\circ$  ( $c = 0.31$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  6.70 (s, 1H), 6.28 (s, 1H), 4.51-4.49 (m, 1H), 4.36-4.34 (m, 1H), 4.06-3.77 (m, 10H), 3.61-3.50 (m, 3H), 2.23-2.21 (m, 1H), 2.01-1.98 (m, 1H), 0.89 (s, 9H), 0.04 (s, 6H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  170.2, 151.5, 141.2, 140.5, 112.2, 112.0, 101.1, 70.4, 62.6, 59.0, 56.9, 56.6, 55.8, 35.7, 25.9 and 25.7, 18.2, -5.4 and -5.5; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 412 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 3), 411 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 10), 410 ( $M^+$ , 32), 354 (6), 353 (23), 263 (3), 212 (5), 181 (11), 180 (100), 179 (3), 165 (3), 164 (6), 152 (10), 137 (4), 136 (4), 125 (5), 120 (3), 100 (3), 94 (6), 75 (9), 73 (7), 57 (3); IR ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3353 (br), 2953, 2930, 2857, 1623, 1594, 1558, 1517, 1464, 1435, 1404, 1260, 1234, 1215, 1175, 1119, 1060, 1005, 915, 836, 777, 755, 666  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_7\text{Si}$   $m/e$  410.2237, obsd  $m/e$  410.2281.

**(2S)(4R)-N-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethoxybenzoyl]-2-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (37)**

A solution of the amine **36** (16.03 g, 39 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (450 mL) was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and treated with pyridine (6.94 mL, 6.78 g, 85.8 mmol). A solution of allyl chloroformate (4.35 mL, 4.94 g, 40.95 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (90 mL) was then added dropwise to the stirred mixture. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 1.5 h, at which point TLC (EtOAc) revealed complete consumption of amine **36**. The reaction mixture was washed with saturated CuSO<sub>4</sub> (300 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (300 mL), brine (300 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (35% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford the pure alloc-amino compound **37** as a clear oil (16.78 g, 87%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -93.35^\circ$  ( $c = 0.27$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  8.93 (br s, 1H), 7.72 (s, 1H), 6.77 (s, 1H), 6.01-5.87 (m, 1H), 5.34 (dd, 1H,  $J = 17.22, 3.12$  Hz), 5.23 (dd, 1H,  $J = 10.44, 1.29$  Hz), 4.63-4.55 (m, 3H), 4.40-4.38 (m, 1H), 4.15-4.08 (m, 1H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.81 (s, 3H), 3.62-3.55 (m, 3H), 2.34-2.24 (m, 2H), 2.07-1.99 (m, 1H), 0.89 (s, 9H), 0.05 and 0.04 (s x 2, 6H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  169.5, 153.8, 150.9, 143.8, 132.5, 118.0, 115.9, 111.0, 104.6, 70.5, 65.8, 62.2, 59.0, 57.2, 56.2, 56.0, 35.7 and 31.1, 25.8, 18.1, -5.4 and -5.5; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 496 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 6), 495 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 18), 494 ( $M^+$ , 50), 439 (11), 438 (29), 437 (100), 380 (4), 379 (14), 337 (13), 336 (4), 265 (15), 264 (91), 263 (4), 258 (6), 224 (4), 223 (15), 220 (11), 212 (7), 208 (4), 207 (11), 206 (75), 192 (5), 180 (20), 179 (18), 174 (15), 172 (4), 164 (7), 156 (5), 152 (5), 150 (6), 136 (4), 99 (9), 86 (16), 75 (10), 73 (11), 57 (6); IR (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3337 (br), 2952, 2930, 2857, 1733, 1600, 1522, 1458, 1420, 1399, 1327, 1288, 1261, 1229, 1203, 1165, 1121, 1039, 1004, 931, 836, 777, 668 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub>Si  $m/e$  494.2448, obsd  $m/e$  494.2365.

**(2S)-N-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethoxybenzoyl]-2-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-oxopyrrolidine (38)**

A solution of DMSO (7.24 mL, 7.97 g, 102 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (150

mL) was added dropwise over 2 hours to a solution of oxalyl chloride (25.5 mL of a 2.0 M solution in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , 51.0 mmol) at  $-60^\circ\text{C}$  ( $\text{liq.N}_2/\text{CHCl}_3$ ) under a nitrogen atmosphere. After stirring at  $-50^\circ\text{C}$  for 1 hour, a solution of the alcohol **37** (16.75 g, 33.9 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (250 mL) was added dropwise over a period of 2 h. After 1 hour at  $-55^\circ\text{C}$ , the mixture was treated dropwise with a solution of TEA (32.2 mL, 23.4 g, 231 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (100 mL) and allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was treated with brine (250 mL) and washed with cold 1N HCl (2 X 300 mL). TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) analysis of the  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  layer revealed complete reaction. The layers were separated and the organic phase washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (300 mL), brine (300 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give the ketone **38** as an orange glass (16.37 g, 98%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -9.96^\circ$  ( $c = 1.51$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.69 (s, 1H), 7.82 (s, 1H), 6.75 (s, 1H), 6.01-5.89 (m, 1H), 5.36 (dd, 1H,  $J = 17.22, 3.11$  Hz), 5.28-5.23 (m, 1H), 5.20-4.95 (m, 1H), 4.65-4.62 (m, 2H), 4.20-3.83 (m, 9H), 3.67-3.56 (m, 1H), 2.74 (dd, 1H,  $J = 17.86, 9.44$  Hz), 2.52 (d, 1H,  $J = 17.95$  Hz), 0.87 (s, 9H), 0.05 (s, 6H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  208.9, 169.1, 153.5, 151.3, 143.9, 132.4, 118.2, 114.4, 110.1, 104.6, 66.1, 65.8, 56.2, 56.0, 39.7, 25.6, 18.0, -5.7 and -5.8; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 494 ( $\text{M}^+ + 2$ , 6), 493 ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ , 16), 492 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 43), 437 (8), 436 (22), 435 (74), 377 (11), 336 (6), 335 (21), 334 (8), 294 (8), 265 (9), 264 (50), 250 (5), 223 (17), 220 (18), 208 (7), 207 (15), 206 (100), 192 (9), 180 (23), 179 (28), 172 (33), 171 (10), 164 (16), 155 (7), 152 (9), 150 (16), 136 (13), 115 (14), 108 (6), 88 (6), 75 (20), 73 (33), 59 (13), 58 (6), 57 (62), 56 (14); IR (NEAT) 3337 (br, NH), 3086, 3019, 2954, 2932, 2858, 1766, 1732, 1623, 1603, 1520, 1464, 1398, 1362, 1332, 1313, 1287, 1262, 1204, 1166, 1110, 1052, 1038, 1004, 938, 870, 838, 810, 756, 666, 621, 600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_2\text{O}_7\text{Si}$   $m/e$  492.2292, obsd  $m/e$  492.2349.

2*S*)-*N*-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethoxybenzoyl]-2-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (39)

Petroleum ether (70 mL) was added to a sample of NaH (0.41 g of a 60% dispersion in oil, 10.16 mmol) and stirred at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere. After 0.5 hours the mixture was allowed to settle and the Petroleum Ether was transferred from the flask via a double-tipped needle under nitrogen. THF (60 mL) was added to the remaining residue and the mixture was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone). The cool solution was treated dropwise with a solution of methyldiethylphosphonoacetate (1.86 mL, 2.14 g, 10.16 mmol) in THF (60 mL) under nitrogen. After 1.5 hours at room temperature, the mixture was cooled to 0°C and treated dropwise with a solution of the ketone 38 (2.0 g, 4.07 mmol) in THF (36 mL) under nitrogen. After 16 hours at room temperature, TLC (20% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed reaction completion. The THF was evaporated in vacuo and the mixture partitioned between saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (100 mL) and EtOAc (100 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with EtOAc (2 X 100 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a dark red oil. Purification by flash chromatography (15% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the *endo*-ester 39 as a golden oil (1.63 g, 73%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers) δ 8.82 (br s, 1H), 7.86 (s, 1H), 6.79 (s, 1H), 6.46 (br s, 1H), 6.03-5.89 (m, 1H), 5.39-5.32 (m, 1H), 5.24 (dd, 1H, *J* = 10.44, 1.28 Hz), 4.70-4.59 (m, 3H), 3.99-3.61 (m, 11H), 3.08 (s, 2H), 2.91-2.82 (m, 1H), 2.75-2.66 (m, 1H), 0.92-0.79 (m, 9H), 0.12--0.03 (m, 6H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers) δ 170.7, 165.8, 153.5, 151.3, 143.7, 132.8, 132.5, 128.2, 118.1, 118.0, 117.9, 111.3, 104.3, 65.7, 62.3, 59.5 and 59.4, 56.4, 56.0, 52.0, 34.7, 33.9, 25.8, 18.1, -5.4; MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 549 (*M*<sup>+</sup> + 1, 7), 548 (*M*<sup>+</sup>, 17), 525 (13), 507 (14), 492 (6), 491 (18), 489 (8), 449 (7), 347 (11), 287 (6), 286 (20), 285 (82), 265 (10), 264 (51), 263 (9), 244 (9), 242 (7), 228 (19), 227 (8), 226 (18), 224 (6), 223 (22), 220 (12), 208 (6), 207 (18), 206 (100), 192 (7), 180 (18), 179 (21), 168 (16), 164 (10), 152 (13), 150 (8), 141 (8),

140 (73), 139 (13), 136 (6), 108 (6), 89 (9), 80 (15), 75 (15), 73 (19), 57 (6); exact mass calcd for  $C_{27}H_{40}N_2O_8Si$   $m/e$  548.2554, obsd  $m/e$  548.2560

5 **(2S)-N-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethoxybenzoyl]-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-2,3-dihydropyrrole (40).**

A solution of the silyl ether **39** (1.63 g, 2.97 mmol) in THF (12.6 mL) was treated with  $H_2O$  (12.6 mL) and glacial acetic acid (38 mL). After 2 hours stirring at room temperature TLC (60% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) showed the complete consumption of starting material. The mixture was cooled (ice) and treated dropwise with a solution of  $NaHCO_3$  (61.6 g) in  $H_2O$  (616 mL). The aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (3 X 150 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with  $H_2O$  (150 mL),  
10 brine (100 mL), dried ( $MgSO_4$ ), filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give the crude alcohol **40** as an orange oil (1.27 g, 98%): MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 435 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 6), 434 ( $M^+$ , 23), 347 (5), 317 (4), 281 (6), 265 (8), 264 (44), 263 (8), 224 (5), 223 (24), 222 (5), 220 (9), 207 (15), 206 (94),  
15 192 (5), 180 (18), 179 (18), 172 (12), 171 (100), 164 (12), 152 (7), 150 (7), 141 (6), 140 (53), 136 (9), 112 (11), 108 (6), 80 (12), 69 (7); exact mass calcd for  $C_{21}H_{26}N_2O_8$   $m/e$  434.1689, obsd  $m/e$  434.1606.  
20

25 **(11S,11aS)-10-Allyloxycarbonyl-7,8-dimethoxy-11-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-1,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (41)**

A solution of DMSO (0.75 mL, 0.82 g, 10.5 mmol) in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (22 mL) was added dropwise over 1 hour 20 minutes to a solution of oxalyl chloride (2.63 mL of a 2.0 M solution in  $CH_2Cl_2$ , 5.26 mmol) at  $-45^\circ C$  (liq. $N_2$ /Chlorobenzene) under a nitrogen  
30 atmosphere. After stirring at  $-45^\circ C$  for 1 h, a solution of the alcohol **40** (1.27 g, 2.92 mmol) in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (22 mL) was added dropwise over 1 hour at  $-45^\circ C$ . After 50 minutes at  $-45^\circ C$ , the mixture was treated dropwise with a solution of TEA (1.71 mL,  
35 1.24 g, 12.29 mmol) in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (11 mL) over 30 minutes at  $-45^\circ C$ . After a further 30 minutes, the reaction mixture was allowed to

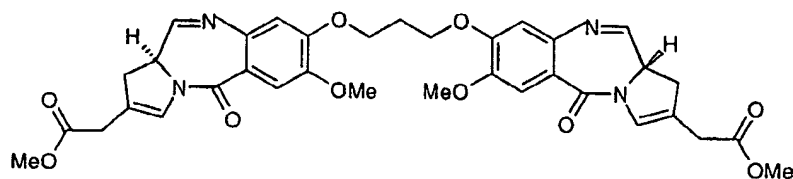
warm to room temperature and was diluted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (20 mL), washed with 1N HCl (100 mL),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. TLC (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) of the crude material revealed reaction completion. Purification by flash chromatography (55% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the protected carbinolamine **41** as a white glass (0.68 g, 54%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +219.78^\circ$  ( $c = 0.12$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.23 (s, 1H), 6.91 (s, 1H), 6.70 (s, 1H), 5.90-5.80 (m, 2H), 5.17-5.13 (m, 2H), 4.70 (dd, 1H,  $J = 13.37, 5.31$  Hz), 4.50-4.43 (m, 1H), 3.98-3.75 (m, 8H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.20-3.05 (m, 3H), 2.75 (d, 1H,  $J = 17.04$  Hz);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  170.7, 163.3, 155.9, 151.1, 148.5, 131.7, 128.3, 126.2, 124.7, 118.1, 117.6, 112.6, 110.6, 86.0, 66.8, 59.4, 56.2, 52.1, 37.0, 33.7; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 434 ( $\text{M}^+ + 2$ , 6), 433 ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ , 21), 432 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 74), 414 (8), 373 (14), 329 (7), 293 (20), 292 (20), 265 (19), 264 (100), 263 (33), 248 (25), 224 (6), 223 (25), 220 (14), 209 (8), 208 (52), 207 (24), 206 (92), 192 (15), 191 (6), 190 (7), 180 (18), 179 (23), 169 (23), 165 (10), 164 (17), 152 (12), 150 (14), 149 (8), 141 (9), 140 (60), 136 (11), 125 (6), 120 (5), 110 (8), 108 (15), 81 (9), 80 (45), 57 (7); IR ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3385 (br), 2918, 2849, 1707, 1625, 1605, 1516, 1457, 1436, 1405, 1311, 1282, 1245, 1217, 1172, 1116, 1046, 1001, 968, 933, 874, 855, 666  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

**(11aS)-7,8-Dimethoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylmethyl)-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (42, UP2065, AN-SJG)**

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (44.0 mg, 38.0  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) was added to a stirred solution of the Alloc-protected carbinolamine **41** (0.66 g, 1.53 mmol), triphenylphosphine (20.0 mg, 77.0  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) and pyrrolidine (114 mg, 1.60 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (100 mL). After 2 hours stirring at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere, TLC (99%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (98%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) to afford the PBD (**42, AN-SJG, UP2065**) as an orange glass which was repeatedly evaporated *in vacuo* with  $\text{CHCl}_3$ , in order to

provide the N10-C11 imine form (481 mg, 95%):  $[\alpha]^{22}_D = +401.84^\circ$  ( $c = 1.00$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.87-7.85 (m, 1H), 7.49 (s, 1H), 6.93 (s, 1H), 6.81 (s, 1H), 4.34-4.27 (m, 1H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 3.34 (d, 1H,  $J =$   
 5 16.85 Hz), 3.24 (s, 2H), 3.19-3.10 (m, 1H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  170.6, 162.7, 161.4, 151.8, 147.7, 140.4, 126.5, 119.0, 117.4, 111.5, 109.8, 56.2, 56.1, 53.8, 52.1, 37.4, 33.6; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 332 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 5), 331 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 9), 330 ( $M^+$ , 41), 329 (28), 328 (100), 313 (18), 272  
 10 (8), 271 (24), 270 (14), 269 (27), 262 (7), 257 (12), 255 (5), 242 (6), 225 (7), 197 (4), 192 (16), 191 (16), 183 (6), 164 (14), 136 (11), 135 (9), 106 (9), 80 (17), 53 (5); IR ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3329 (br), 3112, 2952, 2842, 1737, 1626, 1602, 1512, 1453, 1436, 1381, 1356, 1246, 1213, 1173, 1096, 1069, 1008, 875,  
 15 840, 786, 666, 620, 574, 537  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ ,  $m/e$  330.1216, obsd  $m/e$  330.1237.

**Example 1(f): Synthesis of KEC-570 (56, UP-2053) (see Figure 5)**



**1', 3'-Bis(4-carboxy-2-methoxyphenoxy)propane (43)**

20 A solution of diiodopropane (8.79 g, 29.7 mmol) in THF (50 mL), was added dropwise over a period of 4 hours to a vigorously stirred solution of vanillic acid (10 g, 59.5 mmol) in THF (100 mL) and aqueous NaOH (225 mL, 0.5 M) at 65°C in the absence of light (foil-wrapped flask). After heating at  
 25 reflux for 48 hours in the dark, the suspension was cooled, washed with hexane (3 x 100 mL) and the THF removed by evaporation in vacuo. The aqueous residue was acidified to pH 1 with conc. HCl and the resultant precipitate collected by filtration, dried and recrystallised from glacial acetic acid  
 30 to afford the corresponding bis-carboxylic acid (143) as a white crystalline solid (9.4g, 84%). mp 238-240°C;  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ ):  $\delta$  2.23 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, H13), 3.80 (s, 6H,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$ ),

4.20 (t, 4H,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, **H12**), 7.09 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, **H10**),  
7.45 (d, 2H,  $J = 1.8$  Hz, **H6**) 7.54 (dd, 2H,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 1.8 Hz,  
**H9**), 12.76 (bs, 2H, **CO<sub>2</sub>H**);  $^{13}\text{C}$ -NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  28.4 (**C13**), 55.4  
(**CH<sub>3</sub>O**), 64.8 (**C12**), 111.9 (**C9**), 112.0 (**C6**), 122.9 (**C10**), 123.0  
5 (**Q**), 148.3 (**Q**), 151.6 (**Q**), 167.0 (**C=O**). IR (KBr):  $\nu = 3600$ -  
2000, 1680 (C=O), 1600 (C=C), 1515, 1465, 1430, 1345, 1310,  
1270, 1225 (C-O-C), 1180, 1140, 1115, 1030, 990, 970, 950,  
925, 875, 850, 825, 765, 725, 645  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ . MS (EI):  $m/z$  (relative  
intensity) 376 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 28), 360 (3), 249 (2), 209 (45), 165 (29),  
10 153 (16), 151 (19), 137 (19), 121 (7), 78 (15), 44 (100);  
HRMS: Calcd for  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}_8 = 376.1158$  found 376.1168.

**1',3'-Bis(4-carboxy-2-methoxy-5-nitrophenoxy)propane (44)**

The diacid **43** (2.0 g, 5.30 mmol) was added portionwise to  
conc.  $\text{HNO}_3$  (40 mL) at  $-10^\circ\text{C}$  and stirred to room temperature  
15 over 12 h. The reaction mixture was poured on to ice (400 mL)  
and the resulting precipitate collected by filtration, washed  
with ether (3 x 50 mL) and dried to afford the nitro acid  
(**121**) as a yellow solid (1.73 g, 70%). m.p.  $243$ - $246^\circ\text{C}$ .  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR  
(DMSO- $d_6$ ):  $\delta$  2.25 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz, **H13**), 3.90 (s, 6H, **CH<sub>3</sub>O**),  
20 4.27 (t, 4H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz, **H12**), 7.29 (s, 2H, **H6**), 7.62 (s, 2H,  
**H9**), 13.6 (bs, 2H, **CO<sub>2</sub>H**).  $^{13}\text{C}$ -NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  28.0 (**C13**), 56.3  
(**CH<sub>3</sub>O**), 65.7 (**C12**), 108.0 (**C9**), 111.2 (**C6**), 121.1 (**C5**), 141.3  
(**Q**), 149.1 (**C8**), 151.7 (**Q**), 165.9 (**C=O**). IR (KBr):  $\nu = 3620$ -  
2280, 1700 (C=O), 1595 (C=C), 1570, 1515 ( $\text{NO}_2$ ), 1460, 1415,  
25 1350 ( $\text{NO}_2$ ), 1270, 1210, 1180, 1135, 1045, 930, 880, 810, 750,  
730, 645  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ . MS (EI):  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 467 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 1),  
450 (1), 436 (3), 423 (8), 378 (4), 268 (1), 255 (4), 236 (4),  
210 (7), 194 (2), 182 (7), 164 (14), 153 (2), 123 (3), 91 (6),  
77 (3), 55 (5), 44 (100). HRMS (EI)  $m/z$  calcd for  $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_{12} =$   
30 466.0860 found 466.0871.

**(2S,4R)-N-(Benzyloxycarbonyl)-2-carboxy-4-hydroxypyrrolidine  
(45)**

A solution of benzyl chloroformate (12.5 mL, 87.7 mL) in  
toluene (40 mL) was added to a solution of trans-4-hydroxy-L-  
35 proline **11** (10 g, 76.3 mmol) and  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (16 g, 190 mmol) in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$   
(165 mL) over a period of 15 minutes. After stirring at room



temperature for 12 hours the two phases were allowed to separate. The aqueous phase was washed with diethyl ether (4 x 50 mL), cooled in an ice bath, and then acidified to pH 2 with conc. HCl. The resultant product was extracted with ethyl acetate (5 x 50 mL) and the combined organic extracts were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and the excess solvent evaporated in vacuo to afford a colourless viscous oil (20.30 g, 100%).  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -565^\circ$  (c 0.1, MeOH). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  2.07-2.31 (m, 3H, **H1**), 3.52-3.59 (m, 2H, **H3**), 4.43-4.53 (m, 2H, **H2**, **H11a**), 5.8 and 5.11 (s, 2H, minor and major rotamers of **H6**, 1:2), 6.0 (bs, 2H, **OH**), 7.26-7.29 and 7.32-7.34 (m, 5H, minor and major rotamers of **H arom**, 1:2). IR (thin film):  $\nu = 3414$  (OH), 2940 (OH), 1682 (C=O), 1495, 1429, 1359 (CO<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>), 1314, 1269, 1205, 1180, 1174, 1127, 1082, 1051, 993, 914, 866, 826, 769, 741, 697 cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (EI): m/e (relative intensity): 266 (M<sup>+</sup>, 1), 265 (6), 220 (5), 176 (15), 130 (34), 108 (2), 91 (100), 86 (4), 68 (11). HRMS calcd. for C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>15</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> = 265.0950 found 265.0976

**(2*S*,4*R*)-*N*-(Benzoxycarbonyl)-2-methoxycarbonyl-4-hydroxyproline (46)**

A solution of (2*S*,4*R*)-*N*-(Benzoxycarbonyl)-2-carboxy-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (**45**) (20.30 g, 76.3 mmol) in dry methanol (300 mL) was heated at reflux for 18 hours in the presence of a catalytic amount of conc. H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (2.20 mL, 7.63 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature and neutralised with Et<sub>3</sub>N (3.0 mL, 76.3 mmol). The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the residue redissolved in ethyl acetate (200 mL), washed with brine (1 x 50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and excess solvent removed under reduced pressure to afford a colourless gum (21.17 g, 99%).  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -59.4^\circ$  (c 0.014, CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  2.04-2.08 and 2.24-2.35 (m, 1H, rotamers of **H1**, 1:1), 2.64 (bs, 1H, **OH**), 3.54 and 3.74 (s, 3H, rotamers of **OMe**, 1:1), 3.66-3.69 (m, 2H, **H3**), 4.47-4.50 (m, 2H, **H2**, **H11a**), 5.07-5.13 (m, 2H, **H6**), 7.26-7.35 (m, 5H, **H arom**). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): rotamer ratio 1:1,  $\delta$  37.8 and 38.5 rotamers of (**C1**), 51.8 and 52.0 rotamers of (**OMe**), 54.1 and 54.7 rotamers of (**C3**), 57.4 and 57.7 rotamers of (**C2**), 66.9 and 67.0 rotamers of (**C6**), 68.6 and 69.3 rotamers of (**C11a**), 127.0, 127.3, 127.4, 127.7, 127.8, 128.0 and 128.1 rotamers of

(C arom). IR (thin film):  $\nu$  = 3435 (OH), 3033, 2953 (OH), 1750 (ester), 1680 (C=O), 1586, 1542, 1498, 1422, 1357 (CO<sub>2</sub>H), 1170, 1124, 1084, 1052 (C-O), 1004, 963, 916, 823, 770, 750, 699, 673 cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity): 280 (M<sup>+</sup>, 24), 236 (20), 234 (4), 216 (8), 214 (4), 213 (2), 206 (2), 204 (7), 203 (4), 202 (10), 201 (2), 181 (5), 144 (16), 102 (23), 91 (100). HRMS calcd. for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>17</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> = 279.1107 found 279.1192

**(2S,4R)-N-(Benzoxycarbonyl)-2-hydroxymethyl-4-hydroxyproline (47)**

10 Lithium borohydride (1.57 g, 73 mmol) was added portionwise to a solution of (2S,4R)-N-(benzoxycarbonyl)-2-methoxycarbonyl-4-hydroxyproline (46) (20.17 g, 73 mmol) in THF (350 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stir overnight. The resulting suspension was  
15 cooled to 0°C and quenched with water (2-3 mL) until effervescence ceased, at which point 2 M HCl (15 mL) was added to dissolve the precipitate. The product was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 150 mL) and the combined organic phases washed with brine (1 x 100 mL) and then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>).  
20 Concentration in vacuo afforded a white gum (18.25 g, 100%).  $[\alpha]^{22.1}_D = -404^\circ$  (C = 0.043, CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  1.24-1.26 (m, 1H, H1), 1.73-2.08 (m, 1H, H1), 3.40-4.30 (m, 6H, H2, H3, H11, H11a), 5.06 (bs, 1H, OH), 5.09 (s, 2H, H6) 7.25-7.31 (m, 5H, H arom). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  36.7 (C1), 55.2 (C3), 58.7 (C2), 65.0 (C11), 67.0 (C6), 68.7 (C11a), 127.0, 127.5 (C arom), 127.8 (C arom), 128.2 (C arom). IR (thin film):  $\nu$  = 3390 (OH), 3065, 3033, 2953 (OH), 1681 (C=O carbamate), 1586, 1538, 1498, 1454, 1192, 1122, 978, 914, 862, 770, 698, 673 cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity): 252 (M<sup>+</sup>, 58), 208 (33), 176 (5), 144 (6), 118 (8), 116 (7), 92 (13), 91 (100). HRMS calcd. for C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>17</sub>NO<sub>4</sub> = 251.1158 found 251.1230.

**(2S,4R)-N-Benzoxycarbonyl-2-t-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (48)**

35 t-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (5.78 g, 38.3 mmol) and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (1.44 mL, 9.6 mmol) were added to a solution of alcohol (47) (12.51 g, 49.8 mmol) and

triethylamine (7.0 mL, 49.8 mmol) in dry DCM (200 mL) which had been allowed to stir for 15 minutes at room temperature. The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours and then diluted with ethyl acetate (300 mL).

5 The organic phase was washed with aqueous saturated ammonium chloride (2 x 100 mL) and brine (1 x 100 mL) dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and the solvent removed under reduced pressure to yield a colourless viscous oil (9.84 g, 70%).  $[\alpha]^{22.3}_D = -263^\circ$  (c 0.70, CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  -0.05 and -0.06 (s, 6H, rotamers of

10 **H1'**, **H2'**, 1:1), 0.83 and 0.85 (s, 9H, rotamers of **H3'**, **H5'**, **H6'**, 1:1), 1.95-2.22 (m, 2H, **H1**), 2.78 (bs, 1H, **OH**), 3.44-3.68 (m, 3H, **H3**, **H11**), 3.99-4.10 (m, 1H, **H2**), 4.43-4.46 (m, 1H, **H11a**), 5.11-5.16 (m, 2H, **H6**) 7.34-7.35 (m, 5H, **H arom**) <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): rotamer ratio of 1:1,  $\delta$  -5.50 (**C3'**, **C5'**, **C6'**),

15 18.15 (**C4'**), 25.83 (**C1'**, **C2'**), 36.55 and 37.27 rotamers of (**C1**), 55.2 and 55.7 rotamers of (**C3**), 57.3 and 57.8 rotamers of (**C2**), 62.8 and 63.9 rotamers of (**C11**), 66.6 and 67.0 rotamers of (**C6**), 69.7 and 70.3 rotamers of (**C11a**), 127.8 (**C arom**), 127.9 (**C arom**), 128.0 (**C arom**), 128.4 (**C arom**), 128.5

20 (**C arom**), 136.5 and 136.8 rotamers of (**C7**), 154.9 and 155.2 rotamers of (**C5**). IR (thin film):  $\nu$  = 3415 (OH), 3066, 3034, 2953 (OH), 2930, 2884, 2857, 1703 (C=O carbamate), 1587, 1498, 1424, 1360 (C-CH<sub>3</sub>), 1288 (CH<sub>3</sub>Si), 1255 (t-Bu), 1220, 1195 (t-Bu), 1118 (Si-O), 1057, 1003, 917, 836, 774, 751, 698, 670 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

25 <sup>1</sup>. MS (EI/CI) m/e (relative intensity): 366 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 308 (14), 258 (2), 91 (2).

**(2S,4R)-2-t-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine**  
**(2)**

A slurry of 10% Pd/C (190 mg) in ethyl acetate (20 mL) was

30 added to a solution of TBDMS ether (**48**) (1.90 g, 5.19 mmol) in ethanol (100 mL). The reaction mixture was hydrogenated (Parr apparatus) for 16 h. The catalyst was removed by vacuum filtration through Celite and excess solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give a yellow oil in quantitative

35 yield (1.20 g, 100%).  $[\alpha]^{22.2}_D = +35.6^\circ$  (c 0.042, CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  -(0.07-0.08) (m, 6H, **H1'**, **H2'**), 0.82 (s, 9H, **H3'**, **H4'**, **H5'**), 1.68-1.73 (m, 2H, **H1**), 2.99-3.11 (m, 2H, **H11**), 3.47-3.50 (m, 3H, **H11a**, **H3**), 4.09 (bs, 1H, **NH or OH**), 4.32

(bs, 1H, NH or OH).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  -5.4 (C3', C5', C6'), 18.1 (C4'), 25.8 (C1', C2'), 37.4 (C1), 54.6 (C11), 58.1 (C2), 64.6 (C3), 72.2 (C11a). IR (thin film):  $\nu$  = 3330 (OH), 2928, 2857, 1557, 1421, 1331 (C-CH<sub>3</sub>), 1249 (CH<sub>3</sub>-Si), 1204 (t-Bu), 1191 (t-Bu), 1100 (Si-O), 1073, 993, 713  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ . MS (CI) m/e (relative intensity): 232 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 230 (13), 174 (5), 133 (6), 86 (6).

1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-nitro-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2S,4R)-2-t-butyl-  
 10 dimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (49)]

A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a stirred suspension of bis-nitroacid (44) (2.00 g, 4.28 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (0.94 mL, 10.70 mmol) in dry THF (20 mL), and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 4 h. After  
 15 evaporation of excess THF in vacuo, the resultant yellow residue was dissolved in dry THF (20 mL) and added dropwise over a period of 25 minutes to a vigorously stirred suspension of amine (2) (2.47 g, 10.70 mmol), Et<sub>3</sub>N (2.50 mL, 17.9 mmol) and ice/water (0.6 mL) cooled in an ice bath. The mixture was  
 20 then allowed to warm to room temperature for a further 1.5 h. After removal of the THF by evaporation in vacuo, the residue was diluted with water (100 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic phase was washed with water (3 x 25 mL) and brine (3 x 25 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ),  
 25 and the solvent removed in vacuo to afford a yellow oil which was purified by flash chromatography (3% MeOH/ $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) to afford the bis-amide (49) as a yellow solid (2.05g, 54%).  $[\alpha]^{23.0}_D = -993^\circ$  (c 0.033,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  -0.05 (s, 12H, H1', H2'), 0.80 (s, 18H, H3', H5', H6'), 1.96-1.99 (m, 2H, H1), 2.14-2.16 (m, 2H, H1), 2.19-2.24 (m, 2H, H13), 2.85-2.89 (m, 2H, H2) 3.16-3.19 (m, 4H, H11), 3.63-3.66 (m, 4H, H3), 3.81 (s, 6H, OMe), 3.99-4.10 (m, 2H, H3), 4.23 (t, 4H, J = 5.3 Hz, H12), 4.38 (bs, 2H, OH); 5.20-5.25 (m, 2H, H11a), 6.65 (s, 2H, H6), 7.55 (s, 2H, H9).  $^{13}\text{C}$ -NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  -5.35 (C1', C2'),  
 30 18.2 (C4'), 25.8 (C3', C5', C6'), 28.9 (C13), 36.1 (C1), 54.9 (CH<sub>3</sub>O), 56.6 (C4), 57.3 (C12), 65.0 (C3), 70.0 (C2), 108.0 (C6), 109.4 (C9), 128.2 (Q), 137.2 (Q), 148.1 (Q), 148.5 (Q), 154.5 (Q), 166.5 (Q). IR (thin film):  $\nu$  = 3392 (OH), 2950,

2856, 1623 (C=O), 1577 (C arom), 1524 (NO<sub>2</sub>), 1459, 1432, 1381, 1338 (C-CH<sub>3</sub>), 1278 (CH<sub>3</sub>-Si), 1219 (t-Bu), 1184 (t-Bu), 1075 1053, 1004, 938, 914, 837, 778, 724, 668, 649, cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) : 894 (M<sup>+</sup>, 8), 893 (19), 878 (6), 835 (2), 779 (9), 761 (6), 517 (3), 459 (5), 258 (7), 100 (3), 86 (4), 75 (29), 73 (100), 59 (17), 58 (6).

**1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2S,4R)-2-t-butyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (50)]**

10 A slurry of 10% Pd/C (155 mg) in ethyl acetate (20 mL) was added to a solution of the bis-amide (49) (1.55 g, 1.73 mmol) in ethanol (100 mL). The reaction mixture was hydrogenated (Parr apparatus) for 16 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give a yellow oil (50) in quantitative yield (1.44 g, 100%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 0.00 (s, 12H, H1', H2'), 0.88 (s, 18H, H3', H5', H6'), 2.00-2.25 (m, 6H, H1, H13), 3.50-3.72 (m, 12H, H2, H3, H11, H11a), 3.74 (s, 6H, OMe), 4.16-4.20 (m, 4H, H3), 4.30-4.35 (m, 4H, H12), 4.49 (bs, 2H, OH); 6.23 (s, 2H, H9), 6.64 (s, 2H, H6) <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ -5.5 (C1', C2'), 18.1 (C4'), 25.8 (C3', C5', C6'), 29.6 (C13), 35.2 (C1), 56.7 (CH<sub>3</sub>O), 62.2 (C4), 64.1 (C3), 70.0 (C2), 102.2 (C9), 112.6 (C6), 140.4 (Q), 141.1 (Q), 150.6 (Q), 170.1 (Q); IR (neat): ν = 3359 (OH), 2929, 2856, 1621 (C=O), 1591 (C arom), 1469, 1433, 1406, 1358, 1346 (C-CH<sub>3</sub>), 1261 (CH<sub>3</sub>-Si), 1232 (t-Bu), 1175 (t-Bu), 1117, 1056, 1006, 866, 835, 776 cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) : 834 (M<sup>+</sup>, 13), 833 (18), 773 (9), 602 (13), 399 (7), 371 (34), 232 (9), 206 (22), 192 (14), 176 (13), 166 (44), 150 (8), 100 (10), 73 (100).

**1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenyl-ene)-carbonyl]]-bis[(2S,4R)-2-t-butyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (51)]**

30 A solution of the bis-amide (50) (2.76 g, 3.31 mmol) and pyridine (1.10 mL, 13.60 mmol) in dried DCM (100 mL) was cooled to 0°C. Allyl chloroformate (0.80 mL, 7.53 mmol) in DCM 35 (50 mL) was added dropwise and the resulting mixture allowed

to warm to room temperature and stirred for 16h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (200 mL) and washed with 1 M CuSO<sub>4</sub> (3 x 50 mL), water (1 x 50 mL) and brine (1 x 50 mL) before drying (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure followed by flash column chromatography (2.5% MeOH/DCM) afforded (51) as a yellow solid (3.24 g, 97%).

[ $\alpha$ ]<sub>D</sub><sup>20.1</sup> = -571° (c 0.007, CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  0.00 (s, 12H, H1', H2'), 0.89 (s, 18H, H3', H5', H6'), 2.03-2.36 (m, 6H, H1, H13), 3.51-3.58 (m, 6H, H2, H3), 3.77 (s, 6H, OMe), 4.20-4.26 (m, 8H, H11, H12), 4.28-4.30 (m, 2H, H11a), 4.56-4.60 (m, 6H, H8', OH), 5.25 (dd, J<sub>1,2</sub> = 1.5 Hz, J<sub>1,3</sub> = 15.0 Hz, 4H, H10'), 5.90-5.95 (m, 2H, H9'), 6.73 (s, 2H, H6), 7.63 (s, 2H, H9), 8.80 (s, 2H, NH). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  -5.42 (C1', C2'), 25.8 (C3', C5', C6'), 29.2 (C13), 35.4 (C1), 56.3 (CH<sub>3</sub>O), 57.1 (C11a), 59.8 (C11), 62.2 (C3), 65.1 (C12), 65.7 (C8'), 70.5 (C2), 106.3 (C9), 111.5 (C6), 116.5 (Q), 118.1 (C10'), 131.7 (Q), 132.5 (C9'), 144.3 (Q), 150.3 (Q), 153.8 (Q), 169.5 (Q). IR (neat):  $\nu$  = 3351 (OH), 2931, 2857, 1762 (Alloc C=O), 1722, 1603 (C=O), 1521 (C arom), 1463, 1404, 1264 (CH<sub>3</sub>-Si), 1222 (t-Bu), 1106 (t-Bu), 1053, 1015, 936, 872, 837, 775, 629, cm<sup>-1</sup>.

**1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)-carbonyl]]-bis[(2S)-2-t-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-oxo-pyrrolidine (52)**

A solution of dimethyl sulphoxide (2.10 mL, 28.5 mmol) in dry DCM (20 mL) was added dropwise over a 15minutes period to a stirred, cooled (-45°C) solution of oxalyl chloride (1.27 mL, 14.60 mmol) in DCM (30 mL). After 35minutes, a solution of alcohol (51) (2.54g, 2.53 mmol) in DCM (20 mL) was added dropwise over a period of 15minutes to the reaction mixture at -45°C. After 45minutes a solution of triethylamine (5.75 mL, 40.3 mmol) in DCM (20 mL) was added over a period of 15minutes and the reaction mixture stirred at -45°C for 30minutes before warming to room temperature over 45minutes. The mixture was then washed with 1 M CuSO<sub>4</sub> (3 x 50 mL), water (2 x 50 mL) and brine (1 x 50 mL) before drying (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrating *in vacuo* to give (52) as a yellow solid (2.46g, 97%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  0.00 (s, 12H, H1', H2'), 0.86 (s, 18H, H3', H5', H6'), 2.50-2.63 (m, 6H, H1, H13), 3.63-3.70 (m, 4H, H3), 3.80

(s, 6H, OMe), 3.93-3.97 (m, 6H, H11, H11a), 4.29-4.32 (m, 4H, H12), 4.62 (d, 4H,  $J = 5.7$  Hz, H8'), 5.27-5.32 (m, 4H, H10'), 5.98-6.03 (m, 2H, H9'), 6.74 (s, 2H, H6), 7.74 (s, 2H, H9), 8.80 (s, 2H, NH).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  -5.76 (C1', C2'), 18.0 (C4'), 25.7 (C3', C5', C6'), 28.8 (C13), 39.6 (C1), 55.0 (C3), 56.4 ( $\text{CH}_3\text{O}$ ), 65.3 (C12), 65.8 (C8'), 105.9 (C9), 110.7 (C6), 118.2 (C10'), 132.4 (C9'), 150.7 (Q), 153.5 (Q), 169.1 (Q), 210.0 (C2). IR (neat):  $\nu = 3308$  (OH), 2931, 2856, 1765 (Alloc C=O), 1730, 1624 (C=O), 1602 (C=O), 1522 (C arom), 1468, 1407, 1332, 1259 ( $\text{CH}_3\text{-Si}$ ), 1204 (*t*-Bu), 1105 (*t*-Bu), 1053, 1010, 937, 870, 837, 808, 778, 674, 657  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-*N*-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)-carbonyl]]-bis[(2*S*)-2-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-methoxycarbonyl methyl-2,3-dihydropyrrole (53)

A solution of diethylmethylphosphonoacetate (0.80 mL, 4.21 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added to a suspension of NaH (343 mg, 4.21 mmol, 60% dispersion in mineral oil, washed with petroleum ether) in dry THF (50 mL) at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. After stirring at room temperature for 1 h, a solution of the dimer ketone (52) (2.04 g, 2.00 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added dropwise at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature over 18 h. Excess THF was removed under reduced pressure and the residue cooled in an ice bath before adding  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (50 mL) followed by EtOAc (50 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer washed with EtOAc (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (1 x 50 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to give a yellow oil. Flash column chromatography (2.5% MeOH/ $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ) afforded the product (53) as a yellow solid (2.00 g, 88%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  -0.01 (s, 12H, H1', H2'), 0.83 (s, 18H, H3', H5', H6'), 2.35-2.40 (m, 2H, H13), 2.65-2.86 (m, 4H, H1), 3.03-3.09 (m, 4H, H14), 3.62 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.75 (s, 6H, H16), 3.95-4.10 (m, 4H, H11), 4.24-4.35 (m, 4H, H12), 4.58-4.70 (m, 6H, H8', H11a), 5.25-5.33 (m, 4H, H10'), 5.93-5.97 (m, 2H, H9'), 6.33-6.40 (m, 2H, H3), 6.74 (s, 2H, H6), 7.80 (s, 2H, H9), 8.75 (s, 2H, NH).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  -5.52 (C1', C2'), 18.0 (C4'), 25.7 (C3', C5', C6'),

28.7 (C13), 33.8 (C14), 34.6 (C1), 51.9 (CH<sub>3</sub>O), 56.5 (C16),  
 62.2 (C11), 65.2 (C12), 65.6 (C8'), 105.4 (C9), 111.9 (C6),  
 117.9 (C10'), 128.2 (C3), 132.5 (C9'), 143.9 (Q), 150.7  
 (Q), 153.4 (Q), 165.7 (Q), 170.6 (Q). IR (neat):  $\nu$  = 3402  
 5 (OH), 2954, 2857, 1735 (ester), 1726 (Alloc C=O), 1642, 1600,  
 1526 (C arom), 1469, 1435, 1354, 1256 (CH<sub>3</sub>-Si), 1221, 1201 (t-  
 Bu), 1112 (t-Bu), 1048, 1010, 934, 866, 836, 776 cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (FAB)  
 m/z (relative intensity): No parent ion, 496 (10), 482 (9),  
 455 (11), 441 (13), 232 (12), 206 (19), 204 (10), 200 (14),  
 10 192 (34), 188 (23), 172 (33), 165 (18), 152 (17), 150 (16),  
 149 (100), 147 (17), 140 (20), 131 (18), 103 (22), 91 (47), 89  
 (27), 87 (36), 80 (33), 75 (42), 73 (77), 61 (39), 57 (53).

1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-  
 5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)-carbonyl]]-bis[(2S)-2-hydroxymethyl-  
 4-methoxycarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydropyrrole (54)  
 15

Hydrofluoric acid.pyridine complex (3.5 mL) was added to a  
 solution of dimer ester (53) (740 mg, 0.67 mmol) in THF (10  
 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C. The reaction was  
 allowed to stir for 30 minutes at 0°C and then to warm to room  
 20 temperature over 1 h. The reaction mixture was neutralised  
 with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> until evolution of CO<sub>2</sub> ceased. The product was  
 extracted with DCM (3 x 30 mL), washed with brine (1 x 20 mL)  
 and then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Removal of solvent under reduced  
 pressure gave the product as a yellow gum (530 mg, 90%). <sup>1</sup>H  
 25 NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  2.39 (m, 2H, H13), 2.95-2.99 (m, 4H, H1), 3.09-  
 3.12 (m, 4H, H14), 3.68 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.74-3.78 (m, 4H, H11),  
 3.81 (s, 6H, H16), 4.28-4.34 (m, 4H, H12), 4.62 (d, J = 5.5  
 Hz, 4H, H8'), 4.73-4.75 (m, 2H, H11a), 5.31-5.38 (m, 4H,  
 H10'), 5.96-6.02 (m, 2H, H9'), 6.39-6.50 (m, 2H, H3), 6.80 (s,  
 2H, H6), 7.72 (s, 2H, H9), 8.57 (s, 2H, NH). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$   
 30 28.8 (C13), 33.5 (C14), 35.5 (C1), 52.1 (CH<sub>3</sub>O), 56.6 (C16),  
 65.3 (C12), 66.0 (C8'), 105.6 (C9), 111.8 (C6), 118.1 (C10'),  
 128.1 (C3), 132.5 (C9'), 144.4 (Q), 151.0 (Q), 153.6 (Q), 167.3  
 (Q), 170.7 (Q). IR (neat):  $\nu$  = 3416 (OH), 2953, 1731 (ester),  
 35 1726 (Alloc C=O), 1606, 1525 (C arom), 1467, 1434, 1358, 1224,  
 1048, 938, 870, 768 cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity):  
 881 (M<sup>+</sup>, 0.2), 496 (12), 482 (15), 456 (14), 442 (13), 232  
 (23), 206 (35), 192 (63), 190 (21), 188 (17), 180 (19), 178



(25), 152 (39), 150 (23), 149 (100), 140 (50), 136 (21), 112 (23), 108 (23), 94 (29), 91 (32), 87 (24), 80 (70), 73 (28), 57 (30).

5 **1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11a*S*)-7-methoxy-10-allyloxycarbonyl-(2*S*)-2-methoxycarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydropyrrole-1,3,11a-trihydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]bezodiazepin-5-one (55)**

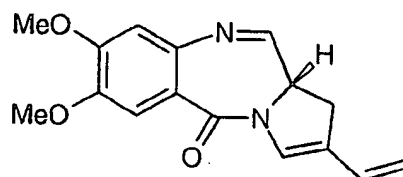
A solution of dimethyl sulphoxide (0.27 mL, 3.82 mmol) in dried DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise over a 15minutes period to a stirred, cooled (-45°C) solution of oxalyl chloride (0.17 mL, 1.92 mmol) in DCM (10 mL). After 35minutes, a solution of substrate (54) (600 mg, 0.68 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise over a period of 15minutes to the reaction mixture at -45°C. After 45minutes a solution of triethylamine (0.78 mL, 5.42 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was added over a period of 15minutes and the reaction mixture stirred at -45°C for 30minutes before being allowed to warm to room temperature over 45minutes. The mixture was then diluted with water (10 mL) and the layers separated. The organic layer was washed with 1 M HCl (3 x 50 mL), and brine (1 x 50 mL) before drying (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrating in vacuo. Flash column chromatography (1.5% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) afforded a yellow glass (457 mg, 78%). [ $\alpha$ ]<sub>D</sub><sup>20</sup> = +69° (c 0.484, CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  2.35-2.63 (m, 2H, H13), 2.75-3.10 (m, 4H, H1), 3.14-3.19 (m, 4H, H14), 3.71 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.88 (s, 6H, H16), 4.21-4.40 (m, 4H, H12), 4.45-4.50 (m, 2H, H11a), 4.60-4.62 (m, 4H, H8'), 5.26-5.30 (m, 4H, H10'), 5.77 (d, *J* = 8.61 Hz, 4H, H11) 5.90-5.96 (m, 2H, H9'), 6.75-6.80 (m, 2H, H3), 6.89 (s, 2H, H9), 7.22 (s, 2H, H6). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  28.8 (C13), 33.5 (C14), 35.5 (C1), 52.1 (CH<sub>3</sub>O), 56.6 (C16), 65.3 (C12), 66.0 (C8'), 105.6 (C9), 111.8 (C6), 118.1 (C10'), 128.1 (C3), 132.5 (C9'), 144.4 (Q), 151.0 (Q), 153.6 (Q), 167.3 (Q), 170.7 (Q). IR (neat):  $\nu$  = 3583, 3412 (OH), 1730 (ester), 1713 (Alloc C=O), 1644, 1421, 1362, 1273, 1223, 1092, 902, 757, 737, 702, 667 cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (FAB) *m/z* (relative intensity): 907 (M<sup>+</sup>, 1), 456 (6), 245 (7), 232 (16), 218 (13), 206 (23), 205 (10), 204 (14), 192 (42), 190 (17), 178 (22), 177 (10), 176 (16), 166 (17), 165 (10), 164 (16), 152 (23), 151 (12), 150 (18), 149 (100), 140 (16), 93 (18), 91

(22), 89 (13), 87 (26), 80 (58), 75 (19), 73 (28), 57 (25).

**1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-(2S)-2-methoxycarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydropyrrole-1,3,11a-trihydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]bezodiazepin-5-one (56)**

- 5 A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (16 mg, 0.014 mmol) was added to a solution of carbinolamine (55) (219 mg, 0.25 mmol), triphenylphosphine (7 mg, 0.025 mmol) and pyrrolidine (0.05 mL, 0.80 mmol) in dry DCM (30 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours before
- 10 being allowed to warm to room temperature over 1 h. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (2% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>f</sub> = 0.25 ) to yield a yellow glass (109 mg, 66%).  $[\alpha]^{20.5}_D = +500^\circ$  (c 0.043, CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 2.17-2.42 (m, 2H, **H13**), 3.15-3.32 (m, 8H, **H1**, **H14**), 3.73 (s, 3H, **OMe**), 3.91 (s, 6H, **H16**), 4.26-4.30 (m, 6H, **H12**, **H11a**), 6.84 (s, 2H, **H9**), 6.92-7.06 (m, 2H, **H3**), 7.47 (s, 2H, **H6**), 7.83 (d, J = 4.0 Hz, 4H, **H11**). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 28.7 (**C13**), 33.6 (**C14**), 37.4 (**C1**), 52.2 (**CH<sub>3</sub>O**), 53.8 (**C11**), 56.2 (**C16**), 65.4 (**C12**), 110.9 (**C9**), 111.8 (**C6**), 126.5 (**C3**), 140.2 (**Q**), 148.0 (**Q**), 151.0 (**Q**), 161.4 (**Q**), 162.6 (**C11a**), 170.7 (**Q**). IR (neat): ν = 3583, 3394, 2997, 2950, 1736 (ester), 1717 (Alloc C=O), 1628, 1596, 1511, 1483, 1451, 1431, 1382, 1273, 1245, 1197, 1152, 1068, 995, 963, 914, 842, 753 cm<sup>-1</sup>.
- 15 <sup>1</sup>. FABMS m/z (relative intensity): 673 (M<sup>+</sup>, 2), 279 (6), 277 (4), 201 (7), 185 (55), 181 (7), 110 (5), 93 (100), 91 (24), 75 (28), 73 (20), 61 (12), 57 (33).
- 20
- 25

Example 1(g) : Synthesis of (11aS)-1,11a-dihydro-7,8-dimethoxy-2-ethenyl-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one  
(See Figures 6a/b)



5 **DRH360 N-(4,5-dimethoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)hydroxyproline methyl ester (169)**

Oxalyl chloride (15.38 g, 121.11 mmol) was added in one portion to a stirred suspension of 2-nitro-4,5-dimethoxybenzoic acid (**34**) (25.01 g, 110.10 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (100 mL) at room temperature. A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added (CARE! - increased gas evolution) and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 16 hours under an inert atmosphere. The acid chloride solution was added dropwise to a vigorously stirred solution of the pyrrolo C-ring (**168**) (34.90 g, 110.10 mmol, JOC 5, 13, 1994, 3621) and TEA (45.95 mL, 33.36 g, 330.29 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (100 mL) at -20°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 16 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (2 x 200 mL), saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (2 x 200 mL), water (2 x 200 mL), brine (2 x 200 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of the solvent in vacuo afforded the crude product (**169**), which was purified by flash column chromatography using EtOAc as eluent. Pure fractions were combined and evaporation of excess eluent in vacuo afforded the product as a foam (33.26 g, 93.9 mmol, 85%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.69 (s, 1H), 6.87 (s, 1H), 5.31 (s, 2H), 4.97-4.82 (m, 1H), 4.44 (br s, 1H), 3.99 (s, 3H), 3.98 (s, 3H), 3.81 (s, 3H), 3.54-3.48 (m, 1H), 3.18 (d, 1H, J = 2.02 Hz), 2.87 (br s, 1H), 2.45-2.16 (m, 2H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 172.6, 172.5, 167.5, 166.8, 154.4, 154.0, 149.3, 137.5, 137.4, 127.0, 126.2, 109.5, 107.2, 107.1, 69.9,

69.1, 59.2, 57.4, 56.9, 56.8, 56.6, 56.4, 54.6, 53.5, 52.5, 52.4, 39.4, 38.0.

**(11aS)-6,7-dimethoxy-2(R)-hydroxy-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5,11-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4-]benzodiazepine (170)**

5 10% Pd/C catalyst (3.3 g) was added to a solution of **169** (33.0 g, 93.1 mmol) in absolute EtOH (250 mL). The reaction mixture was hydrogenated under pressure using a Parr hydrogenator at 55 psi H<sub>2</sub> for 18 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, and the celite washed with hot MeOH, taking care not  
10 to allow the filter cake to dry out. Removal of excess solvent afforded the crude product (20.14 g). The crude product was allowed to stir in 1 N HCl (200 mL) and CHCl<sub>3</sub> (200 mL) for 30 minutes. The organic layer was washed with 1 N HCl (100 mL) and the aqueous layers were combined and neutralised  
15 with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. On leaving the aqueous extract overnight, a fine white precipitate formed (**170**) which was collected by filtration and dried (7.81 g, 26.72 mmol, 29 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 10.06 (s, 1H, NH), 7.61 (s, 1H, ArH), 7.36 (s, 1H, ArH), 4.49-4.41 (m, 1H, 2), 4.22-4.17 (m, 1H, 11a), 3.88 (s, 6H), 3.82-3.55 (m, 2H, 3), 3.20 (br s, 1H, OH),  
20 2.87-2.77 (m, 1H, 1), 2.10-2.05 (m, 1H, 1); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 170.2, 165.9, 152.0, 145.7, 130.7, 118.2, 111.9, 104.2, 68.1, 56.0, 55.6, 54.2, 34.6, 18.8.

**(11aS)-6,7-dimethoxy-2(R)-[(tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy]-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5,11-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4-]benzodiazepine (171)**

25 Solid TBDMS Chloride (8.22 g, 54.44 mmol) was added in one portion to a solution of **170** (7.23 g, 24.74 mmol) and imidazole (8.42 g, 123.72 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (75 mL) and  
30 allowed to stir at room temperature for 16 h. The reaction mixture was poured into water (500 mL) and filtered to afford the crude product (**171**), which was purified by recrystallisation from EtOH (800 mL) as fine white needles (6.995 g, 17.21 mmol, 70 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 10.06

(s, 1H, NH), 7.37 (s, 1H, ArH), 6.68 (s, 1H, ArH), 4.19-4.14 (m, 1H, 2), 4.06-4.01 (m, 1H, 11a), 3.90 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.88 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.69-3.63 (m, 2H, 3), 2.85-2.80 (m, 1H, 1), 2.05-2.01 (m, 1H, 1); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 170.4, 170.2, 165.9, 152.1, 145.8, 145.6, 131.1, 130.7, 118.1, 111.9, 104.3, 104.1, 69.2, 69.1, 56.0, 55.9, 55.7, 54.3, 54.0, 35.0, 25.8, 25.7, 25.6, 17.9, -3.0, -3.5, -4.9, -5.0.

(11aS)-6,7-dimethoxy-2(R)-[(tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy]-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-10-[2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl]-5,11-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4-benzodiazepine (172)

A solution of 171 (6.50 g, 15.99 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (27.5 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred suspension of NaH (0.422 g, 0.704 g of a 60 % dispersion in mineral oil, 18.34 mmol) at 0°C and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 30 minutes. A solution of SEM chloride (3.11 mL, 2.93 g, 17.59 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (5 mL) was added dropwise to the stirred reaction mixture at 0°C and allowed to stir at room temperature for 16 h. The reaction mixture was poured into water (200 mL) to afford a white precipitate, which was extracted with diethyl ether (4 x 300 mL). The organic layer was washed with water (2 x 50 mL), brine (2 x 50 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* afforded the crude product, which was purified by flash column chromatography using an 80:20 mixture of petroleum ether:EtOAc as eluent. Pure fractions were combined and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford the product (172) as a yellow oil (7.01 g, 13.1 mmol, 82 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.35 (s, 1H, ArH), 7.24 (s, 1H, ArH), 5.52 (d, 2H, J = 9.89 Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.65 (d, 2H, J = 9.90 Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.61-4.56 (m, 1H, 2), 4.23 (dd, 1H, J = 4.40 Hz, 8.24 Hz, 11a), 3.94 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.92 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.68 (m, 4H, SEM 1' CH<sub>2</sub> + 3), 2.86 (m, 1H, 1), 2.02 (m, 1H, 1), 0.98 (t, 2H, J = 8.25 Hz, SEM 2' CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.88 (s, 9H, TBDMS t-Bu CH<sub>3</sub>), 0.10 (s, 6H, 2 x TBDMS SiCH<sub>3</sub>), 0.03 (s, 9H, 3 x SEM SiCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 170.0, 165.6, 151.8, 147.1, 133.9, 121.5, 111.2, 105.5, 78.1, 69.6, 67.0, 56.5, 56.2, 56.1, 53.6,

35.5, 25.7, 18.4, -1.3, -4.8.

**(11aS)-6,7-dimethoxy-2(R)-hydroxy-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-10-[2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl]-5,11-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4-]benzodiazepine (173)**

5 A solution of 1 N TBAF in THF (19.58 mL, 19.58 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of **172** (7.0 g, 13.05 mmol) in THF (50 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 2 hours and diluted with DCM (200 mL), washed with water (2 x 200 mL), brine (2 x 200 mL) and dried over  
10 anhydrous  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . Filtration and removal of excess solvent afforded the crude product, which was purified by flash column chromatography using 50:50 petroleum ether:EtOAc as eluent. Evaporation in vacuo of the pure fractions afforded the product (**173**) (5.9 g).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.30 (s, 1H, ArH), 7.24 (s, 1H, ArH), 5.52 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.9$  Hz, SEM amino acetal  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.68-4.64 (m, 2H, SEM amino acetal  $\text{CH}_2 + 2$ ), 4.30 (dd, 1H,  $J = 5.86, 8.24$  Hz), 3.91 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.90 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.87-3.51 (m, 4H, SEM 1'  $\text{CH}_2 + 3$ ), 2.95 (dt, 1H,  $J = 5.31, 13.56$  Hz, 1), 2.17-2.08 (m, 1H, 1), 1.02-0.93 (m, 2H, SEM 2'  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 0.03 (s, 9H, 3 x  $\text{SiCH}_3$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  169.7, 165.9, 151.9, 147.1, 134.0, 121.1, 111.2, 105.5, 78.2, 69.1, 67.1, 56.5, 56.1, 53.9, 34.9, 18.4, -1.3.

**(11aS)-6,7-dimethoxy-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-10-[2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl]-2,5,11-trioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4-]benzodiazepine (174)**

25 Anhydrous DMSO (3.28 g, 41.94 mmol) in dry DCM (20 mL) was added dropwise over 5 minutes to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (10.48 mL of a 2 N solution in DCM, 20.97 mmol) under a nitrogen atmosphere at  $-50^\circ\text{C}$ . After stirring for 5 minutes, a solution **173** (5.90 g, 13.98 mmol), in dry DCM (45 mL) was  
30 added dropwise over 45 minutes to the reaction mixture, which was then stirred for a further 45 minutes at  $-50^\circ\text{C}$ . TEA (9.89 g; 97.87 mmol) was added dropwise to the mixture over 15 minutes followed by stirring for a further 15 minutes.

The reaction mixture was left to warm to room temperature, diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O (150 mL) and DCM (100 mL). The organic phase was washed with 1 N HCl (2 x 100 mL), water (2 x 100 mL), brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation afforded the crude product (**174**), which was purified by flash column chromatography using 50:50 petroleum ether (40-60°):EtOAc as eluent. Evaporation of the pure fractions in vacuo afforded the product (4.33 g, 10.3 mmol, 74 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.30 (s, 1H, ArH), 7.24 (s, 1H, ArH), 5.60 (d, 1H, J = 9.89 Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.69 (d, 1H, J = 9.89 Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.62 (dd, 1H, J = 9.89, 3.12 Hz, 11a), 4.26-4.19 (m, 1H, 3), 3.95 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.94 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.81-3.49 (m, 4H, SEM 1' CH<sub>2</sub> + 1 + 3), 2.82-2.71 (m, 1H, 1), 0.95 (t, 2H, J = 2.01 Hz, SEM 2' CH<sub>2</sub>), -0.04 (s, 9H, SEM CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 206.8, 168.8, 165.9, 152.4, 147.5, 134.0, 120.4, 111.1, 105.6, 78.2, 67.2, 56.2, 54.8, 52.3, 37.3, 18.3, -1.3.

(**11aS**)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-7,8-dimethoxy-10-[2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl]-2-[[[(trifluoromethyl)sulfonyl]oxy]-5,11-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (**175**)

Anhydrous pyridine (0.46 mL, 0.452 g, 5.73 mmol) was added in one portion to a vigorously stirred solution of **174** (2.0 g, 4.77 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (100 mL) and the mixture left to stir for 10 minutes at room temperature. Anhydrous triflic anhydride (1.25 mL, 1.48 g, 5.25 mmol) was added quickly, in one portion, and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 4.5 h. The darkened, homogenous reaction mixture was poured into cold saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (200 mL) and the mixture was extracted with DCM (3 x 50 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed with water (2 x 200 mL), brine (2 x 200 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation afforded the crude product, which was purified by flash column chromatography using 80:20 petroleum ether:EtOAc as eluent. Evaporation of the pure fractions in vacuo afforded the product (**175**) as a yellow oil (1.79 g, 3.25 mmol, 68 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.29 (s, 1H,

ArH), 7.23 (s, 1H, ArH), 7.15 (t, 1H,  $J = 2.01$  Hz, H3), 5.53 (d, 1H,  $J = 10.07$  Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.68 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.89$  Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>).

5 (11aS)-7,8-dimethoxy-2-ethenyl-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-10-(2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl)-5,11-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (176)

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium [0] (4 mol%, 0.142 g, 0.123 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of 175 (1.69 g, 3.06 mmol), LiCl (0.39 g, 9.19 mmol), and tributylvinyltin (1.16 mL, 1.26 g, 3.98 mmol) in anhydrous THF (100 mL) and heated at reflux for 2.5 h. The cooled reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (100 mL) and the mixture washed with 10 % aqueous ammonium hydroxide (200 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 200 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of the solvent in vacuo afforded the crude product, which was further purified by flash column chromatography using a 80:20 mixture of petroleum ether:EtOAc as eluent. Pure fractions were combined and evaporation of the solvent in vacuo afforded the product (176) as a colourless oil (0.992 g, 2.312 mmol, 75.5 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.32 (s, 1H, ArH), 7.22 (s, 1H, ArH), 6.94 (s, 1H, H3), 6.51 (dd, 1H,  $J = 10.62$ , 17.22 Hz, alkene CH), 5.51 (d, 1H,  $J = 10.07$  Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.20 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.24$  Hz, alkene CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.15 (s, 1H, alkene CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.66 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.89$  Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.54 (dd, 1H,  $J = 3.30$ , 10.62 Hz, H11a), 3.90 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.89 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.82-3.60 (m, 3H, SEM 1' CH<sub>2</sub> + H1), 2.91-2.82 (m, 1H, H1), 0.96 (t, 2H,  $J = 8.42$  Hz, SEM 2' CH<sub>2</sub>), -0.04 (s, 9H, SEM CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 169.3, 161.8, 152.1, 147.3, 133.8, 129.8, 126.0, 125.1, 121.2, 115.1, 111.4, 105.9, 78.5, 67.1, 57.6, 56.2, 56.2, 29.6, 18.4, -1.34.

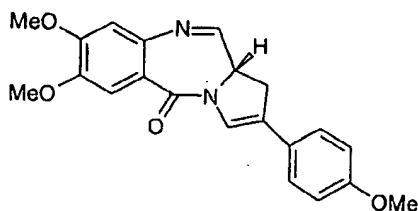
(11aS)-1,11a-dihydro-7,8-dimethoxy-2-ethenyl-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (177)

Solid sodium tetraborohydride (NaBH<sub>4</sub>, 81 mg, 2.175 mmol) was



added in one portion to a rapidly stirred solution of **176** (101 mg, 0.233 mmol) in a mixture of anhydrous EtOH (2 mL) and anhydrous THF (4 mL) at room temperature and allowed to stir for 4 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (5 mL) and extracted with CHCl<sub>3</sub> (3 x 5 mL). The organic layers were washed with brine (10 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation afforded the crude product, which was stirred for 30 minutes with silica gel (0.25 g) in MeOH (5 mL). Excess methanol was removed by rotary evaporation, causing the crude product to be absorbed onto the silica gel. The plug of silica gel was added to the top of a silica gel column and the product was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with a 60:40 mixture of petroleum ether:EtOAc. Pure fractions were combined and evaporation of the solvent in vacuo afforded the product (**177**) as a yellow solid (33 mg, 0.116 mmol, 50 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.86 (d, 1H, *J* = 3.84 Hz, imine CH), 7.50 (s, 1H, ArH), 7.05 (br s, 1H, H<sub>3</sub>), 6.82 (s, 1H, ArH), 6.58 (dd, 1H, *J* = 10.62, 17.22 Hz, alkene CH), 5.20-5.05 (m, 2H, alkene CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.39-4.31 (m, 1H, H11a), 3.96 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.94 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.39-3.12 (m, 2H, H1); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 162.7, 161.5, 151.9, 147.8, 140.4, 129.9, 126.9, 123.9, 118.9, 114.4, 111.6, 109.8, 77.3, 56.2, 53.9, 33.7.

Example 1(h) : Synthesis of (11aS)-1,11a-dihydro-7,8-dimethoxy-2-(4-methoxyphenyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (See Figures 6a/b)



5 (11aS)-7,8-dimethoxy-2-(4-methoxyphenyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-10-(2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl)-5,11-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (178)

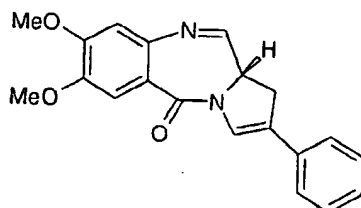
A solution of para-methoxyphenylboronic acid (301 mg, 1.98 mmol) in DME (10 mL) was added to a stirred solution of vinyl triflate (175 - see example 1(g)) (715 mg, 1.29 mmol) in DME (10 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere. An aqueous solution of Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (2 N, 9.9 mL) was added followed by LiCl (178 mg, 4.185 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (5 mol%, 81 mg) and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature followed by heating at reflux for 1 h. After concentration *in vacuo*, the residue was resuspended in a mixture of DCM (50 mL), aqueous 2 N Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (50 mL) and conc. NH<sub>4</sub>OH solution (3 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (3 x 20 mL) and the combined organic extracts were dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation afforded a residue which was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel eluting with 60:40 petroleum ether:EtOAc. Pure fractions were combined and evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* afforded the product (178) as a yellow solid (559 mg, 1.095 mmol, 85 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.40-7.35 (m, 3H, ArH + Suzuki ArH), 7.33 (t, 1H, J = 2.01 Hz, H3), 7.27 (s, 1H, ArH), 6.88 (d, 2H, J = 6.93 Hz, Suzuki ArH), 5.56 (d, 1H, J = 9.89 Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.71 (d, 1H, J = 9.89 Hz, SEM amino acetal CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.63 (dd, 1H, J = 3.30, 10.62 Hz, H11a), 3.95 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.94 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.87-3.65 (m, 6H, SEM 1' CH<sub>2</sub> + H1 + Suzuki

ArOMe), 3.14 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 2.38, 10.62, 16.12$  Hz, H1), 0.96 (t, 2H,  $J = 8.42$  Hz, SEM 2' CH<sub>2</sub>), -0.04 (s, 9H, SEM CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 168.4, 161.6, 160.2, 153.0, 147.3, 133.7, 126.5, 126.1, 125.4, 121.3, 120.2, 114.1, 111.3, 105.8, 78.4, 67.1, 57.5, 56.2, 56.2, 55.3, 31.5, 18.4, -1.34.

**(11aS)-1,11a-dihydro-7,8-dimethoxy-2-(4-methoxyphenyl)-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (179)**

Solid sodium tetraborohydride (NaBH<sub>4</sub>, 70 mg, 1.88 mmol) was added in one portion to a rapidly stirring solution of **178** (100 mg, 0.2 mmol) in a mixture of anhydrous EtOH (2 mL) and anhydrous THF (4 mL) and left to stir at room temperature for 9 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (10 mL) and stirred for 30 minutes with silica gel (2.0 g). The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The organic layers were washed with brine (10 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation afforded the crude product (**179**), which was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with a 50:50 mixture of petroleum ether:EtOAc. Pure fractions were combined and evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* afforded the product as a yellow glass (28 mg, 0.08 mmol, 38 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.89 (d, 1H,  $J = 4.03$  Hz, Imine CH), 7.53 (s, 1H, ArH), 7.39 (t, 1H,  $J = 1.83$  Hz, H3), 7.33 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.97$  Hz, methoxyphenyl ArH), 6.91 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.98$  Hz, methoxyphenyl ArH), 6.83 (s, 1H, ArH), 4.44-4.36 (m, 1H, H11a), 3.97 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.94 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.91-3.79 (m, 4H, H1 + Suzuki ArOMe), 3.64-3.34 (m, 1H, H1); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 162.7, 161.3, 159.2, 151.8, 147.8, 140.4, 126.3, 126.2, 126.0, 125.9, 123.2, 121.9, 114.3, 114.1, 111.6, 109.8, 56.2, 56.1, 55.6, 35.6.

Example 1(j) : Synthesis of (11aS)-1,11a-dihydro-7,8-dimethoxy-2-phenyl-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one  
(See Figures 6a/b)



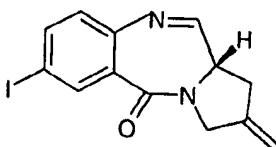
5 (11aS)-7,8-dimethoxy-2-phenyl-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-10-(2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl)-5,11-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (180)

Phenylboronic acid (334 mg, 2.74 mmol, 2.54 equiv.), Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (343.4 mg, 3.24, 3 equiv) and tetrakis (triphenylphosphine) palladium(0) (49.9 mg, 2% mmol) was added to a solution of the triflate (175 - see example 1(g)) (600 mg, 1.08 mmol) in ethanol (21.6 mL) water (21.6 mL) and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 2 hrs. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (200 mL, washed with water (2 x 200 mL), brine (200 mL). and dried over magnesium sulphate. Filtration and evaporation of excess solvent afforded the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica gel (70% 40-60° petroleum ether; 30% ethyl acetate) to afford, after removal of excess eluent, the compound **180** (405 mg, 0.84 mmol, 78% yield). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.5-7.1 (m, 8H), 5.53 (d, 1H, J = 10.08 Hz), 4.67 (d, 1H, J = 10.08 Hz) 4.65-4.59 (m, 1H) 4.0-3.60 (m 9H), 3.12 (dd, 1H, J = 10.63, 16.12 Hz), 0.99-0.93 (m, 2H) 0.00 (s, 9H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 168.3, 161.9, 152.1, 147.3, 133.9, 132.7, 128.7, 127.6, 125.7, 121.8, 121.1, 111.3, 105.8, 78.4, 67.2, 57.6, 56.2, 31.3, 18.4, -1.3

**(11aS)-1,11a-dihydro-7,8-dimethoxy-2-phenyl-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (181)**

Solid sodium tetraborohydride (287 mg, 7.6 mmol, 10 equiv.) was added in one portion to a rapidly stirred solution of 180 (365 mg, 0.76 mmol) in a mixture of anhydrous EtOH (8 mL) and anhydrous THF (8 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 1 hour at room temperature at which time TLC (5% methanol; 95% chloroform) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with water (2 x 100 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Filtration and evaporation of excess solvent afforded the crude product as a brown viscous oil. Flash chromatography (silica gel, 70% 40-60° petroleum ether, 30% ethyl acetate) yield the final product (181) (271 mg, 0.77 mmol, 74%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.89 (d, 1H, J = 4.03 Hz), 7.53 (s, 1H), 7.51 (s, 1H), 7.40-7.20 (m, 5H), 6.83 (s, 1H), 4.50-4.35 (m, 1H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.66-3.36 (m, 2H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 162.6, 161.5, 151.9, 147.8, 140.4, 133.3, 128.8, 127.6, 127.1, 124.9, 123.6, 119.0, 111.6, 109.8, 56.2, 53.9, 35.4. HRMS (FAB) calcd for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>19</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> (M<sup>+</sup> +1) 335.1398, found 335.1396

**Example 2(a) : Synthesis of the C7-Iodo-C2-methylene PBD Monomer BSD-SJG (64, UP-2023) (see Figure 7)**



**(S)-N-(Allyloxycarbonyl)-2-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine (57)**

Potassium tert-butoxide (41.0 mL of a 0.5 M solution in THF, 20.5 mmol) was added dropwise to a suspension of methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide (7.29 g, 20.4 mmol) in THF (20 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone) under nitrogen. After stirring

for 2 hours at 0°C, a solution of the ketone **16** (example 1(b)) (3.20 g, 10.2 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added dropwise and the mixture allowed to warm to room temperature. After stirring for a further 30 minutes the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (150 mL) and water (150 mL) and the organic layer separated, washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a yellow oil in which crystals (TPO) formed upon standing in the freezer. Purification by flash chromatography (5% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) isolated the pure olefin **57** as a colourless oil (2.76 g, 87%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -22.2^\circ$  ( $c = 0.25$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  6.02-5.87 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.31 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 1.65, 3.11, 17.20$  Hz, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.21 (dd, 1H,  $J = 1.46, 10.40$  Hz, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.99-4.61 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.60 (d, 2H,  $J = 4.94$  Hz, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.19-3.98 (m, 2H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 3.93-3.87 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 3.66-3.42 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.80-2.56 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.87 (s, 9H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.03-0.02 (m, 6H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  154.4 (NC=O), 145.1 and 144.1 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 133.1 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 117.5 and 117.2 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 107.5 and 106.9 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 65.8 and 65.6 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 63.7 and 63.1 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 58.7 and 58.3 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 51.1 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 34.9 and 34.2 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 25.8 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.2 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.5 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (CI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 312 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 82), 296 (9), 279 (5), 255 (20), 254 (M-OC<sub>3</sub>H<sub>5</sub> or M-<sup>t</sup>Bu, 100), 168 (8), 122 (14); IR (Neat) 3083 (C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 2954, 2847, 1709 (NC=O), 1533, 1467, 1404 (SiCH<sub>3</sub>), 1360, 1310, 1252 (SiCH<sub>3</sub>), 1207, 1174, 1103, 1076, 1006, 836, 776, 680 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

**(2S)-2-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine (58)**

A catalytic amount of PdCl<sub>2</sub>(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (92 mg, 0.131 mmol) was added to a solution of the allyl carbamate **57** (1.0 g, 3.22 mmol) and H<sub>2</sub>O (0.34 mL, 18.9 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL). After 5 minutes stirring at room temperature, Bu<sub>3</sub>SnH (0.96 mL, 1.04 g, 3.57 mmol) was added rapidly in one portion. A slightly exothermic reaction with vigorous gas evolution immediately ensued. The

mixture was stirred for 16 hours at room temperature under nitrogen at which point TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed the formation of amine. After diluting with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (30 mL), the organic solution was dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and  
 5 evaporated *in vacuo* to give an orange oil which was purified by flash chromatography (50-100% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford the amine **58** as a slightly orange oil (0.56 g, 77%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -3.9^\circ$  ( $c = 5.0$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  4.93 (t, 1H,  $J = 2.02$  Hz,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.90 (t, 1H,  $J = 2.02$  Hz,  
 10  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 3.68-3.46 (m, 4H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$  and  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 3.30-3.21 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ ), 2.53-2.41 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$  and NH), 2.26-2.17 (m, 1H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 0.90 (s, 9H,  $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), 0.06 (s, 6H,  $\text{Si}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  150.0 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 104.7 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 64.7 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ ), 60.5  
 15 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ ), 51.3 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 34.9 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 25.9 ( $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), 18.3 ( $\text{SiC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), -5.4 ( $\text{Si}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ); MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 227 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 8), 212 (6), 170 ( $\text{M}-t\text{Bu}$ , 36), 96 (8), 82 ( $\text{M}-\text{CH}_2\text{OTBDMS}$ , 100), 75 (11); IR (Neat) 3550-3100 (br, NH), 3074 ( $\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 2929, 2857, 1664 ( $\text{C}=\text{C}$ ), 1472, 1424, 1391,  
 20 1380, 1361, 1255, 1190, 1101, 1006, 939, 880, 838, 777, 723, 668  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

**(2S)-N-[5-Iodo-2-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxycarbonylamino)-benzoyl]-2-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-methylidinepyrrolidine (60)**

25 A catalytic amount of DMF (3 drops) was added to a stirred solution of the Troc protected anthranilic acid **59** (0.46 g, 1.04 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (0.10 mL, 0.15 g, 1.15 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (30 mL). After 16 hours at room temperature the resulting acid chloride solution was added dropwise over 30  
 30 minutes to a stirred mixture of the amine **58** (0.26 g, 1.15 mmol) and TEA (0.26 g, 0.36 mL, 2.58 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (15 mL) at  $-20^\circ\text{C}$  ( $\text{CCl}_4/\text{liq. N}_2$ ) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 45 minutes. At this point TLC analysis (50%  
 35 EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed complete reaction. The mixture was washed with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL), saturated

NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (30 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (25 mL), brine (30 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the amide **60** as a dark oil (0.65 g, 96%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers) δ 8.92 (br s, 1H), 8.05-7.88 (m, 1H), 7.74-7.64 (m, 1H), 7.56-7.46 (m, 1H), 5.08-4.95 (m, 2H), 4.84 (d, 1H, *J* = 11.91 Hz), 4.75 (d, 1H, *J* = 11.91 Hz), 4.74-4.65 (m, 1H), 4.21-3.68 (m, 4H), 2.96-2.65 (m, 2H), 0.95-0.87 (m, 9H), 0.1-0.03 (m, 6H).

**(2*S*)-*N*-(2-Amino-5-iodobenzoyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine (**61**)**

A solution of TBAF (1.24 mL of a 1M solution in THF, 1.24 mmol) was added to the silyl-ether **60** (0.64 g, 0.99 mmol) in THF (15 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and after 45 minutes TLC (50% EtOAc/Pet-Ether 40 °- 60 °) revealed the complete disappearance of starting material. Saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (75 mL) was added and the reaction mixture extracted with EtOAc (3 X 30 mL), washed with brine (30 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give an orange oil. Purification by flash chromatography (50% EtOAc/Pet-Ether 40 °- 60 °) provided the pure amino-alcohol **61** as a viscous oil (0.18 g, 51%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.72-7.61 (m, 1H), 7.55-7.40 (m, 1H), 6.51-6.49 (m, 1H), 5.02-4.94 (m, 2H), 4.80-3.80 (m, 8H), 2.81-2.79 (m, 1H), 2.43-2.40 (m, 1H); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 359 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 5), 358 (M<sup>+</sup>, 33), 328 (3), 327 (10), 254 (3), 247 (11), 246 (100), 218 (18), 164 (2), 127 (4), 120 (4), 119 (10), 113 (9), 112 (91), 94 (2), 91 (20), 90 (5), 82 (10), 67 (2), 64 (3), 63 (3), 52 (3).

**(2*S*)-*N*-[5-Iodo-2-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxycarbonylamino)-benzoyl]-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidene-pyrrolidine (**62**).**

A solution of the amine **61** (179 mg, 0.50 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (15 mL) was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and treated with pyridine (81 µL, 79 mg, 1.0 mmol). A solution of 2,2,2-trichloroethylchloroformate (76 µL, 117 mg, 0.55 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) was then added dropwise to the stirred mixture.



The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 2 h, at which point TLC (EtOAc) revealed complete consumption of amine **61**. The reaction mixture was washed with saturated  $\text{CuSO}_4$  (25 mL),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (25 mL),  
5 brine (25 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford the pure troc-amino compound **62** as an oil (189 mg, 71%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.90 (br s, 1H), 7.75-7.66 (m, 3H), 5.02-4.92 (m, 3H), 4.87 (d, 1H,  $J$  =  
10 12.09 Hz), 4.72 (d, 1H,  $J$  = 12.09 Hz), 4.15-4.08 (m, 2H), 3.90-3.85 (m, 2H), 3.65-3.63 (m, 1H), 2.80-2.71 (m, 1H), 2.50 (d, 1H,  $J$  = 14.83 Hz);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  167.7, 151.9, 142.7, 139.6, 135.6, 134.8, 127.7, 123.4, 108.4, 95.1, 86.6, 74.3, 63.9, 59.0, 53.5, 33.7; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative  
15 intensity) 536 (5), 535 (3), 534 (15), 533 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 3), 532 (15), 503 (2), 501 (2), 422 (4), 420 (5), 385 (8), 384 (8), 366 (3), 353 (11), 290 (9), 273 (8), 272 (76), 246 (6), 245 (18), 218 (4), 217 (5), 216 (8), 146 (4), 145 (10), 133 (4), 131 (4), 119 (6), 117 (7), 115 (11), 113 (17), 112 (39), 97 (4), 96  
20 (3), 95 (12), 90 (5), 84 (5), 83 (7), 82 (100), 79 (7), 77 (21), 67 (2), 63 (4), 61 (3), 51 (6); exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{16}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4\text{Cl}_2\text{I}$   $m/e$  531.9221, obsd  $m/e$  531.9155.

**(11S,11aS)-11-Hydroxy-7-iodo-2-methylidene-10-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxycarbonylamino)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (63)**  
25

A solution of the alcohol **62** (189 mg, 0.35 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  (12 mL, 3:1) was treated with 4 Å powdered molecular sieves (100 mg) and NMO (62 mg, 0.53 mmol). After 15 minutes stirring at room temperature, TPAP (6.2 mg, 17.7  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) was  
30 added and stirring continued for a further 1 hour at which point TLC (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) showed product formation along with some unoxidised starting material. The mixture was then treated with a further quantity of NMO (62 mg, 0.53 mmol) and TPAP (6.2 mg, 17.7  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) and allowed to stir for a further  
35 30 minutes after which time TLC revealed complete reaction. The mixture was evaporated *in vacuo* onto silica and subjected

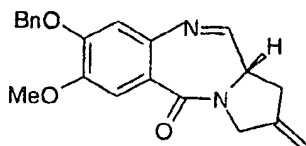
to flash chromatography (40% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to provide the protected carbinolamine **63** as a white glass (93 mg, 49%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.09 (d, 1H, *J* = 2.01 Hz), 7.80 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.43, 2.20 Hz), 7.10 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.43 Hz), 5.60 (d, 1H, *J* = 9.71 Hz), 5.20-5.04 (m, 3H), 4.79-4.50 (m, 1H), 4.32-4.08 (m, 3H), 3.63 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.79 Hz), 2.99-2.89 (m, 1H), 2.72 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.94 Hz); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 165.0, 154.1, 141.0, 140.2, 137.7, 134.5, 133.6, 132.0, 110.4, 94.7, 93.4, 85.7, 75.0, 59.4, 50.7, 35.0; MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 533 (6), 532 (22), 531 (M<sup>+</sup>, 8), 530 (17), 529 (10), 449 (5), 383 (6), 354 (7), 353 (5), 338 (6), 325 (5), 290 (5), 274 (15), 273 (8), 272 (43), 254 (5), 245 (8), 218 (5), 216 (12), 147 (5), 146 (6), 145 (9), 133 (10), 131 (9), 128 (5), 127 (15), 119 (11), 117 (5), 97 (6), 95 (9), 92 (6), 91 (6), 90 (6), 83 (11), 82 (100), 81 (7), 80 (8), 75 (5), 63 (7), 53 (5); exact mass calcd for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>14</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>ICl, *m/e* 531.9037, obsd *m/e* 531.8988.

**(11aS)-7-Iodo-2-methylidene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (64, UP2023, BSD-SJG).**

10% cadmium-lead couple (109 mg, 0.875 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of the Troc-protected carbinolamine **63** (93 mg, 0.175 mmol) in THF (1 mL) and aqueous 1N ammonium acetate (1 mL). After 45 minutes at room temperature TLC revealed complete reaction (70% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether). The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (30 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated in vacuo. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (70% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to provide the novel PBD (**64, BSD-SJG, UP2023**) as a white solid (27 mg, 46%): mp °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub> + CD<sub>3</sub>OD) (11S,11aS isomer) δ 8.10 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.46 Hz), 7.65 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.79 Hz), 6.86 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.06 Hz), 5.14-5.10 (m, 2H), 4.66 (d, 1H, *J* = 5.13 Hz), 4.34 (d, 1H, *J* = 16.12 Hz), 4.23 (d, 1H, *J* = 16.12 Hz), 3.80-3.71 (m, 1H), 3.34 (s, 3H), 3.03-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.65 (d, 1H, *J* = 16.02 Hz); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) (N10-C11 imine form) 339 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 20), 338 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 337 (17), 323 (5), 311 (4), 310 (5), 257 (5), 230 (4), 229 (13), 211 (4), 203 (4),

202 (8), 184 (8), 183 (4), 103 (5), 82 (17), 81 (4), 80 (5),  
 76 (6), 75 (16), 74 (5), 55 (4), 53 (4); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3295 (br),  
 2923, 2853, 1716, 1615, 1506, 1457, 1377, 1317, 1278, 1238,  
 1169, 1118, 1063, 999, 895, 818, 751, 718 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass  
 5 calcd for C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>11</sub>N<sub>2</sub>OI m/e 337.9916, obsd m/e 337.9870.

**Example 2(b) : Synthesis of the C8-Benzyl-C7-Methoxy-C2-methylene PBD Monomer SJG-244 (70) (see Figure 8)**



**(2S)-N-(4-Benzyloxy-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)-2-(tert-butylidimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine (65)**

10 A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a stirred solution of the nitro-acid 1 (0.645 g, 2.13 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (0.23 mL, 0.33 g, 2.60 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (40 mL). After 16 hours at room temperature the resulting acid chloride solution was added dropwise to a stirred mixture of the amine  
 15 58 (0.522 g, 2.30 mmol) and TEA (0.58 g, 0.80 mL, 5.73 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 2.5 h. The mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL), washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (50  
 20 mL), saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (50 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the crude product as a dark orange oil. Purification by flash chromatography (20% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) isolated the pure amide 65 as a sticky orange oil (0.86 g, 79%): [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>22</sup> = -47.2 °  
 25 (c = 2.79, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers) δ 7.78 and 7.77 (s x 2, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 7.48-7.35 (m, 5H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.82 and 6.78 (s x 2, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.23 and 5.21 (s x 2, 2H, PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.09-4.83 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.59-4.49 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 4.03-3.08 (m, 7H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub> and OCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.80-2.56 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.89 and 0.79 (s x 2, 9H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.122, -0.11 and -0.14 (s x 3, 6H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)

(Rotamers)  $\delta$  166.2 (NC=O), 154.8 and 154.6 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 148.2 and 148.0 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 144.1 and 143.2 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 137.1 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 135.3 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 128.8 and 128.5 (BnC- $H_{arom}$ ), 128.2 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 127.6 (BnC- $H_{arom}$ ), 110.1 and 109.2 (C- $H_{arom}$ ), 109.0 and 108.5 (C- $H_{arom}$ ), 107.5 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 71.3 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 63.7 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 60.2 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 58.1 and 56.6 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.8 and 50.5 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 34.9 and 33.9 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 25.8 and 25.7 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.2 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.4 and -5.6 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 512 (M<sup>+</sup>, 3), 497 (M-CH<sub>3</sub>, 4), 455 (M-<sup>t</sup>Bu, 100), 380 (2), 364 (5), 286 (M-NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS, 40), 279 (9), 226 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS, 5), 168 (10), 149 (27), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 62), 73 (8), 57 (9); IR (NEAT) 3066, 3034, 2953, 2856, 2245, 1644 (NC=O), 1578, 1520, 1454, 1426, 1379, 1335, 1276, 1220, 1186, 1106, 1059, 1016, 910, 836, 815, 779, 734, 697, 655, 614 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

15 **(2S)-N-(4-Benzoyloxy-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine (66)**

A solution of TBAF (2.10 mL of a 1M solution in THF, 2.10 mmol) was added to the silyl-ether **65** (0.86 g, 1.68 mmol) in THF (20 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature following a colour change (yellow-dark red). After a further 40 minutes TLC (50% EtOAc/Pet-Ether 40°- 60°) revealed the complete disappearance of starting material. Saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (100 mL) was added and the reaction mixture extracted with EtOAc (3 X 40 mL), washed with brine (30 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to give a dark orange oil which was purified by flash chromatography (60% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to provide the pure alcohol **66** as a white solid (0.64 g, 96%):  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = -22.9^\circ$  ( $c = 0.20$ , MeOH); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  7.78 and 7.76 (s x 2, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 7.49-7.33 (m, 5H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.91 and 6.82 (s x 2, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.22 (s, 2H, PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.10 (m, 1H, OH), 5.03-5.01 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.90-4.85 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.65-4.55 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 3.99 and 3.95 (s x 2, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.90-3.72 (m, 4H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH and NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.90-2.87 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.53-2.47 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  177.4 (NC=O), 155.1 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 148.3 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 142.6 ( $C_{quat}$ ), 137.0

(C<sub>quat</sub>), 135.2 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 128.9, 128.6 and 127.6 (BnC-H<sub>arom</sub>), 109.1 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 108.5 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 108.3 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 71.4 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 65.2 and 63.7 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 60.4 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 56.8 and 56.7 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.0 and 50.1 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 35.1 and 34.4 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 398 (M<sup>+</sup>, 2), 380 (3), 368 (4), 354 (1), 286 (M-NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 54), 270 (2), 256 (1), 164 (2), 136 (4), 135 (3), 121 (4), 112 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 3), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 100), 82 (3), 69 (4), 65 (6); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3600-3200 (br, OH), 2923, 2853, 1718, 1663, 1611 (NC=O), 1577, 1517, 1460, 1376, 1332, 1275, 1224, 1176, 1052, 990, 925, 886, 862, 796, 759, 723, 702 615 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>22</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub> *m/e* 398.1478, obsd *m/e* 398.1490.

**(2S)-N-(2-Amino-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxybenzoyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine (67)**

The nitro-alcohol **66** (0.637 g, 1.60 mmol), SnCl<sub>2</sub> 2H<sub>2</sub>O (1.81 g, 8.0 mmol) and methanol (36 mL) were heated at reflux and monitored by TLC (90% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH). After 1 hour the MeOH was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue cooled (ice), and treated carefully with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (120 mL). The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (120 mL), and after 16 hours stirring at room temperature the inorganic precipitate was removed by filtration through celite. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give an orange glass. Flash chromatography (EtOAc) afforded the pure amine **67** as a pale yellow glass (0.37 g, 63%): [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = -42.7 ° (*c* = 3.7, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.44-7.29 (m, 5H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.77 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.27 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.12 (s, 2H, PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.06-5.00 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.99-4.92 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.63-4.53 (m, 1H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 4.25-3.60 (m, 10H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>, OCH<sub>3</sub>, OH and NH<sub>2</sub>), 2.77 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.52, 15.85 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.43-2.39 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 171.4 (NC=O), 151.0 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 143.3 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 141.5 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 140.6 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 136.5 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 128.6 and 128.0 (BnC-H<sub>arom</sub>), 127.8 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 127.1 (BnC-H<sub>arom</sub>), 112.5 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 107.8 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 103.0 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 70.6 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 65.9 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 60.0 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 57.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.3

(NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 34.4 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 368 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 353 (M-CH<sub>3</sub>, 2), 340 (1), 286 (2), 273 (4), 256 (M-NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 59), 249 (8), 226 (4), 200 (2), 196 (2), 166 (5), 138 (17), 112 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 39), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 70), 82 (5), 65 (5); IR (NEAT) 3600-3000 (br, NH<sub>2</sub> and OH), 3065, 3052, 2932, 2869, 2246, 1668, 1620, 1592, 1513, 1454, 1408, 1264, 1229, 1197, 1176, 1113, 1079, 1002, 909, 733, 698, 645 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> *m/e* 368.1736, obsd *m/e* 368.1662.

10 **(2*S*)-*N*-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxybenzoyl]-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine (68)**

A solution of the amino-alcohol **67** (0.33 g, 0.90 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (20 mL) was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) and treated with pyridine (0.14 mL, 0.14 g, 1.77 mmol). A solution of allyl chloroformate (87 μL, 99 mg, 0.82 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (7 mL) was then added dropwise to the stirred mixture. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 2.5 h, at which point TLC (EtOAc) revealed complete consumption of amine **67**. The reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL) and washed with saturated CuSO<sub>4</sub> (40 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (40 mL), brine (40 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford the pure alloc-amino compound **68** as a white solid (0.34 g, 84%): [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>22</sup> = -22.4 ° (*c* = 3.4, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.52 (br s, 1H, NH), 7.82 (br s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 7.49-7.29 (m, 5H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.84 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.02-5.88 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.39-5.22 (m, 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.17 (s, 2H, PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.01 (br s, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.94 (br s, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.64-4.59 (m, 3H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH and NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.21-3.60 (m, 8H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>, OCH<sub>3</sub>, and OH), 2.77 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.61, 15.94 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.46 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.94 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 171.4 (NC=O<sub>amido</sub>), 153.7 (NC=O<sub>carbamate</sub>), 150.3 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 144.5 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 143.0 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 136.2 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 132.4 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 131.3 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 128.6, 128.1, and 127.7 (BnC-H<sub>arom</sub>), 118.1 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 111.1

(C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 108.1 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 106.5 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 70.7 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 65.8 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 65.5 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 59.9 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 56.7 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.0 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 34.1 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 452 (M<sup>+</sup>, 38), 395 (M-OC<sub>3</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, 4), 394 (10), 340 (M-NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 20), 298 (7), 282 (22), 255 (8), 206 (2), 192 (2), 163 (3), 136 (3), 114 (6), 112 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 12), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 100), 82 (10), 65 (4), 57 (OC<sub>3</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, 7); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3600-2000 (br, OH), 3335, 3242, 2922, 2854, 1724, 1614, 1537, 1463, 1407, 1378, 1349, 1280, 1214, 1178, 1117, 1054, 1028, 995, 947, 908, 892, 853, 821, 768, 735, 697, 629, 601, 514 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>25</sub>H<sub>28</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub> *m/e* 452.1947, obsd *m/e* 452.1923.

**(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-Allyloxycarbonyl-8-benzyloxy-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (69)**

A solution of DMSO (0.18 mL, 0.20 g, 2.56 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (4 mL) was added dropwise over 30 minutes to a solution of oxalyl chloride (0.63 mL of a 2.0 M solution in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, 1.26 mmol) at -45°C (dry ice/CH<sub>3</sub>CN) under a nitrogen atmosphere. After stirring at -45°C for 30 minutes, a solution of the alcohol **68** (0.42 g, 0.93 mmol) dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (8 mL) was added dropwise over 35 minutes at -45°C. After 45 minutes at -45°C, the mixture was treated dropwise with TEA (0.50 mL, 0.36 g, 3.56 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (4 mL) over 30 minutes at -45°C. After 35 minutes, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL), washed with 1N HCl (20 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (20 mL), brine (30 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. TLC (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) of the crude material revealed sufficient product formation and a trace of unoxidised starting material. Purification by flash chromatography (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the protected carbinolamine **69** as white glass (0.172 g, 41%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.48-7.27 (m, 5H<sub>arom</sub>), 7.25 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.74 (br s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.65-5.53 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.56 (d, 1H, *J* = 9.89 Hz, NCHCHOH), 5.22-5.04 (m, 6H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>, and PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.64-4.42 (m, 3H,

$\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$  and OH), 4.28 (d, 1H,  $J = 15.94$  Hz,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ),  
 4.09 (d, 1H,  $J = 15.94$  Hz,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 3.92 (s, 3H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.62  
 (t, 1H,  $J = 8.79$  Hz,  $\text{NCHCHOH}$ ), 2.90 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.97$ , 16.03  
 Hz,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 2.67 (d, 1H,  $J = 16.03$  Hz,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$   
 5 NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  166.8 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}_{\text{amide}}$ ), 156.0 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}_{\text{carbamate}}$ ),  
 150.1 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 149.0 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 141.8 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 136.1 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 131.8  
 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 128.6, 128.1 and 127.3 ( $\text{BnC-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 125.6 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ),  
 118.0 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 114.6 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 110.6 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 109.8  
 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 85.8 ( $\text{NCHCHOH}$ ), 71.0 ( $\text{PhCH}_2\text{O}$ ), 66.7 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ),  
 10 59.8 ( $\text{NCHCHOH}$ ), 56.2 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 50.7 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 35.0  
 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ); MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 450 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 24),  
 422 (1), 392 (1), 364 (1), 348 (3), 340 (12), 298 (6), 282  
 (8), 257 (2), 229 (2), 192 (3), 178 (2), 164 (4), 136 (3), 110  
 (3), 91 ( $\text{PhCH}_2$ , 100), 82 (17), 65 (7); IR (NUJOL\*) 3600-2500  
 15 (br, OH), 2923, 2854, 1711, 1619, 1601, 1513, 1463, 1405,  
 1377, 1300, 1278, 1202, 1119, 1045, 993, 956, 909, 790, 768,  
 724, 697, 637  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{25}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_2\text{O}_6$   $m/e$  450.1791,  
 obsd  $m/e$  450.1790.

**Alternative synthesis (11S,11aS)-10-Allyloxycarbonyl-8-benzyloxy-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (69)**

A solution of the alcohol **68** (0.32 g, 0.71 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$   
 (30 mL, 3:1) was treated with 4 Å powdered molecular sieves  
 (0.2 g) and NMO (126 mg, 1.08 mmol). After 15 minutes  
 25 stirring at room temperature, TPAP (12.6 mg, 35.9  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) was  
 added and stirring continued for a further 1 hour 20 minutes  
 at which point TLC (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) revealed  
 product formation along with some unoxidised starting  
 material. The mixture was then treated with a further  
 30 quantity of NMO (126 mg, 1.08 mmol) and TPAP (12.6 mg, 35.9  
 $\mu\text{mol}$ ), and allowed to stir for a further 0.5 hours after which  
 time TLC revealed reaction completion. The mixture was  
 evaporated *in vacuo* onto silica and subjected to flash  
 chromatography (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to provide the  
 35 protected carbinolamine **69** as a white glass (153 mg, 48%):  
 $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +129.8^\circ$  ( $c = 1.5$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$



100

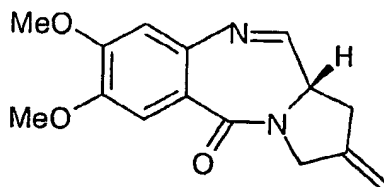
7.48-7.27 (m, 5H<sub>arom</sub>), 7.25 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.74 (br s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.65-5.53 (m, 1H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.56 (d, 1H, *J* = 9.89 Hz, NCHCHOH), 5.22-5.04 (m, 6H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> and PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.64-4.42 (m, 3H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub> and OH), 4.28 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.94 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.09 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.94 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.62 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.79 Hz, NCHCHOH), 2.90 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.97, 16.03 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.67 (d, 1H, *J* = 16.03 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 166.8 (NC=O<sub>amido</sub>), 156.0 (NC=O<sub>carbamate</sub>), 150.1 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 149.0 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 141.8 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 136.1 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 131.8 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 128.6, 128.1 and 127.3 (BnC-H<sub>arom</sub>), 125.6 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 118.0 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 114.6 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 110.6 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 109.8 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 85.8 (NCHCHOH), 71.0 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 66.7 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 59.8 (NCHCHOH), 56.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 50.7 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 35.0 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), *m/z* (relative intensity) 450 (M<sup>+</sup>, 24), 422 (1), 392 (1), 364 (1), 348 (3), 340 (12), 298 (6), 282 (8), 257 (2), 229 (2), 192 (3), 178 (2), 164 (4), 136 (3), 110 (3), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 100), 82 (17), 65 (7); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3600-2500 (br, OH), 2923, 2854, 1711, 1619, 1601, 1513, 1463, 1405, 1377, 1300, 1278, 1202, 1119, 1045, 993, 956, 909, 790, 768, 724, 697, 637 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>25</sub>H<sub>26</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub> *m/e* 450.1791, obsd *m/e* 450.1790.

**(11aS)-8-Benzyloxy-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (70, SJG-244)**

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (12.0 mg, 10.4 μmol) was added to a stirred solution of the Alloc-protected carbinolamine **69** (0.18 g, 0.40 mmol), triphenylphosphine (5.25 mg, 20 μmol) and pyrrolidine (29 mg, 0.41 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (15 mL). After 2 hours stirring at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere, TLC (98% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (60% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford **70** (SJG-244) as a white glass (116 mg, 83%) which was repeatedly evaporated *in vacuo* with CHCl<sub>3</sub> in an attempt to provide the N10-C11 imine form: [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>22</sup> = +754.2 ° (*c* = 0.54,

CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (mainly imine, plus trace of carbinolamine form) δ 7.70-7.30 (m, 7H, HC=N and 6H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.84 (s, 1H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.25-5.13 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub> and PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.42 (br s, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 3.95 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.88-3.66 (m, 1H, NCHHC=N), 3.09 (dd, 1H, J = 8.98, 16.12 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.94-2.87 (m, 1H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 164.7 (NC=O), 162.6 (HC=N), 150.6 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 148.1 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 141.6 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 140.5 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 136.1 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 132.0, 128.7, 128.6, 128.1 and 127.3 (BnCH<sub>2</sub>), 120.1 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 111.5 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 111.2 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 109.4 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 70.8 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.7 (NCHHC=N), 51.3 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 35.4 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI), m/z (relative intensity) (imine form) 348 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 333 (M-CH<sub>3</sub>, 42), 319 (3), 269 (5), 257 (M-PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 25), 241 (11), 229 (56), 227 (11), 213 (5), 186 (4), 156 (6), 136 (22), 122 (4), 91 (PhCH<sub>2</sub>, 85), 82 (5), 65 (22); IR (NUJOL®) 3318 (br, OH of carbinolamine form), 2923, 2853, 1722, 1668, 1600, 1557, 1504, 1462, 1377, 1261, 1216, 1120, 1003, 892, 789, 722, 695, 623, 542 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>20</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>, m/e 348.1474, obsd m/e 348.1469.

**Example 2(c) : Synthesis of MMY-SJG (74, UP2064) (see Figure 9)**



**(2S)-N-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethoxybenzoyl]-2-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-methylidinedimethylpyrrolidine (71)**

Potassium *tert*-butoxide (21.2 mL of a 0.5 M solution in THF, 10.6 mmol) was added dropwise to a suspension of methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide (3.78 g, 10.6 mmol) in THF (11 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone) under nitrogen. After stirring for 2 hours at 0°C, a solution of the ketone **38** (Example 1(e)) (2.0 g, 4.07 mmol) in THF (7 mL) was added dropwise and the mixture allowed to warm to room temperature. After stirring for a further 45 minutes the reaction mixture was diluted with

EtOAc (60 mL) and water (60 mL). The organic layer was separated, washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to give a dark oil. Purification by flash chromatography (20% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) isolated the pure olefin **71** as a transparent oil (1.71 g, 86%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -44.55^\circ$  ( $c = 0.20$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  8.85 (br s, 1H), 7.86 (s, 1H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 6.03-5.89 (m, 1H), 5.35 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 17.22, 3.11, 1.47$  Hz), 5.24 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 10.44, 2.75, 1.28$  Hz), 4.99-4.92 (m, 2H), 4.70-4.57 (m, 3H), 4.23-3.57 (m, 10H), 2.72-2.68 (m, 2H), 0.96-0.85 (m, 9H), 0.09--0.03 (m, 6H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  168.7, 153.6, 150.9, 143.6, 132.5, 132.2, 118.1, 115.3, 110.6, 107.1, 104.3, 65.7, 63.6, 56.3, 56.0, 33.1, 25.8, 18.1, -5.5 and -5.6; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 492 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 7), 491 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 20), 490 ( $M^+$ , 50), 475 (4), 435 (10), 447 (3), 434 (29), 433 (94), 376 (4), 375 (13), 348 (5), 333 (11), 332 (6), 294 (3), 265 (16), 264 (100), 227 (8), 226 (24), 224 (5), 223 (18), 220 (15), 210 (4), 208 (5), 207 (13), 206 (96), 192 (7), 180 (18), 179 (25), 170 (21), 169 (8), 168 (28), 164 (13), 152 (7), 150 (13), 136 (10), 108 (5), 96 (5), 95 (12), 94 (7), 89 (8), 82 (25), 75 (20), 73 (30), 59 (7), 58 (5), 57 (41), 56 (7), 55 (4); IR (NEAT) 3324 (br, NH), 3082, 2953, 2930, 2857, 1732, 1600, 1523, 1490, 1464, 1419, 1397, 1360, 1333, 1287, 1259, 1228, 1203, 1172, 1115, 1039, 1004, 939, 837, 814, 777 666 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

**(2*S*)-*N*-[(2-Allyloxycarbonylamino)-4,5-dimethoxybenzoyl]-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidinepyrrolidine (**72**)**

A solution of TBAF (4.29 mL of a 1M solution in THF, 4.29 mmol) was added to the silyl-ether **71** (1.68 g, 3.43 mmol) in THF (45 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and after 1 hour TLC (50% EtOAc/Pet-Ether 40°- 60°) revealed the complete disappearance of starting material. Saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (110 mL) was added and the reaction mixture extracted with EtOAc (3 X 50 mL), washed with brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated in vacuo to give a dark orange oil. Purification by flash

chromatography (99% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) provided the pure alcohol **72** as a white solid (1.15 g, 89%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -13.17^\circ$  ( $c = 0.15$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.59 (br s, 1H), 7.69 (s, 1H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 6.03–5.89 (m, 1H), 5.35 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 17.22$ , 3.11, 1.65 Hz), 5.24 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 10.44$ , 2.75, 1.28 Hz), 5.02–4.94 (m, 2H), 4.66–4.62 (m, 3H), 4.23–3.57 (m, 11H), 2.77 (dd, 1H,  $J = 15.94$ , 8.42 Hz), 2.48 (d, 1H,  $J = 15.94$  Hz); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  170.3, 153.8, 151.0, 144.2, 143.1, 132.5, 131.2, 118.1, 115.9, 110.4, 108.1, 104.9, 65.8, 65.1, 59.8, 56.4, 56.0, 54.2, 34.1; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 378 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 3), 377 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 14), 376 ( $M^+$ , 51), 319 (3), 265 (10), 264 (62), 263 (4), 259 (8), 224 (4), 223 (18), 220 (17), 208 (5), 207 (14), 206 (100), 192 (8), 190 (5), 180 (27), 179 (29), 178 (4), 164 (23), 163 (4), 152 (12), 151 (6), 150 (19), 137 (5), 136 (22), 135 (6), 125 (6), 120 (6), 113 (6), 112 (31), 109 (6), 108 (11), 95 (4), 94 (9), 82 (28), 80 (8), 67 (5), 57 (5), 54 (7), 53 (7); IR (NUJOL®) 3341 and 3245 (br, OH and NH), 3115, 2918, 2850, 1727, 1616, 1540, 1464, 1399, 1378, 1351, 1283, 1264, 1205, 1179, 1117, 1055, 1040, 996, 946, 909, 894, 855, 823, 768, 754, 722, 696, 623, 602 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>22</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>,  $m/e$  376.1634, obsd  $m/e$  376.1614.

**(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-Allyloxycarbonyl-7,8-dimethoxy-11-hydroxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (73)**

A solution of DMSO (0.75 mL, 0.82 g, 10.5 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (27 mL) was added dropwise over 38 minutes to a solution of oxalyl chloride (2.64 mL of a 2.0 M solution in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, 5.27 mmol) at -45°C (liq.N<sub>2</sub>/Chlorobenzene) under a nitrogen atmosphere. After stirring at -45°C for 1 h, a solution of the alcohol **72** (1.10 g, 2.93 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (27 mL) was added dropwise over 1 hour at -45°C. After 1 hour at -45°C, the mixture was treated dropwise with a solution of TEA (1.71 mL, 1.24 g, 12.29 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (15 mL) over 40 minutes at -45°C. After a further 30 minutes, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL), washed with 1N

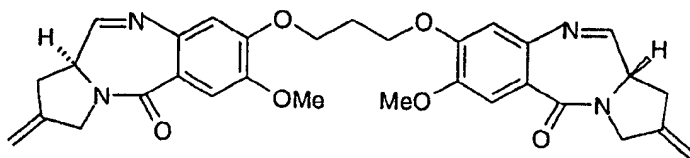
HCl (50 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. TLC (80% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) of the crude material revealed reaction completion. Purification by flash chromatography (60% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) furnished the protected carbinolamine **73** as a white glass (0.45 g, 41%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +236.51^\circ$  ( $c = 0.14$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.23 (s, 1H), 6.69 (s, 1H), 5.83-5.81 (m, 1H), 5.60-5.58 (m, 1H), 5.34-5.23 (m, 4H), 4.74-4.66 (m, 1H), 4.50-4.40 (m, 1H), 4.30 (d, 1H,  $J = 15.94$  Hz), 4.15 (d, 1H,  $J = 15.93$  Hz), 3.96-3.86 (m, 7H), 3.65 (t, 1H,  $J = 8.61$  Hz), 2.92 (dd, 1H, 16.21, 9.07 Hz), 2.70 (d, 1H,  $J = 15.94$  Hz); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  166.7, 156.0, 150.8, 148.4, 141.8, 131.7, 128.5, 125.2, 118.1, 112.4, 110.3, 109.8, 85.9, 66.8, 59.6, 56.3, 56.1, 50.7, 35.0; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 376 ( $M^+ + 2$ , 6), 375 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 22), 374 ( $M^+$ , 100), 346 (5), 293 (8), 288 (10), 271 (5), 265 (11), 264 (67), 248 (5), 237 (5), 223 (10), 220 (9), 209 (6), 208 (42), 207 (14), 206 (70), 192 (7), 190 (5), 180 (17), 179 (16), 165 (8), 164 (15), 153 (5), 152 (10), 150 (12), 149 (7), 137 (6), 136 (10), 135 (5), 125 (8), 110 (8), 108 (5), 94 (5), 83 (5), 82 (59), 80 (7); IR (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3275 (br, OH), 3075, 2936, 2851, 1706, 1624, 1604, 1516, 1457, 1436, 1403, 1368, 1312, 1301, 1278, 1262, 1218, 1119, 1074, 1045, 940, 916, 893, 867, 851, 666, 637 cm<sup>-1</sup>; exact mass calcd for C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>11</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>,  $m/e$  374.1478, obsd  $m/e$  374.1687.

**(11a5)-7,8-Dimethoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (74, UP2064, MMY-SJG)**

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (32.4 mg, 28.1  $\mu$ mol) was added to a stirred solution of the Alloc-protected carbinolamine **73** (0.42 g, 1.12 mmol), triphenylphosphine (14.7 mg, 56.2  $\mu$ mol) and pyrrolidine (83.9 mg, 1.18 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (55 mL). After 2.5 hours stirring at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere, TLC (95% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) to afford

the novel PBD (74, MMY-SJG, UP2064) as a yellow oil which was repeatedly evaporated in vacuo with  $\text{CHCl}_3$  in order to provide the N10-C11 imine form (259 mg, 85%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +583.14^\circ$  ( $c = 1.42$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.69 (d, 1H,  $J = 4.39$  Hz), 7.51 (s, 1H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 5.21-5.17 (m, 2H), 4.44-4.23 (m, 2H), 3.96-3.81 (m, 7H), 3.17-3.08 (m, 1H), 2.95 (d, 1H,  $J = 14.29$  Hz);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  164.7, 162.6, 151.5, 147.6, 141.6, 140.8, 119.8, 111.2, 109.4, 109.4, 56.2, 56.1, 53.8, 51.4, 35.5; MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 273 ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ , 16), 272 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 100), 271 (35), 270 (9), 255 (5), 243 (7), 241 (7), 230 (6), 228 (6), 226 (5), 212 (3), 192 (4), 191 (16), 165 (4), 164 (19), 163 (4), 136 (22), 93 (6), 82 (7), 80 (3), 53 (3); IR (NEAT) 3312 (br), 3083, 2936, 2843, 1624, 1603, 1505, 1434, 1380, 1264, 1217, 1180, 1130, 1096, 1069, 1007, 935, 895, 837, 786, 696, 666, 594, 542  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; exact mass calcd for  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{16}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$ ,  $m/e$  272.1161, obsd  $m/e$  272.1154.

**Example 2(d) : Synthesis of the PBD Dimer SJG-136 (UP2001)**  
(see Figure 10)



(2S)-1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(2-nitro-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[2-(tert-butyl)dimethylsilyloxymethyl]-4-methylidenepyrrolidine] (75)

A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a solution of the dimer acid 44 (0.66 g, 1.42 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (0.31 mL, 0.45 g, 3.55 mmol) in THF (12 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred for 16 hours under nitrogen, concentrated in vacuo, and redissolved in THF (10 mL). The resulting solution of bis-acid chloride was added dropwise to the amine 58 (0.65 g, 2.86 mmol),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (0.84 mL) and TEA (0.83 mL, 0.60 g, 5.93 mmol) in THF (2 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  (ice/acetone) under nitrogen. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 2 hours at which time TLC (EtOAc)

revealed reaction completion. After removal of the THF by evaporation *in vacuo*, the residue was partitioned between H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL) and EtOAc (100 mL). The aqueous layer was washed with EtOAc (3 X 50 mL), and the combined organic layers washed with saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the crude product as a dark orange oil. Purification by flash chromatography (50% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) afforded the pure amide **75** as a pale yellow glass (0.93 g, 74%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -51.1^\circ$  ( $c = 0.08$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  7.77 and 7.74 (s x 2, 2H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.81 and 6.76 (s x 2, 2H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.09-4.83 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.60 (m, 2H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 4.35-4.31 (m, 4H, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.08-3.74 (m, 14H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub> and OCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.72-2.45 (m, 6H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub> and OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 0.91 and 0.79 (s x 2, 18H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.09, -0.09, and -0.12 (s x 3, 12H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  166.2 (NC=O), 154.7 and 154.5 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 148.4 and 148.2 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 144.1 and 143.2 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 137.2 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 128.2 and 127.4 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 110.1 and 108.6 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 109.1 and 108.3 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 107.5 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 65.7 and 65.5 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 63.9 and 62.6 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 60.2 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS), 58.1 and 56.6 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.8 and 50.5 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 35.0 and 33.9 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 30.8 and 28.6 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 25.8 and 25.7 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.2 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.5 and -5.6 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 885 (M<sup>+</sup>, 7), 828 (M-<sup>t</sup>Bu, 100), 740 (M-CH<sub>2</sub>OTBDMS, 20), 603 (3), 479 (26), 391 (27), 385 (25), 301 (7), 365 (10), 310 (14), 226 (8), 222 (13), 170 (21), 168 (61), 82 (39), 75 (92); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 2923, 2853, 2360, 1647, 1587, 1523 (NO<sub>2</sub>), 1461, 1429, 1371, 1336 (NO<sub>2</sub>), 1277, 1217, 1114, 1061, 1021, 891, 836 772, 739 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

**(2S)-1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(2-nitro-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine] (76)**

A solution of TBAF (3.98 mL of a 1M solution in THF, 3.98 mmol) was added to the *bis*-silyl ether **75** (1.41 g, 1.59 mmol) in THF (35 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and after a further 30

minutes saturated  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  (120 mL) was added. The aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (3 X 80 mL), washed with brine (80 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a dark orange oil which was purified by flash chromatography (97%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) to provide the pure diol **76** as a light orange solid (0.98 g, 94%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -31.9^\circ$  ( $c = 0.09$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  7.75 and 7.71 (s x 2,  $2\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 6.96 and 6.84 (s x 2,  $2\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 5.08, 5.02 and 4.88 (br s x 3, 4H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.61-4.50 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 4.35-4.33 (m, 4H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.02-3.65 (m, 14H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$  and  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 2.88-2.43 (m, 6H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$  and  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (Rotamers)  $\delta$  167.9 and 166.9 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}$ ), 154.9 and 154.3 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 148.4 and 148.2 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 143.3 and 142.6 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 137.2 and 137.0 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 127.6 and 127.3 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 109.1 ( $\text{C}-\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 108.4 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 108.2 ( $\text{C}-\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 65.6 and 65.4 ( $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 64.5 and 63.3 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 60.5 and 60.0 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 56.8 and 56.7 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 52.9 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 35.0 and 34.3 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 29.6 and 28.6 ( $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ); MS (FAB) (Relative Intensity) 657 ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ , 10), 639 (M-OH, 2), 612 (1), 544 (M- $\text{NCH}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$ , 4), 539 (1), 449 (16), 433 (9), 404 (8), 236 (32), 166 (65), 151 (81), 112 (82), 82 (100); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3600-3200 (br, OH), 2923, 2853, 2360, 1618, 1582, 1522 ( $\text{NO}_2$ ), 1459, 1408, 1375, 1335 ( $\text{NO}_2$ ), 1278, 1218, 1061, 908, 810, 757  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

**(2S)-1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(2-amino-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine] (77)**

A mixture of the diol **76** (0.98 g, 1.49 mmol) and  $\text{SnCl}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (3.36 g, 14.9 mmol) in MeOH (35 mL) was heated at reflux and the progress of the reaction monitored by TLC (90%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ). After 45 minutes, the MeOH was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue was cooled (ice), and treated carefully with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (120 mL). The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (120 mL), and after 16 hours stirring at room temperature the inorganic precipitate was removed by filtration through celite. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine (100 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to



give a brown solid. Flash chromatography (95% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) afforded the pure *bis*-amine **77** as an orange solid (0.54 g, 61%):  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -31.8^\circ$  ( $c = 0.30$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  6.74 (s, 2H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.32 (s, 2H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.00 (br s, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.93 (br s, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.54 (br s, 2H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 4.24-4.14 (m, 4H, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.98-3.50 (m, 14H, NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub> and OCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.76 (dd, 2H,  $J = 8.61, 15.91$  Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.46-2.41 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.33-2.28 (m, 2H, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  171.0 (NC=O), 151.0 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 143.5 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 141.3 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 140.6 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 112.4 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 111.9 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 107.8 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 102.4 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 65.2 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 65.0 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 59.8 (NCHCH<sub>2</sub>OH), 57.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.3 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 34.4 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 29.0 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); MS (FAB) (Relative Intensity) 596 (M<sup>+</sup>, 13), 484 (M-NCH<sub>2</sub>CCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 14), 389 (10), 371 (29), 345 (5), 224 (8), 206 (44), 166 (100), 149 (24), 112 (39), 96 (34), 81 (28); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3600-3000 (br, OH), 3349 (NH<sub>2</sub>), 2922, 2852, 2363, 1615, 1591 (NH<sub>2</sub>), 1514, 1464, 1401, 1359, 1263, 1216, 1187, 1169, 1114, 1043, 891, 832, 761 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

**(2*S*,4*R*)&(2*S*,4*S*)-1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(2-amino-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylpyrrolidine] (**77**).**

A solution of hydrazine (23 mg, 23  $\mu$ L, 0.72 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of the diol **76** (95 mg, 0.145 mmol) and Raney Ni (20 mg) in MeOH (15 mL) heated at reflux. After 1 hour at reflux TLC (90% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) revealed some amine formation. The reaction mixture was treated with further Raney Ni (20 mg) and hydrazine (23 mg, 23  $\mu$ L, 0.72 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) and was heated at reflux for an additional 30 minutes at which point TLC revealed complete reaction. The reaction mixture was then treated with enough Raney Ni to decompose any remaining hydrazine and heated at reflux for a further 1.5 hours. Following cooling to room temperature the mixture was filtered through a sinter and the resulting filtrate evaporated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was then treated with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to provide the *bis*-amine (**77**) as a

yellow oil (54 mg, 63%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (diastereoisomers)  $\delta$  6.73 (s,  $2\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 6.32 (s,  $2\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 4.60-4.30 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 4.19 (t, 4H,  $J = 5.87$  Hz,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.78-3.50 (m, 14H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHCH}_3$  and  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 2.40-1.55 (m, 8H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHCH}_3$ ,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$  and  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHCH}_3\text{CH}_2$ ), 1.00-0.95 (m, 6H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{CHCH}_3$ ); MS (EI),  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 600 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 16), 459 (46), 345 (16), 206 (13), 186 (17), 180 (31), 166 (37), 149 (6), 142 (76), 100 (6), 98 (13), 97 (29), 84 (81), 69 (7), 55 (100).

10 (2*S*)-1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(2-allyloxycarbonylamino-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine] (78)

Pyridine (0.47 mL, 0.46 g, 5.82 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of the bis-amine 77 (0.857 g, 1.44 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (30 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  (ice/acetone). The cool mixture was then treated dropwise with a solution of allyl chloroformate (0.33 mL, 0.38 g, 3.15 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (10 mL). After 2.5 hours stirring at room temperature, the mixture was diluted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (60 mL), washed with 1N HCl (2 X 50 mL),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (80 mL), brine (80 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (70-100% EtOAc/Petroleum Ether) to afford the allyl cartamate compound 78 as a slightly orange glass (0.548 g, 50%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.58 (br s, 2H, NH), 7.56 (s,  $2\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 6.78 (s,  $2\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 6.03-5.88 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 5.39-5.21 (m, 4H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 5.00 (br s, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.93 (br s, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.70-4.57 (m, 4H,  $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.30-4.25 (m, 4H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.17-3.90 (m, 8H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$  and  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 3.81-3.54 (m, 8H,  $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$  and  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 2.76 (dd, 2H,  $J = 8.52, 15.85$  Hz,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 2.49-2.44 (m, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 2.36-2.28 (m, 2H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  170.3 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}_{\text{amide}}$ ), 153.8 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}_{\text{carbonate}}$ ), 150.5 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 144.8 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 143.1 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 132.5 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 130.7 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 118.1 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 116.8 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 110.9 ( $\text{C}-\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 108.1 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 106.9 ( $\text{C}-\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 65.7 ( $\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 65.4 ( $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 65.1 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 59.8 ( $\text{NCHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ), 56.5 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 53.9 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 34.2 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ),

29.7 and 29.2 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); MS (FAB) (Relative Intensity) 765 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 10), 652 (M-NCH<sub>2</sub>CCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>OH, 32), 594 (4), 539 (2), 481 (51), 441 (31), 290 (3), 249 (13), 232 (38), 192 (83), 166 (49), 149 (32), 114 (100).

5 **1,1'-[[ (Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(allyloxycarbonyl)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one] (79)**

10 A solution of the *bis*-alloc compound **78** (150 mg, 0.196 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>CN (12 mL, 3:1) was treated with 4 Å powdered molecular sieves (0.2 g) and NMO (70 mg, 0.598 mmol). After 15 minutes stirring at room temperature, TPAP (7 mg, 19.9 μmol) was added and stirring continued for a further 2 hours at which time TLC (95% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) indicated formation, of the 15 fully cyclised product along with the presumed semi-cyclised product **79**, and unreacted starting material **78** present in the reaction mixture. The mixture was then treated with a further quantity of NMO (35 mg, 0.299 mmol) and TPAP (3.5 mg, 9.96 μmol), and allowed to stir for a further 0.5 hours when TLC 20 revealed reaction completion. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the black residue was subjected to flash chromatography (98% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) to provide the pure protected carbinolamine **79** as a white solid (47 mg, 32%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.23 (s, 2H<sub>arom</sub>), 6.74 (s, 2H<sub>arom</sub>), 5.90-5.65 (m, 25 2H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.57 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.24 Hz, NCHCHOH), 5.26-5.07 (m, 8H, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub> and NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.67-4.10 (m, 14H, NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O and OH), 3.89 (s, 6H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.63 (m, 2H, NCHCHOH), 2.91 (dd, 2H, *J* = 8.79, 15.76 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.68 (d, 2H, *J* = 16.10 Hz, NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.42-2.24 (m, 2H, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 166.7 (NC=O<sub>amido</sub>), 150.1 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 149.0 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 141.7 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 131.7 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 130.6 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 128.9 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 128.8 (C<sub>quat</sub>), 118.3 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 114.7 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 110.7 (C-H<sub>arom</sub>), 109.8 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 85.9 (NCHCHOH), 66.9 (NCO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 66.0 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 59.7 (NCHCHOH), 56.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 50.7 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 35 35.0 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 29.7 and 29.1 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); MS (FAB)

(Relative Intensity) 743 ( $M^+$  - 17, 16), 725 (17), 632 (13), 574 (8), 548 (13), 490 (10), 481 (9), 441 (7), 425 (6), 257 (12), 232 (20), 192 (46), 166 (52), 149 (100), 91 (59); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3234 (br, OH), 2923, 2853, 2361, 1707, 1604, 1515, 1464, 1410, 1377, 1302, 1267, 1205, 1163, 1120, 1045, 999, 955, 768, 722  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

**1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one] (80, SJG-136)**

10 A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (11 mg, 9.52  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) was added to a stirred solution of the bis-alloc-carbinolamine **79** (139 mg, 0.183 mmol), triphenylphosphine (4.8 mg, 18.3  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) and pyrrolidine (27 mg, 0.380 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  (13 mL, 10:3) at 0°C (ice/acetone)

15 under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and the progress monitored by TLC (95%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ). After 2 hours 15 minutes TLC revealed the reaction was complete, proceeding via the presumed half-imine product **261**, to give a TLC spot which fluoresced brightly

20 under UV. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue subjected to flash chromatography (98%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) to give the bis-imine target molecule **80** (SJG-136) as a pale orange glass (78 mg, 77%) which was repeatedly evaporated *in vacuo* with  $\text{CHCl}_3$  to provide the imine form:  $[\alpha]_D^{25}$

25 = +357.7° ( $c = 0.07$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ); Reverse Phase HPLC ( $C_{18}$  stationary phase, 65%  $\text{MeOH}/\text{H}_2\text{O}$  mobile phase, 254 nm), Retention time = 6.27 minutes, % Peak area = 97.5%;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (imine form)  $\delta$  7.68 (d, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz,  $\text{HC}=\text{N}$ ), 7.49 (s,  $2\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 6.85 (s,  $2\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 5.20 (s, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 5.17 (s, 2H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 4.46-4.19 (m, 4H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.92 (s, 6H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.89-3.68 (m, 6H,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$  and  $\text{NCHHC}=\text{N}$ ), 3.12 (dd, 2H,  $J =$

30 8.61, 16.21 Hz,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 2.68 (d, 2H,  $J = 16.30$  Hz,  $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$ ), 2.45-2.38 (m, 2H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (imine form)  $\delta$  164.7 ( $\text{NC}=\text{O}$ ), 162.6 ( $\text{HC}=\text{N}$ ), 150.7 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 147.9 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 141.5 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 140.6 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 119.8 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 111.5 ( $\text{C}-\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 110.7 ( $\text{C}-\text{H}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 109.4 ( $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ ), 65.4 ( $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 56.1

35

(OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.8 (NCHHC=N), 51.4 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>), 35.4 (NCH<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 28.8 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); MS (FAB) (Relative Intensity) (imine form) 773 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1 + (Thioglycerol adduct X 2), 3), 665 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1 + Thioglycerol adduct, 7), 557 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 9), 464 (3), 279 (12), 257 (5), 201 (5), 185 (43), 166 (6), 149 (12), 93 (100); IR (NUJOL<sup>®</sup>) 3600-3100 (br, OH of carbinolamine form), 2923, 2849, 1599, 1511, 1458, 1435, 1391, 1277, 1228, 1054, 1011, 870, 804, 761, 739 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Alternative Synthesis of UP2001, SJG-136 (80) (see Figure 11)

UP2001 was also prepared by an alternative synthesis based the bis -ketone **52** (see Example 11(f)).

1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2*S*)-2-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-methylidene-2,3-dihydropyrrole]

(**206**)

A solution of potassium-*t*-butoxide in dry THF (0.5 M, 4.00 mL, 2.00 mmol) was added to as suspension of methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide (0.716 g, 2.00 mmol) in dry THF (2.00 mL). The resulting yellow ylide suspension was allowed to stir at 0°C for 2 hours before the addition of a solution of the bis-ketone **52** (0.50 g, 0.50 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 10°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirring was continued for a further hour. The reaction mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate (15 mL) and water (15 mL) and the organic layer was washed the sat. sodium chloride (20 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent gave a brown oil that was subjected to flash column chromatography (50% ethyl acetate, 50% 40-60° petroleum ether) to afford the product as a yellow glass **206** (250 mg, 51%). [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>23.4</sup> = -32 ° (c 0.265, CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 0.00 (s, 12H), 0.88 (s, 18H), 2.37-2.40 (m, 2H), 2.69-2.75 (m, 4H), 3.80-4.62 (m, 20H), 4.61-4.63 (m, 4H), 4.98 (bs, 4H), 5.30-5.38 (m, 4H), 5.94-6.00 (m, 2H), 6.81 (s, 2H), 7.84 (s, 2H), 8.80 (bs, 2H).

1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2*S*)-2-hydroxymethyl-4-methylidene-2,3-dihydropyrrole] (78)

5 An aliquot of hydrogen fluoride/pyridine complex (0.8 mL, 70% HF, 30 % pyridine) was added to a solution of the bis-silyl ether **206** (285 mg, 0.287 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. Stirring was continued at 0°C for 30 minutes and the reaction mixture was then allowed to rise to room temperature over a 1 hour period. The reaction mixture  
10 was neutralised with sodium bicarbonate and extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic phase was washed with brine and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded the product **78** as a yellow gum (218 mg).

15 1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(allyloxycarbonyl)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4-benzodiazepin-5-one] (79)

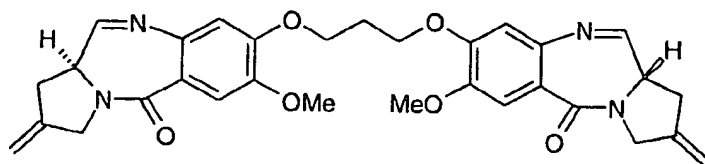
A solution of dimethyl sulphoxide (0.55 mL, 7.75 mmol) in dry  
20 dichloromethane (10 mL) was added dropwise, over a 15 minute period, to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (0.32 mL, 3.67 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) at - 45°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 35 minutes at - 45°C followed by addition of the diol **78**  
25 (1.01 g, 1.32 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL), at the same temperature, over 15 minutes. After a further 45 minutes a solution of triethylamine (1.50 mL, 10.76 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) was added over a period of 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at - 45°C for 30  
30 minutes before being allowed to warm to room temperature over 45 minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with water and the phases were allowed to separate. The organic phase was washed with 1M HCl (3 x 50 mL), sat. sodium chloride (50 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent  
35 yielded the crude product, which was purified by flash column

chromatography (1.5% methanol, 98.5% chloroform) to afford the product **79** (0.785 g, 77%).

1,1'[[[(propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one] (**80**, SJG-136)

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (21 mg, 0.018 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of the bis-alloc-carbinolamine **79** (250 mg, 0.33 mmol), triphenylphosphine (10 mg, 0.033 mmol) and pyrrolidine (0.05 mL, 0.66 mmol) in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (30 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 2 hours before warming to room temperature over 1 hour.. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue subjected to flash chromatography (98% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) to give the bis-imine target molecule **80** (SJG-136).

Example 2(e) : Synthesis of 1,1'[[[(pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one] (**218**)  
(see Figure 12a/b)



#### Preparation of Nitro Dimer Core

1',5'-Bis[2-methoxy-4-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]pentane (**208**)

Neat diethyl azidodicarboxylate (19.02 mL, 21.04 g, 120.8 mmol) was added dropwise over 30 minutes to a stirred solution of methyl vanillate (**206**) (20 g, 109.8 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (43.2 g, 164.7 mmol) in anhydrous THF (400

mL) and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 0°C for 1 h. The cold reaction mixture was treated dropwise over 20 minutes with a solution of 1,5-pentanediol (**207**) (3.83 mL, 4.03 g, 53.0 mmol) in THF (4 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature and the precipitated product (**208**) was collected by vacuum filtration. Dilution of the filtrate with methanol precipitated further product (**208**). The combined precipitate (12.3 g, 52 % based on pentanediol) was used in the next step without further purification: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.65 (dd, 2H, *J* = 2.01, 8.42 Hz), 7.54 (d, 2H, *J* = 2.01 Hz), 6.87 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.42 Hz), 4.10 (t, 4H, *J* = 6.59 Hz), 3.90 (s, 6H), 3.89 (s, 6H), 2.10-1.90 (m, 4H), 1.85-1.26 (m, 2H).

**1',5'-Bis[2-methoxy-4-(methoxycarbonyl)-5-nitrophenoxy]pentane (**209**)**

Solid copper (II) nitrate trihydrate (16.79 g, 69.5 mmol) was added slowly to a stirred solution of the bis-ester (**208**) (12 g, 27.8 mmol) in acetic anhydride (73 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 1 hour at 0°C, the ice bath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature a mild exotherm, c. 40°C, accompanied by the evolution of NO<sub>2</sub> occurred at this stage. After the exotherm had subsided stirring at room temperature was continued for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into ice water and the aqueous suspension allowed to stir for 1 h. The resulting yellow precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and dried in air to afford the desired bis nitro compound (**209**) (14.23 g, 98 %): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub> + DMSO) δ 7.45 (s, 2H), 7.09 (s, 2H), 4.14 (t, 4H, *J* = 6.31 Hz), 3.97 (s, 6H), 3.90 (s, 6H), 2.20-1.94 (m, 4H), 1.75-1.70 (m, 2H).

**1',5'-Bis(4-carboxy-2-methoxy-5-nitrophenoxy) pentan (**210**)**

A suspension of the ester **209** (9.0 g, 17.2 mmol) in aqueous sodium hydroxide (1 M, 180 mL) and THF (180 mL) was allowed to stir until a homogenous solution was obtained (2 days). THF



was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting aqueous suspension was filtered to remove any unreacted starting material. The filtrate was adjusted to pH 1, the precipitated product was collected by filtration and air dried to afford the desired bis-acid (**210**) (8.88 g). A higher than theoretical yield was obtained due to the inclusion of the sodium salt of acid. The salt may be removed by dissolving the bulk of the material in THF and removing the insoluble material by filtration: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.39 (s, 2H), 7.16 (s, 2H), 4.12 (t, 4H, *J* = 6.59 Hz), 3.95 (s, 6H), 2.00-1.85 (m, 4H), 1.75-1.67 (m, 2H).

Assembling the Bis Ketone Intermediate

**1,1'-[[[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-nitro-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2*S*,4*R*)-2-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine] (**211**)**

A catalytic amount of DMF (5 drops) was added to as stirred suspension of the acid **210** (5.39 g, 10.9 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (3.47 g, 2.38 mL, 27.3 mmol) in anhydrous THF (50 mL). Initial effervescence was observed followed by the formation of a homogenous solution, however after stirring overnight a suspension of the newly formed acid chloride was formed. Excess THF and oxalyl chloride was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure and the acid chloride was resuspended in fresh THF (49 mL). The acid chloride solution was added dropwise to a solution of the (2*S*, 4*R*)-2-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (**2**) (6.3 g, 27.3 mmol), triethylamine (4.42 g, 6.09 mL, 43.7 mmol) and water (1.47 mL) in THF (33 mL) at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirring was continued for 3 h. Excess THF was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was partitioned between water (300 mL) and ethyl acetate (300 mL). The layers were allowed to separate and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 150 mL). The combined organic layers were then

washed with ammonium chloride (150 mL), sat. sodium bicarbonate (150 mL), brine (150 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Filtration followed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the crude product as a dark oil.

5 The crude product was subjected to flash column chromatography (3% methanol, 97% chloroform) and removal of excess eluent isolated (**211**) (3.70 g, 37% yield): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.65 (s, 2H), 6.77 (s, 2H), 4.52 (bs, 2H), 4.40 (bs, 2H), 4.17-4.10 (m, 6H), 3.92 (s, 6H), 3.77 (d, 2H, *J* = 10.26 Hz), 3.32 (td, 2H, *J* = 4.40, 11.35 Hz), 3.08 (d, 2H, *J* = 11.35 Hz), 2.37-2.27 (m, 2H), 2.10-2.00 (m, 6H), 1.75-1.60 (m, 2H), 0.91 (s, 18H), 0.10 (s, 12H).

**1,1'-[[[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2*S*,4*R*)-2-*t*-**

15 **butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine]** (**212**)

A methanolic solution of hydrazine hydrate (1.25 mL, 1.29 g, 40.2 mmol of hydrazine, 20 mL of methanol) was added dropwise to a solution of the bis-nitro compound **211** (3.6 g, 3.91 mmol) in methanol (68 mL) gently refluxing over Raney nickel (510 mg of a thick slurry). After 5 minutes at reflux TLC (10% MeOH, 90% chloroform) revealed the incomplete consumption of starting material. The reaction mixture was treated with additional Raney nickel (c 510 mg) and hydrazine (1.25 mL) in methanol (20 mL) resulting in complete consumption of starting material. Excess Raney nickel was added to the reaction mixture to decompose unreacted hydrazine hydrate and the reaction mixture was then allowed to cool. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite to remove excess Raney nickel and the filter pad washed with additional methanol (Caution! Raney nickel is pyrophoric, do not allow filter pad to dry, use conc. HCl to destroy nickel). The combined filtrate was evaporated by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure and the residue re-dissolved in dichloromethane. The dichloromethane solution was dried over magnesium sulphate (to remove water associated with the hydrazine), filtered and evaporated to afford the product (**212**) as a foam (3.37 g,

91%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 6.69 (s, 2H), 6.24 (s, 2H), 4.40-3.40 (m, 28H), 2.40-1.60 (m, 10H), 0.88 (s, 18H), 0.03 (s, 12H).

5 **1,1'-[[[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2*S*,4*R*)-2-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine] (213)**

A solution of allyl chloroformate (0.806 mL, 0.916 g, 7.6 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (63 mL) was added, dropwise, to a solution of the bis-amine **212** (3.27 g, 3.8 mmol) and pyridine (1.26 g, 1.29 mL, 15.9 mmol) in dichloromethane (128 mL) at 10 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and to stir for 16 h. At which time TLC (10% MeOH, 90% Chloroform) revealed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with 15 dichloromethane (40 mL) and washed with sat. copper II sulphate (2 x 140 mL), water (120 mL) and sat. sodium chloride (120 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure to afford **213** as a foam (3.60 g, 92%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 20 δ 8.87 (bs, 2H), 7.66 (s, 2H), 6.77 (s, 2H), 6.05-5.80 (m, 2H), 5.40-5.15 (m, 4H), 4.70-4.50 (m, 6H), 4.38 (bs, 2H), 4.20-4.00 (m, 4H), 3.78 (s, 6H), 3.70-3.40 (m, 8H), 2.40-2.20 (m, 2H), 2.10-1.80 (m, 6H), 1.75-1.55 (m, 2H), 0.89 (s, 18H), 0.04 (s, 12H).

25 **1,1'-[[[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2*S*)-2-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-oxo-pyrrolidine] (214)**

A solution of dimethyl sulphoxide (1.47 mL, 1.62 g, 20.7 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (32 mL) was added dropwise over 45 30 minutes to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (5.18 mL of a 2 M solution in dichloromethane, 10.35 mmol) at - 60°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. After stirring at - 50°C for 30 minutes, a solution of the bis-alcohol **213** (3.55 g, 3.45 mmol) in dichloromethane (53 mL) was added dropwise over a period of 50

minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at -60°C for 30 minutes prior to the dropwise addition of a solution of triethylamine (4.75 g, 6.54 mL, 46.9 mmol) in dichloromethane (27 mL). Stirring was continued at - 60°C for 45 minutes and then allowed to warm to 0°C. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (20 mL), washed with cold 1 M HCl (2 x 100 mL), sat. sodium chloride (100 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent afforded the crude bis-ketone which was purified by flash column chromatography (50% ethyl acetate, 50% 40-60° petroleum ether) to yield the pure bis-ketone (**214**) as a pale yellow foam (2.54 g, 72%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.69 (bs, 2H), 7.78 (s, 2H), 6.75 (s, 2H), 6.05-5.80 (m, 2H), 5.40-5.20 (m, 4H), 4.65-4.60 (m, 4H), 4.20-3.60 (m, 20H), 2.74 (dd, 2H, J = 9.25, 18.1 Hz), 2.51 (d, 2H, J = 17.4 Hz), 2.00-1.90 (m, 4H), 1.75-1.65 (m, 2H), 0.87 (s, 18H), 0.05 (s, 12H).

Elaboration of bis Ketone and Preparation of the Target Molecule

**1,1'-[[[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2S)-2-t-butylidimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-methylidene-2,3-dihydropyrrole] (215)**

A solution of potassium-t-butoxide in dry THF (0.5 M, 25.2 mL, 12.6 mmol) was added dropwise to a suspension of methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide (4.50 g, 12.6 mmol) in dry THF (15 mL). The resulting yellow ylide suspension was allowed to stir at 0°C for 2 hours before the addition of a solution of the bis-ketone **214** (2.48 g, 2.42 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 10°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirring was continued for a further hour. The reaction mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate (100 mL) and water (100 mL) and the organic layer was washed with sat. sodium chloride (200 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent gave a brown oil that was subjected to flash column chromatography (50% ethyl acetate,

50% 40-60° petroleum ether) to afford the product (**215**) as a yellow glass (865 mg, 35%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.90 (bs, 2H), 7.83 (s, 2H), 6.82 (s, 2H), 6.05-5.90 (m, 2H), 5.40-5.20 (m, 4H), 4.99 (bs, 2H), 4.91 (bs, 2H), 4.65-4.60 (m, 4H), 4.20-3.60 (m, 20H), 2.70 (bs, 4H), 2.00-1.90 (m, 4H), 1.75-1.63 (m, 2H), 0.88 (s, 18H), 0.03 (s, 12H).

**1,1'-[[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-N-allyloxycarbonyl-5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]-bis[(2S)-2-hydroxymethyl-4-methylidene-2,3-dihydropyrrole]** (**216**)

10 A solution of TBAF (3.02 mL of a 1 M solution in THF, 3.02 mmol) was added to the bis-silyl ether (**215**) (1.23 g, 1.21 mmol) in THF (30 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and to stir overnight, the following day, TLC (50:50 EtOAc/Pet-Ether 40°-15 60°) revealed the complete disappearance of starting material. Saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (150 mL) was added and the reaction mixture extracted with EtOAc (3 X 60 mL), washed with sat. sodium chloride (150 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a yellow oil. Purification by flash 20 chromatography (97% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/ 3%MeOH) provided the pure alcohol (**216**) (916 mg, 96%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.61 (bs, 2H), 7.58 (s, 2H), 6.79 (s, 2H), 6.05-5.90 (m, 2H), 5.40-5.20 (m, 4H), 5.01 (bs, 2H), 4.93 (bs, 2H), 4.65-4.60 (m, 4H), 4.20-3.60 (m, 20H), 2.76 (dd, 2H, , J = 8.42, 15.74 Hz), 2.47 (d, 25 2H, J = 15.93 Hz), 2.00-1.90 (m, 4H), 1.80-1.63 (m, 2H).

**1,1'-[[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis(11S,11aS)-10-(allyloxycarbonyl)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4-benzodiazepin-5-one]]** (**217**)

30 A solution of dimethyl sulphoxide (0.57 mL, 0.63 g, 8.07 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (17 mL) was added dropwise, over a 40 minute period, to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (2.02 mL, of a 2 M solution, 4.04 mmol) at - 45°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 40

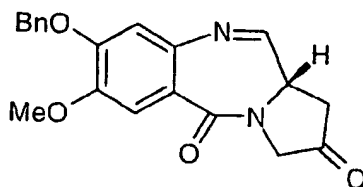
minutes at - 45°C followed by addition of the diol **216** (0.89 g, 1.12 mmol) in dichloromethane (17 mL), at the same temperature, over 15 minutes. After a further 60 minutes a solution of triethylamine (1.31 mL, 9.42 mmol) in  
5 dichloromethane (9 mL) was added over a period of 40 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at - 45°C for 40 minutes before being allowed to warm to room temperature over 45 minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with water and the phases were allowed to separate. The organic phase was  
10 washed with 1 M HCl (2 x 40 mL), water (40 mL), sat. sodium chloride (40 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent yielded the crude product, which was purified by flash column chromatography (1% methanol, 99% chloroform) to afford the product **217** (0.175 g, 20%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
15 (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.22 (s, 2H), 6.65 (s, 2H), 5.82-5.70 (m, 2H), 5.58 (d, 2H, *J* = 9.70 Hz), 5.25-5.00 (m, 8H), 5.75-4.35 (m, 4H), 4.30 (d, 2H, *J* = 16.10 Hz), 4.15 (d, 2H, *J* = 17.03 Hz), 4.01 (t, 4H, *J* = 6.32 Hz), 3.90 (s, 6H), 3.64 (t, 2H, *J* = 8.70 Hz), 3.00-2.85 (m, 2H), 2.71 (d, 2H, *J* = 16.29 Hz), 2.00-  
20 1.85 (m, 4H), 1.70-1.60 (m, 2H).

**1,1'[[[(pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11a*S*)-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-  
c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one] (218)**

A catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium  
25 (13 mg, 11.2 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of the bis-alloc-carbinolamine (**217**) (170 mg, 0.22 mmol), triphenylphosphine (5.7 mg, 21.6 mmol) and pyrrolidine (31 mg, 37.3 mL 0.45 mmol) in DCM (13 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to  
30 warm to room temperature and the progress of reaction monitored by TLC (95% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH). After 2 hours TLC revealed the reaction was complete to give a spot, which fluoresced brightly under UV light. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue subjected to flash  
35 chromatography (99% to 98 CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) to give the bis-imine target molecule **218** as a pale yellow glass (84.5 mg, 75%)

which was repeatedly evaporated *in vacuo* with  $\text{CHCl}_3$  to provide the imine form:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.68 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4.39 Hz), 7.49 (s, 2H), 6.80 (s, 2H), 5.19 (bs, 2H), 5.16 (bs, 2H), 4.28 (bs, 4H), 4.15-4.00 (m, 4H), 3.92 (s, 6H), 3.90-3.80 (m, 2H), 3.12 (dd, 2H,  $J$  = 8.97, 15.93 Hz), 2.95 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 15.93 Hz), 2.00-1.85 (m, 4H), 1.72-1.67 (m, 2H).

**Example 2(f) : Synthesis of PBD with ketone on C-ring (172, UP-2067) (see Figure 13)**



**(2S)(4R)-N-[4-benzyloxy-5-methoxy-2-(2', 2', 2'-trichloroethoxy)carbonyl]-2-(tert-butyltrimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-hydroxypyrrolidine (168)**

A solution of 2,2,2-trichloroethylchloroformate (8.74 g, 5.68 mL, 41.2 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 mL) was added to a solution of **4** (18.2g, 37.5 mmol) and pyridine (5.92 g, 6.1 mL, 75.0 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (200 mL) at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature and was then washed with saturated copper sulphate solution (100 mL), water (100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation to afford the product **168** (22.01 g, 33.2 mmol, 89%) which was used in the subsequent reaction without further purification.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  9.31 (bs, 1H); 7.48 (s, 1H); 7.45-7.28 (m, 5H); 6.82 (s, 1H); 5.17 (bs, 2H); 4.89 (d,  $J$  = 11.9 Hz, 1H); 4.70 (d,  $J$  = 11.9 Hz, 1H); 4.56 (bs, 1H); 4.40 (bs, 1H); 4.20-4.00 (m, 1H); 3.95-3.40 (m, 7H); 2.40-2.00 (m, 2H); 0.09 (s, 9H); 0.04 (s, 6H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  169.2, 152.1, 150.2, 136.1, 128.6, 128.1, 127.7, 111.6, 106.2, 95.2, 74.4, 70.7, 70.5, 62.1, 57.2, 56.4, 35.4,

25.8, 18.1, -5.46.

(2S)-N-[4-benzyloxy-5-methoxy-2-(2', 2', 2'-trichloroethoxy)carbonyl amino]-2-(tert-butyltrimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-oxopyrrolidine (169)

5 A solution of DMSO (7.80 g, 99.8 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (18 mL) was added dropwise, over 30 minutes, to a solution of oxalyl chloride (6.34 g, 49.9 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (25 mL) at - 45°C under a nitrogen atmosphere and the reaction mixture allowed to stir for a further 15 minutes. A solution  
10 of the substrate **168** (22.01 g, 33.3 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 mL) was added dropwise over 40 minutes to the reaction mixture, which was then allowed to stir for 45 minutes at - 45°C. Finally, neat triethylamine (23.52 g, 232.9 mmol) was added dropwise over 30 minutes and the reaction mixture  
15 allowed to stir at -45°C for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature, diluted with water (150 mL) and the organic phase washed with dilute HCl (1N, 100 mL), water (100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated in  
20 vacuo to afford the crude product which was subjected to column chromatography (ethyl acetate/40-60 petroleum ether, 50:50). Removal of excess eluent afforded the product (20.15 g, 92% yield). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.88 (bs, 1H); 7.49-7.28 (m, 5H); 6.80 (s, 1H); 5.22 (d, J = 12.1 Hz, 1H);  
25 5.17 (d, J = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 4.80 (bs, 2H); 4.10-3.60 (m, 8H); 2.75 (dd, J = 18.0, 9.5 Hz, 1H); 2.52 (d, J = 18.0 Hz, 1H); 0.87 (s, 9H); 0.06 (s, 3H); 0.05 (s, 3H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz) δ 208.7, 168.8, 151.8, 150.6, 144.7, 136.0, 128.5, 128.1, 127.7, 110.9, 106.4, 95.2, 74.4, 70.7, 66.0, 56.8, 56.4, 39.4, 25.8,  
30 18.0, -5.7.



(2S)-N-[4-benzyloxy-5-methoxy-2-(2', 2', 2'-trichloroethoxy)carbonyl amino]-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-oxopyrrolidine (170)

5 Glacial acetic acid (60 mL) and water (20 mL) were added to a solution of ketone 169 (9.44 g, 14.3 mmol) in THF (20 mL) and the reaction mixture allowed to stir for 3 hr. (reaction complete by TLC). The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (200 mL) and neutralized dropwise with sat. sodium bicarbonate (1.5 L) in a 5 L flask (effervescence!).  
10 The phases were allowed to separate and the aqueous layer extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent afforded the crude product which was subjected to column chromatography on silica (ethyl acetate/40-60 petroleum ether, 50:50) to give the pure  
15 product (6.44 g, 83%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.77 (bs, 1H); 7.57 (s, 1H); 7.46-7.28 (m, 5H); 6.83 (s, 1H); 5.13 (s, 2H); 4.85-4.70 (m, 3H); 4.07-3.60 (m, 7H); 2.77 (dd, J = 18.5, 9.5 Hz, 1H); 2.54 (d, J = 18.5 Hz, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 209.0, 169.4, 152.3, 150.6, 145.5, 136.0, 130.0, 128.6, 128.3, 127.6, 110.9, 107.4, 95.2, 74.5, 70.8, 64.4, 60.4, 56.6, 55.9, 39.5.

(11s, 11aS)-4-benzyloxy-11-hydroxy-5-methoxy-4-oxo-10-(2', 2', 2'-trichloroethoxy)carbonyl-amino 1, 10, 11, 11a-tetrahydro-  
25 5H-pyrrolo-[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (171)

A solution of DMSO (4.45 g, 4.04 mL, 56.9 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (25 mL) was added dropwise, over 5 minutes, to a solution of oxalyl chloride (3.58 g, 49.9 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (14 mL) at -60°C under a nitrogen atmosphere  
30 and the reaction mixture allowed to stir for a further 15 minutes. A solution of the substrate 170 (10.93 g, 20.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (25 mL) was added dropwise over 30 minutes to the reaction mixture, which was then allowed to stir for 30 minutes at -60°C. Finally, neat triethylamine  
35 (11.15 g, 232.9 mmol) was added dropwise over 30 minutes and

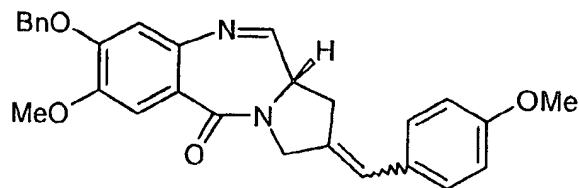
the reaction mixture allowed to stir at -60°C for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature, diluted with water (150 mL) and the organic phase washed with dilute HCl (1N, 100 mL), water (100 mL) and brine (100 mL).

5 The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford the crude product which was subjected to column chromatography (ethyl acetate/40-60 petroleum ether, 50:50). Removal of excess eluent afforded the product **171** (9.66 g, 89 % yield). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  
10 δ 7.45-7.33 (m, 5H); 7.27 (s, 1H); 6.95 (s, 1H); 5.76 (d, J = 9.9 Hz, 1H); 5.52- 5.00 (m, 3H), 4.33 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H); 4.30 (d, J = 19.2 Hz, 1H); 4.00-3.70 (m, 5H); 2.98 (dd, J = 20.0, 10.4 Hz, 1H); 2.94 (d, J = 20.0 Hz, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz) δ 207.7, 167.5, 154.5, 152.6, 150.8, 149.6, 135.8,  
15 128.9-127.3, 124.0, 114.5, 110.8, 95.0, 86.6, 75.0, 71.1, 56.8, 56.2, 52.6, 40.2.

**(11aS)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxy-4-oxo-1,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (172)**

Cadmium/lead couple (1.15 g) was added to a solution of  
20 cyclized ketone (1 g, 1.84 mmol) in THF (5 mL) and aqueous ammonium acetate (1N, 15 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 90 minutes and then filtered through celite. The celite pad was washed with ethyl acetate (2 x 25 mL) and the organic layer separated. The organic layer was  
25 washed with brine (50 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent followed by column chromatography afforded the pyrrolobenzodiazepine **172** (0.324 g, 0.93 mmol). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.75 (d, J = 4.4 Hz, 1H); 7.51 (s, 1H); 7.46-7.27 (m, 5H); 5.23 (d, J = 12.3 Hz, 1H); 5.17 (d, J = 12.3 Hz, 1H), 4.24-4.40 (m, 3H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.12 (dd, J =  
30 19.6, 8.8 Hz, 1H); 2.99 (dd, J = 5.0 Hz, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz) δ 206.7, 165.5, 161.4, 151.1, 148.5, 140.5, 136.0, 128.7-127.1, 118.9, 111.7, 111.3, 70.9, 56.4, 53.4, 51.0, 40.0.

Example 2(g) : Synthesis of (11aS)-8-Benzyloxy-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxybenzylidene-1,2,3,11a,-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (185) (see Figure 14)



5 (2*S*)-*N*-[(2-allyloxycarbonylamino)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxy]-2-(*tert* butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl)-4-methylidenepyrrolidine (182)

The Wittig reagent, 4-methoxybenzylphosphonium bromide (3.686 g, 0.88 mmol) was added portionwise to a suspension of sodium hydride (352 mg of a 60% dispersion, 8.80 mmol) in anhydrous toluene (25 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and then heated at reflux for 30 minutes. The colour of the reaction mixture darkened progressively from yellow through to orange. At this stage a solution of the ketone (6 - see Example 1a) (0.5 g, 0.88 mmol) in dry toluene (25 mL) was added dropwise to the reaction mixture at reflux. After 10 minutes TLC (50% ethyl acetate, 50% 40 - 60° petroleum ether) revealed the complete consumption of ketone. Excess toluene was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to yield a brown residue, which was partitioned between ethyl acetate (100 mL) and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate (100 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (100 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate) removal of excess solvent by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure gave a dark oil, which was subjected to flash chromatography on silica gel (20% ethyl acetate, 70% 40-60° petroleum ether). Removal of excess eluent afforded the product (182) as an oil which solidified on standing (420 mg, 0.62 mmol, 71%).  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -7.48^\circ$  ( $c = 1.002$  CHCl<sub>3</sub>). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) *cis/trans* mixture, rotamers  $\delta$  8.90 (bs, 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H), 7.76-7.65 (m, 2H), 7.55 (m, 7H), 6.9 (s, 1H), 6.4) and 6.30 (2 x bs, 1H), 6.02-5.88 (m, 1H), 5.40-5.17 (s, 4H),

4.64-4.59 (m, 2H), 3.91-3.70 (m, 9H), 3.00-2.95 (m, 2H). HRMS (FAB) 673 (M+1). Anal. Calcd for  $C_{38}H_{48}N_2O_7Si$ : C, 67.83; H, 7.19; N, 4.16. Found C, 67.64; H, 7.33; N, 4.03.

5 **(2S)-N-[(2-allyloxycarbonylamino)-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxy]-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-(4-methoxybenzylidene)pyrrolidine (183)**

A solution of TBAF in THF (1.21 mL, 1 M solution, 1.21 mmol) was added to a solution of **182** (0.65 g, 0.97 mmol) in THF (15 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stir overnight. Excess THF was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (100 mL) and saturated ammonium chloride (1 mL). The organic phase was washed with brine (100 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Excess solvent as evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel, 50% ethyl acetate and 50% 40-60° petroleum ether). Removal of excess eluent by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the compound **183** (0.9 g, 1.61 mmol, 65%).  $^1H$  NMR (270 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ ) cis/trans mixture  $\delta$  8.55 (bs, 1H), 7.50-7.10 (m, 8H), 6.80-6.90 (m, 3H), 6.40 and 6.29 (2 x bs, 1H), 6.02-5.88 (m, 1H), 5.40-5.10 (m, 4H), 4.55-4.70 (m, 2H), 4.50-4.30 (m, 1), 3.95-3.80 (m, 8H), 3.10-3.90 (m, 1H), 3.50-3.70 (m, 1H). HRMS (FAB) Calcd for  $C_{32}H_{35}N_2O_7$ , (M+H) 559.2444; Found 559.2462.

25 **(11S, 11aS)-10-allyloxycarbonyl-8-benzyloxy-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxybenzylidene)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (184)**

A solution of DMSO (0.41 mL, 5.80 mmol) in dry DCM (50 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (1.45 mL of a 2M solution, 2.90 mmol) at -40°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. After 45 minutes stirring at -45°C, a solution of **183** (0.9 g, 1.61 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) was added dropwise to the mixture over 45 minutes. After stirring at -45°C for 45 minutes the reaction mixture was treated dropwise with a solution of TEA (0.94 mL, 6.76 mmol) in DCM (20 mL) over 30 minutes. After a stirring at

- 45°C for a further 40 minutes the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and then diluted with DCM (30 mL). The diluted reaction mixture was washed with dilute hydrochloric acid (1 N, 300 mL), water (150 mL), brine (150 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of excess solvent afforded the crude product, which was subjected to column chromatography (silica gel, 50% ethyl acetate and 50% 40-60° petroleum ether). Removal of excess eluent afforded the product **184** as an oil (0.62 g, 1.11 mmol, 69%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) cis/trans mix δ 7.50-7.10 (m, 8H), 6.90-6.85 (m, 2H), 6.74 (s, 1H), 6.50 and 6.45 (2 x bs, 1H), 6.70-5.00 (m, 6H), 4.70-4.20 (m, 4H), 3.98 (s, 3H), 3.90-3.70 (m, 4H), 3.10-2.80 (m, 2H). HRMS (FAB) Calcd for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>33</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub> (M+H) 557.2288; Found 559.2277.

**(11aS)-8-Benzyloxy-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxybenzylidene-1,2,3,11a,-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (185)**

Triphenylphosphine, pyrrolidine and palladium tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) were added sequentially to a stirred solution of substrate in dry DCM. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere for 2 h, at which time TLC (50% ethyl acetate and 50% 40-60° petroleum ether) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness and the resulting residue subjected to gravity column chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution: 30% ethyl acetate, 70% 40-60° petroleum ether to 70% ethyl acetate, 30% 40-60° petroleum ether). Removal of excess eluent afforded the PBD (**185**) as a yellow glass that was reprecipitated from ethyl acetate with 40-60° petroleum ether.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) cis/trans mix δ 7.69 (d, 1H, J = 4.39 Hz), 7.52 (s, 1H), 7.46-7.30 (m, 5H), 7.20-7.16 (m, 2H), 6.92-6.88 (m, 2H), 6.84 (s, 1H), 6.53 (bs, 1H), 5.20-5.17 (m, 2H), 4.52 (m, 2H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.90-3.75 (m, 4H), 3.34-3.26 (m, 1H), 3.12-3.00 (m, 1H).

Example 3 : Synthesis of Compounds of formula IIIOverview of Synthesis

The Biaryl PBDs **136**, **138** and **140** were obtained by removal of the Troc protecting group from the protected carbinolamines **135**, **137** and **139**. For compounds **136** and **138** the deprotection method of Dong *et al*, was employed (Cd/Pb, ammonium acetate buffer), however, this approach could not be applied to the preparation of **140** as this molecule contained a nitro group sensitive to the Cd/Pb couple. In this case a novel deprotection procedure involving the use of tetrabutyl ammonium fluoride was used. The protected biaryl carbinolamines were prepared by the Suzuki reaction, the common 7-iodo substituted protected carbinolamine **134** was exposed to the appropriate boronic acid in the presence of a palladium catalyst. This reaction is of wide scope as over 70 boronic acids are commercially available. The iodo substituted protected carbinolamine **134** was furnished by Swern oxidation of the primary alcohol **133**. The Swern procedure was particularly effective in this case but other oxidizing agents such as the Dess-Martin reagent, TPAP or pyridine sulphur trioxide complex and DMSO could also be employed. The primary alcohol **133** was afforded by coupling commercially available pyrrolidinemethanol to the Troc protected anthranilic acid chloride obtained by **132** by treatment with oxalyl chloride. The Troc protected acid was in turn prepared by exposing the anthranilic acid **131** to 2,2,2-trichloroethyl chloroformate. Other protecting groups can be used in place of Troc such as Nvoc, Teoc and Fmoc but care must be taken in choosing a protecting group as some groups such as Boc spontaneously form the isatoic anhydride when exposed to oxalyl chloride prior to the coupling step.

The 9-methoxy PBD (**101**) was prepared in an analogous fashion demonstrating the versatility of the approach.

The 8-amino PBD (**151**) was prepared by the removal of a Troc protecting group from the amino substituted protected carbinolamine **150**. The free amine was obtained by removal of an Fmoc protecting group under standard conditions

5 (piperidine/DMF) from the protected carbinolamine **149**. Swern oxidation of the primary alcohol **148** furnished **149** in good yield, the substrate for oxidation reaction was prepared by Fmoc protection of the aniline **147**. Reduction of the nitro compound **146**, with tin chloride furnished the aniline,

10 hydrogenation could not be employed to reduce the nitro group as the Troc system does not withstand these conditions. The nitro compound **146** was prepared by the coupling of the acid chloride derived from **145** with pyrrolidinemethanol in the presence of base. Finally, the protected anthranilic acid **145**

15 was furnished by exposing the commercially available 4 nitro anthranilic acid **144** to Troc Chloroformate.

The 8-benzyloxy-7,9-dimethoxy PBD (**143**, UP2022) was prepared by a slightly different approach which does not involve the use of anthranilic acid starting materials but proceeds

20 through 2-nitrobenzoic acid intermediates. The PBD was obtained from the protected carbinolamine **142** by removal of the Troc protecting group under the usual conditions. The protected carbinolamine was furnished by Swern oxidation of primary alcohol **141** which in turn was prepared by selective

25 protection of the amino alcohol **126** as the Troc carbamate by exposure to Troc Chloroformate in the presence of pyridine. The amino alcohol was obtained by reduction of the nitro compound **125** with Raney Nickel and hydrazine (again

hydrogenation could not be employed due to the presence of a

30 benzyl group). The nitro alcohol **125** was prepared by coupling pyrrolidine methanol to the requisite 2-nitrobenzoic acid **124**. This nitro benzoic acid was not commercially available and was prepared in four steps from the available syringic acid **87**. Nitration of the ester **122** was proceeded smoothly using Copper

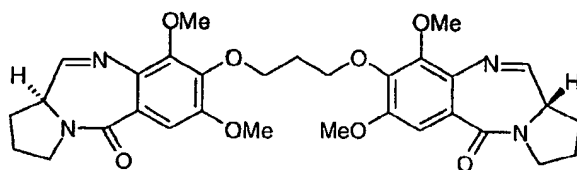
35 nitrate in acetic anhydride. The ester **122** was obtained by standard methods.

The PBDs **96**, **113**, **120** and **194** were obtained in an identical fashion from the 2-nitrobenzoic acids **19**, **108**, **115** and **186**.

5 The dimer **90** was prepared in an analogous fashion from the core nitro compound **85**; the core was assembled by joining together two units of the phenol **84** via Mitsunobu etherification. The phenol **84** was derived from syringic acid **83** in a three step synthesis, the crucial step being the nitration of **82** which was performed with 70% nitric acid.

10 The phenolic PBD **130** was prepared by an analogous route to that used for the synthesis of the PBD **143**, however the requirement to incorporate a phenolic group prompted the use of a different protecting group, Teoc. The free PBD was obtained by treating the Teoc protected carbinolamine **129** with TBAF in warm acetonitrile. The phenol **129** was unmasked by the  
15 hydrogenolysis of the benzyloxy moiety of **128** in the presence of the Teoc protecting group (Troc would not survive under these conditions). The benzyloxy compound **128** was obtained by Swern oxidation of the primary alcohol **127** which was prepared by treating the amino alcohol **126** with Teoc chloroformate in  
20 the presence of base.

**Example 3(a) : Synthesis of the C9/C9'-Dimethoxy PBD Dimer (90, DRH-165) (see Figure 15)**





into water (100 mL) and stirred thoroughly to ensure hydrolysis of any excess anhydride. Crude *O*-Acetyl-syringic acid was recrystallized from water to afford the product as an off-white powder (11.2 g, 46.7 mmol).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.36 (s, 2H), 5.94 (br s, 1H), 3.87 (s, 6H), 2.35 (s, 3H).  
5 HRMS calcd for 240.0634, found 240.0637

**4-Acetoxy-3,5-dimethoxy-2-nitrobenzoic acid (83)**

Fuming nitric acid (5.2 mL) was added, carefully, to a solution of *o*-acetylsyringic acid **82** (11.1 g, 46.2 mmol) in acetic anhydride (33 g, mmol) at 5°C and the reaction mixture  
10 was then allowed to stir for 3 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured over ice (300 mL) and the yellow precipitate was collected by filtration, washed with water (3 x 100 mL) and dried *in vacuo* to afford the product as a pale  
15 yellow solid (12.4 g).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.37 (s, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 2.39 (s, 3H).

**Methyl 3,5-dimethoxy-4-hydroxy-2-nitrobenzoate (84)**

A catalytic amount of DMF (5 drops) was added to a solution of oxalyl chloride (6.3 g, 49.8 mmol) and *o*-nitrobenzoic acid **83**  
20 (12.4 g, 45.2 mmol) in anhydrous THF (100 mL) and the reaction mixture allowed to stir at room temperature for 16 h. The resulting acid chloride was quenched dropwise with anhydrous methanol (100 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was treated  
25 with potassium carbonate and allowed to stir at room temperature for 3 h. Excess solvent was removed by rotary evaporation at reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in water. The aqueous solution was acidified to pH 8 and the  
30 resulting white precipitate was collected by filtration, washed with water (2 x 100 mL) and dried to afford the product as an off-white solid (10.6 g, 83%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  10.07 (br s, 1H), 7.26 (s, 1H), 3.97 (s, 3H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.85 (s, 3H).

**1', 3'-Bis(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethoxy-5-nitrophenoxy)propane (85)**

Diethylazidodicarboxylate (7.19 g, 41.3 mmol) was added dropwise over 0.5 hours to a cooled, stirred solution of the phenol **84** (10.61 g, 41.3 mmol) and TPP (16.24 g, 61.9 mmol) in anhydrous THF (100 mL), and allowed to stir for 1 h. A solution of 1,3-propanediol (1.57g, 20.6 mmol) in THF (30 mL) was added dropwise and the reaction mixture allowed to stir for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then treated with 1N aqueous NaOH (200 mL) and heated at reflux for 3 h. Excess solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford an aqueous suspension which was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 300 mL). The aqueous extract was acidified with concentrated HCl and the precipitate collected by vacuum filtration. The precipitate was suspended in water (500 mL) and after stirring for 10 minutes, the suspension was filtered to afford the product as an orange solid (6.11 g, 60%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.32 (s, 2H), 4.36 (t, 4H), 3.92 (s, 6H), 3.90 (s, 6H), 2.20 (t, 2H).

**(2S)-1,1'-[[[(propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-nitro-3,5-dimethoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[2-(hydroxymethylpyrrolidine)] (86)**

A catalytic amount of DMF (3 drops) was added to a solution of the acid **85** (6.1g, 12.4 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (2.37 mL, 3.45 g, 27.2 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (60 mL) and the reaction mixture allowed to stir at room temperature for 16 h. The resulting acid chloride was added dropwise over 0.5 hours to a stirred solution of TEA (6.26 g, 61.8 mmol) and pyrrolidinemethanol (2.75 g, 27.2 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (60 mL) at  $-10^\circ\text{C}$ . The reaction mixture was then allowed to stir at room temperature for 6 h. The reaction mixture was washed with 1N HCl (3 x 100 mL), water (3 x 100 mL), saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (3 x 100 mL), brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . Removal of excess solvent by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the product as a yellow glass (8.25 g, 11.9 mmol).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  6.66 (s, 2H), 4.32-4.26 (m, 6H), 3.98 (s, 6H), 3.90 (s, 6H), 3.86-3.67 (m, 4H), 3.41-3.27

(m, 4H), 2.23-2.12 (m, 2H), 2.11-1.72 (m, 8H).

**(2S)-1,1'-[[[(propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-amino-3,5-dimethoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[2-(hydroxymethylpyrrolidine)] (87)**

Hydrazine (3.45 g, 107.9 mmol) was added dropwise to a  
5 solution of **86** (1g, 1.45 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (40 mL)  
heated at reflux over Raney nickel (5 g, slurry). Heating was  
continued for a further 3 hours after which time the reaction  
mixture was allowed to cool and filtered through celite to  
remove excess Raney nickel. The filtrate was evaporated to  
10 dryness and dissolved in DCM (200 mL) and the organic solution  
washed with water (2 x 100 mL), brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried  
over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of excess solvent in  
vacuo afforded the product as a pink glass (5.59 g, 8.9 mmol,  
98%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 6.54 (s, 2H), 4.35 (br s, 2H),  
15 4.29 (t, 4H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 3.83-3.46 (m, 14H), 2.20-2.13 (m,  
2H), 1.97-1.66 (m, 8H).

**(2S)-1,1'-[[[(propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[2-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)amino-3,5-methoxy-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[2-(hydroxymethylpyrrolidine)] (88)**

20 A solution of 2,2,2-trichloroethylchloroformate (1.45 g, 6.86  
mmol, 1.9 eq) in dry DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise over the  
space of 0.5 hours to a solution of **87** (2.28 g, 3.6 mmol) and  
pyridine (1.14 g, 14.4 mmol, 4 eq) in dry DCM (50 mL) and  
allowed to stir for 16 hours at room temperature. The  
25 reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (200 mL) and washed with  
1N HCl (3 x 200 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 200 mL), brine (2 x 300 mL) and  
dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Purification by flash  
chromatography (silica gel, EtOAc) afforded the product as a  
pale yellow glass (1.43 g). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) Rotamers δ  
30 9.21 and 8.40 (2 x br s, 2H), 6.49 and 6.54 (2 x s, 2H), 5.08-  
3.59 (m, 26H), 3.33-3.30 (m, 4H), 2.04-1.69 (m, 10H).

1,1'-[[Propane-1,3-diyl]dioxyl]bis[(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-11-hydroxy-7,9-dimethoxy-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one. (89)

- 5 A solution of dry DMSO (14.9 mmol, 1.17g, 1.06 mL) in dry DCM (5 mL) was added dropwise over 20 minutes to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride in DCM (7.38 mmol, 3.69 mL of a 2N solution in DCM) under a nitrogen atmosphere at -45°C. After stirring for an additional 15 minutes, a solution of **88**
- 10 (2.58 g, 2.63 mmol) in dry DCM (5m L) was added dropwise over 45 minutes at -45°C and stirred for 45 minutes at -45°C. TEA (2.12 g, 21.0 mmol) was added dropwise over 30 minutes and stirred for a further 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature, and diluted with water
- 15 (100 mL). The organic layer was washed with 1N HCl (3 x 100 mL), water (3 x 100 mL), brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* afforded the product as a yellow glass (0.73 g). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.06 (s, 2H), 5.61 (dd, 2H, *J* = 3.39, 9.9 Hz), 4.74 (d, 2H, *J* = 11.72 Hz), 4.62 (d, 2H, *J* = 11.91 Hz), 4.29-4.21 (m, 6H), 3.97-3.46 (m, 16H), 2.28-2.01 (m, 10H).
- 20

#### Preparation of 10% Cd/Pb couple

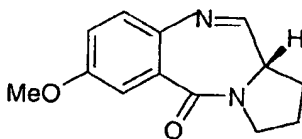
- Yellow lead oxide (litharge, 1.8 g, 4.9 mmol) was dissolved in warm 50% aq. AcOH (50 mL) and the solution was slowly added to
- 25 a vigorously stirred suspension of Cd dust (Aldrich, 100 mesh, 5.46 g, 49 mmol) in deionised water (100 mL). The Cd darkened as Pb deposited on its surface, and formed clumps that were gently broken up with a glass rod. The dark non-pyrophoric Cd/Pb couple was filtered, washed with water, acetone, crushed
- 30 and dried prior to storage and use.

1,1'-[[Propane-1,3-diyl]dioxyl]bis[(11*aS*)-7,9-dimethoxy-1,2,3,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-on . (90)

Cadmium/lead couple (3.8 mmol Cd, 0.47 g of Cd\Pb couple) was

added to a vigorously stirred solution of **89** (0.76 g, 0.8 mmol) in THF (10 mL) and 1N NH<sub>4</sub>OAc (10 mL) and stirring continued for 2.5 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (150 mL) and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* afforded the product as a yellow glass (0.32 g, 0.55 mmol, 71%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) mixture of C11/C11'R/S carbinolamines  $\delta$  7.08 (s, 2H), 5.53 (br s, 2H), 5.38 (br s, 2H), 4.90 (d, 2H, *J* = 9 Hz), 4.79 (d, 2H, *J* = 9 Hz), 4.38-3.54 (m, 22H), 2.27-1.79 (m, 10H). MS (FAB) *m/e* (relative intensity) 594 (M+2, 27%), 593 (M+1, 69%)

**Example 3(b) : Synthesis of the C7-Methoxy PBD (96, DRH-271)**  
**(see Figure 16)**



**N-(3-Methoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)pyrrolidin-2-methanol (92)**

A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a stirred solution of 3-methoxy-2-nitro-benzoic acid **91** (5.01 g, 25.4 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (3.54 g, 27.9 mmol) in dry CHCl<sub>3</sub> (50 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight, before being used directly in the preparation of **92**. A solution of the acid chloride in anhydrous CHCl<sub>3</sub> (50 mL) was added dropwise over 1 hour to a vigorously stirred solution of pyrrolidinemethanol (2.57 g, 25.4 mmol) and TEA (6.42 g, 63.6 mmol) in anhydrous CHCl<sub>3</sub> (50 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C and allowed to stir overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with 1N HCl (1 x 100 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 100 mL) and brine (3 x 100 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporation of the solvent afforded a brown oil (6.37 g, 22.7 mmol, 89%).

**N-(2-Amino-3-Methoxybenzoyl)pyrrolidin-2-methanol (93)**

Hydrazine hydrate (4.37 g, 136.4 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of **92** (6.37 g, 22.7 mmol) in gently refluxing methanol (100 mL) over Raney nickel (2.4 g, slurry). The  
5 resulting vigorous evolution of hydrogen gas subsided after approximately 10 minutes and the reaction was deemed to be complete by TLC after 2 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the solvent evaporated. Distilled water (100 mL) was added to the residue, and the aqueous mixture was  
10 extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL) and washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 100 mL) and brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of the solvent afforded a brown glass (5.49 g, 21.8 mmol) as a single spot by TLC.

**N-(3-Methoxy-2-((2',2',2'-****15 trichloroethoxy)carbonylaminobenzoyl)pyrrolidin-2-methanol (94)**

A solution of 2,2,2-trichloroethyl chloroformate (4.61 g, 21.8 mmol) in distilled dichloromethane (50 mL) was added dropwise over 0.5 hours to a stirred solution of the substrate, **93**  
20 (5.46 g, 21.8 mmol) and anhydrous pyridine (3.44 g, 43.5 mmol) in distilled dichloromethane (100 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 2.5 hours at which time TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with anhydrous DCM (100 mL) and washed with 1N HCl (2  
25 x 200 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (200 mL), brine (200 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of the solvent afforded a brown oil which was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with EtOAc to afford the product as a yellow solid (6.14 g, 14.4 mmol); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.75-2.25 (m, 4H), 3.4-  
30 3.75 (m, 2H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 3.85-4.2 (m, 2H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.73-4.86 (m, 2H), 6.86-6.97 (m, 2H), 7.85 (br d, 1H, J = 9Hz); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 169.9, 155.6, 152.4, 128.2, 127.8, 123.6, 116.0, 113.0, 95.4, 74.4, 65.9, 60.9, 55.7, 51.0, 28.3, 24.9.

(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxy)carbonyl-7-methoxy-11-hydroxy-1,2,3,10,11,-11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (95)

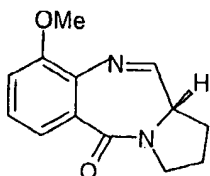
5 Anhydrous DMSO (3.14 g, 40.2 mmol) in dry DCM (25 mL) was added dropwise over 5 minutes to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (2.53 g, 9.96 mL of a 2 N solution in DCM) under a nitrogen atmosphere at -50°C. After stirring for 5 minutes, the substrate **94** (6.03 g, 14.2 mmol) in dry DCM (25 mL) was added dropwise over 45 minutes to the reaction mixture, which 10 was then allowed to stir for a further 45 minutes at -50°C after the addition of the substrate. Dry TEA (5.72 g, 56.64 mmol) was added dropwise to the mixture over 0.5 hours and the reaction mixture allowed to stir for a further 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was left to warm to room temperature and 15 diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL). The organic phase was washed with 1N HCl (2 x 200 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 200 mL), brine (2 x 200 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was evaporated to afford a yellow oil (6.68 g). The oil was subjected to flash chromatography with EtOAc as eluent to afford the product as a 20 yellow solid (5.87 g, 13.9 mmol); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.99-2.14 (m, 4H), 3.45-3.77 (m, 2H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 4.19 (br s, 1H), 4.28 (d, 1H, *J* = 11.91 Hz), 5.14 (d, 1H, *J* = 11.91 Hz), 5.66 (d, 1H, *J* = 9.71 Hz), 6.97-7.02 (m, 1H), 7.23-7.27 (m, 2H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 166.8, 159.1, 154.7, 134.3, 25 131.5, 129.9, 126.6, 118.106, 112.5, 112.3, 95.0, 86.0, 75.2, 75.1, 59.8, 55.7, 46.7, 46.4, 28.7, 23.0, 21.0, 14.2.

7-methoxy-1,2,3,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (96)

30 10% Cd/Pb couple (2.50 g, 20 mmol Cd) was added to a rapidly stirring solution of **95** (1.71 g, 4.03 mmol) in a mixture of THF (30 mL) and 1N NH<sub>4</sub>OAc (30 mL). Upon addition, the solution turned cloudy and after 2 hours TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (150 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solids were 35 filtered and rinsed with EtOAc (50 mL). Removal of excess

solvent by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the product as a yellow solid (0.84 g, 3.6 mmol, 90%)

**Example 3(c) : Synthesis of the C7-Methoxy PBD (101, AG/140) (see Figure 17)**



5     **3-methoxy-2-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoic acid (98)**

2-amino-3-methoxybenzoic acid **97** (1 g, 6.0 mmol) and pyridine (0.97 mL, 12.0 mmol) were dissolved in dry dichloromethane (30 mL). The resulting mixture was cooled and Troc-Cl (0.9 mL, 6.6 mmol) was added drop wise. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature, then washed with HCl (1N, 50 mL), water (50 mL) and brine (50 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to yield 1.42 g of crude product, which was used in the next step without further purification.

**N-(3-methoxy-2-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoyl)-pyrrolidine-2-methanol (99)**

20     Oxalyl chloride (0.57 mL, 6.58 mmol) together with 2 drops of dry DMF was added to a solution of the crude product obtained from the previous reaction in dry dichloromethane (20 mL). After initial strong effervescence, the mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature overnight. The resulting acid chloride was added drop wise, over 30 minutes to a solution  
25     of 2S-(+)-pyrrolidinemethanol (0.66 g, 6.58 mmol) and TEA (2.1 mL, 14.95 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (20 mL) at -16°C. Once coupling was complete the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL), and washed with 1N HCl (2 x 25 mL), satd. aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (2 x 25 mL), water (25 mL) and brine (25



mL). The organic layer was then dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and evaporated to give a yellow oil. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (petroleum ether/ethyl acetate, 50/50) to afford 0.54 g, of a pale yellow oil:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.6 - 1.8 (m, 1H); 1.81 - 2.0 (m, 2H); 2.02 - 2.21 (m, 1H); 3.4 (m, 1H); 3.6 (m, 2H); 3.86 (m, 4H); 4.22 (dd,  $J = 5.1$ ,  $J = 12.3$  Hz, 1H); 4.72 (d,  $J = 12$  Hz, 1H); 4.79 (d,  $J = 12$  Hz, 1H); 4.86 (m, 1H); 6.91 (s, 1H); 6.94 (s, 1H); 7.2 (dd,  $J = 7.5$ ,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 1H); 7.36 (bs, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  24.6; 28.8; 50.7; 55.9; 61.3; 66.5; 74.8; 75.3; 111.7; 111.9; 119.1; 122.3; 126.3; 132.9; 152.7; 170.3 IR (Nujol):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3410, 2969, 1738, 1613, 1583, 1514, 1429, 1268, 1218, 1109, 1079, 1049, 809, 759. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 425 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 10), 394 (20), 323 (30), 276 (35), 245 (100), 176 (100), 149 (45), 120 (40), 106 (20), 77 (30), 70 (100). HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{19}\text{Cl}_3\text{N}_3\text{O}_3$ : 424.0357. Found: 424.0359.  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -45.1^\circ$  ( $c = 0.63$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ).

**(11S,11aS)-11-hydroxy-9-methoxy-10-N-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,-3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo [2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepin-5-one (100)**

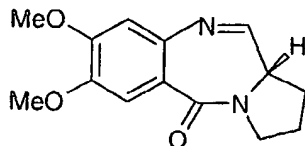
A solution of DMSO (0.46 mL, 6.63 mmol) in of dry dichloromethane (10 mL) was added drop wise over 30 minutes to a solution oxalyl chloride (3.30 mmol,) in dry dichloromethane (11.65 mL) at  $-40^\circ\text{C}$ . The mixture was allowed to stir for a further 30 minutes, a solution of **99** (1 g, 2.37 mmol) in dichloromethane (15 mL) was then added drop wise over 1 hour. Following the end of addition the mixture was allowed to stir at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$  for 60 minutes, then a solution of TEA (1.31 mL) in dichloromethane (6 mL) was added drop wise and the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with water (50 mL), 1N HCl (2 x 25 mL), satd. aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (2 x 25 mL), and brine (50 mL). The organic solution was dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and evaporated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel EtOAc/petroleum ether 1/1) to give a colourless oil (0.64 g, 63%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.01 - 2.15 (m, 4H); 3.43 - 3.58 (m, 2H); 3.73 (m, 2H); 3.83

(s, 3H); 4.35 (d,  $J = 12$ , 1H); 4.98 (d,  $J = 12$ , 1H); 5.66 (dd,  $J = 3.8$ ,  $J = 9.6$  Hz, 1H); 7.02 (dd,  $J = 2.2$ ,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 1H); 7.35 (m, 2H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  23.0; 28.6; 46.2; 56.1; 59.9; 75.3; 86.2; 94.8; 113.4; 120.2; 123.1; 129.4; 134.9; 154.7; 155.4; 166.7. IR (Nujol):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3291, 2924, 1724, 1616, 1580, 1463, 1318, 1278, 1075, 945, 812, 739. MS:  $m/e$  (relative intensity) 422 ( $M-1$ , 40), 387 (3), 275 (10), 245 (15), 217 (10), 176 (100), 150 (8), 120 (6), 70 (95). HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{17}\text{Cl}_3\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ : 422.0202. Found: 422.0203.  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +136.5^\circ$  ( $c = 0.19$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ).

**(11aS)-9-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (101)**

Finely ground Cd/Pb couple (1.02 g). was added in small portions to a stirred solution of **100** (0.64 g, 1.51 mmol) in THF (10 mL) and 1M  $\text{NH}_4\text{OAc}$  (10 mL). The reaction was followed by TLC (EtOAc), when no more starting material was observed, the mixture was poured into ethyl acetate (200 mL). The organic phase was dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and evaporated to yield the product as a pale yellow oil (0.28 g, 80%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.15 (m, 4H); 3.52 (m, 2H); 3.87 (s, 3H); 5.15 (m, 1H); 6.8 - 7.2 (m, 3H); 7.8 (d,  $J = 4.7$  Hz, 1H, imine H11). IR (Nujol):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3373, 2975, 1621, 1576, 1440, 1419, 1250, 1075, 750. MS:  $m/e$  (relative intensity) 230 ( $M^+$ , 100), 215 (45), 201 (20), 187 (5), 160 (5), 146 (4), 133 (20), 105 (10), 76 (25), 70 (45), 63 (3), 51 (3). HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{14}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$ : 230.1055. Found: 230.1055.  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +455.3^\circ$  ( $c = 0.6$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ).

**Example 3(d) : Synthesis of the 7,8-Dimethoxy PBD (106, AG/105)(see Figure 18)**



**4,5-dimethoxy-2-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoic acid (103)**

- 5 A solution of Troc-Cl (0.76 ml, 5.56 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (10 mL) was added dropwise to 2-amino-4,5-dimethoxybenzoic acid **102** (1 g, 5.1mmol) and pyridine (0.82 ml, 10.1 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (20 ml) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight at room
- 10 temperature and then washed with dilute HCl (1N, 2 x 25 ml), water (2 x 25 ml) and brine (20 ml). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to yield of crude product (1.6 g), which was used in the next step without further purification.
- 15 **N-(4,5-dimethoxy-2'-(2'',2'',2''-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoyl)-pyrrolidine-2-methanol (104)**
- Oxalyl chloride (0.38 mL, 4.33 mmol) was added to the crude Troc-protected anthranilic acid, prepared in the previous
- 20 reaction, together with 2 drops of dry DMF in dry dichloromethane (30 mL). After initial strong effervescence, the mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature overnight. The resulting acid chloride was added dropwise, over 30 minutes, to a solution of 2S-(+)-pyrrolidinemethanol (0.44 g, 4.33 mmol) and TEA (1.37 ml, 9.85 mmol) of dry dichloromethane
- 25 (15 mL) at -16°C. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL), and washed with dilute HCl (1N, 2 x 30 mL), satd. aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (2 x 30 mL), water (30 mL) and brine (30 mL). The organic layer was then dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and
- 30 evaporated to give a yellow oil. The crude product was

purified by flash chromatography (petroleum ether/ethyl acetate = 50/50) to yield the product (1.2 g, 70%) as a pale yellow oil:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.75 (m, 2H); 1.92 (m, 1H); 2.17 (m, 1H); 3.53 (m, 2H); 3.72 (m, 1H); 3.86 (s, 3H); 3.93 (s, 3H); 4.19 (m, 1H); 4.43 (m, 1H); 4.77 (d,  $J = 12$  Hz, 1H); 4.85 (d,  $J = 12$  Hz, 1H); 6.85 (s, 1H); 7.69 (s, 1H); 9.08 (bs, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  25.1; 28.2; 51.4; 56.0; 56.4; 60.8; 65.9; 74.4; 95.3; 104.7; 110.7; 116.3; 130.8; 144.4; 151.0; 152.1; 170.4. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 454 (M-1, 5), 356 (3), 306 (10), 275 (5), 206 (100), 179 (15), 150 (10), 136 (3), 70 (45). HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{21}\text{Cl}_3\text{N}_2\text{O}_6$ : 454.0465. Found: 454.0464.  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -72.2^\circ$  ( $c = 0.18$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ).

**(11S,11aS)-7,8-dimethoxy-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo [2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepin-5-one (105)**

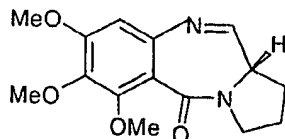
A solution of DMSO (0.9 mL, 12.9 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (15 mL) was added dropwise over 30 minutes to a solution of oxalyl chloride (6.4 mmol) of dry dichloromethane (15 mL) keeping the temperature below  $-40^\circ\text{C}$ . The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for further a 30 minutes at which point a solution of **104** (2.1 g, 4.61 mmol) in dichloromethane (35 mL) was added drop wise over 1 hour. After addition of the substrate the reaction mixture was allowed to stir at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$  for 60 minutes, and then treated with a solution of TEA (2.56 mL) in of dichloromethane (10 mL) were added drop wise and the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with water (75 mL), dilute HCl (1N, 75 mL), water (75 mL), brine (75 mL) dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and evaporated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (EtOAc/petroleum ether 40/60) to give a colourless oil (1.19 g, 57%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.04 (m, 2H); 2.11 (m, 2H); 3.47 - 3.59 (m, 2H); 3.68 - 3.75 (m, 1H); 3.91 (s, 3H); 3.94 (s, 3H); 4.21 (d,  $J = 12.1$  Hz, 1H); 4.43 (d,  $J = 4.76$  Hz, 1H); 5.27 (d,  $J = 12.1$  Hz, 1H); 5.65 - 5.7 (dd,  $J = 4.58$ ,  $J = 9.71$  Hz, 1H); 6.82 (s, 1H); 7.26 (s, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  23.1; 28.6; 46.4; 56.0; 56.1; 60.0; 74.9; 86.4; 95.1;

110.3; 112.7; 125.6; 148.6; 150.8; 154.5; 167.0. MS: m/e  
(relative intensity) 452 (M-1, 30), 424 (7), 354 (10), 276  
(25), 206 (100), 180 (10), 150 (10), 70 (100). HRMS  
Calculated for  $C_{17}H_{19}Cl_3N_2O_6$ : 452.0308. Found: 452.0309.  $[\alpha]_D^{25}$   
5 = + 104.7° (c = 0.27,  $CHCl_3$ ).

**(11aS)-7,8-dimethoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (106, AG/105)**

Finely ground Cd/Pb couple (3.12 g) was added portion wise to  
a solution of **105** (1 g, 2.2 mmol) THF (10 mL) and  $NH_4OAc$  (1M,  
10 mL). The reaction was followed by TLC (EtOAc), when no  
starting material was present, the mixture was poured into  
ethyl acetate (400 mL). The organic phase was dried over  
 $MgSO_4$  and evaporated to yield the crude product, which was  
purified by flash chromatography (EtOAc) to give of the pure  
15 compound as a pale yellow oil (0.45 g, 78%):  $^1H$  NMR (270 MHz,  
 $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  2.08 (m, 2H); 2.29 (m, 2H); 3.53 - 3.63 (m, 1H); 3.72  
(m, 1H); 3.79 - 3.85 (m, 1H); 3.93 (s, 3H); 3.96 (s, 3H); 6.82  
(s, 1H); 7.52 (s, 1H); 7.68 (d,  $J$  = 4.4, 1H).  $^{13}C$  NMR (67.8  
MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  24.2; 29.6; 46.7; 53.7; 56.0; 56.1; 109.4;  
20 111.2; 140.7; 147.5; 151.3; 162.5; 164.6. IR (Nujol):  $cm^{-1}$   
3000-2800, 1601, 1450, 1434, 1500, 1453, 1263, 1217, 1010,  
908, 735. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 260 (M+, 100), 245  
(50), 231 (25), 217 (10), 191 (20), 164 (25), 136 (20), 121  
(5), 93 (8), 70 (10). HRMS Calculated for  $C_{14}H_{16}N_2O_3$ :  
25 260.1160. Found: 260.1161.  $[\alpha]_D^{25}$  = + 1004.7° (c = 0.17,  
 $CHCl_3$ ).

**Example 3(e) : Synthesis of the 6,7,8-Trimethoxy PBD (113, DRH-NA7) (see Figure 19)**



**2,3,4-Trimethoxy-6-nitrobenzoic acid (108)**

2,3,4-trimethoxybenzoic acid **107** (25 g, 117.8 mmol) was added  
5 portionwise to a stirred solution of 70% nitric acid at 0°C  
for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was poured into cold  
water (1250 mL) and stirring was continued for 30 minutes.  
The reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 200 mL) and  
the combined organic layers were washed with brine (2 x 200  
10 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of excess  
solvent *in vacuo* afforded the product as a pure white  
crystalline solid (18.67 g, 60%): *R<sub>f</sub>* = 0.5 (silica, EtOAc); IR  
(*nu*<sub>jol</sub>) 2922, 1713, 1618, 1570, 1504, 1464, 1401, 1308, 1246,  
1168, 1111, 1028, 920, 852, 789, 773, 728, 689 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
15 (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.76 (1H, s), 4.0 (3H, s), 3.95 (3H, s),  
3.90 (3H, s); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 166.0, 153.2, 150.1,  
147.79, 139.6, 120.8, 103.6, 62.2, 61.1, 56.5; MS (EI) *m/z*  
258 (M+1), 240, 214.

**N-(2-Nitro-4,5,6-trimethoxybenzoyl)pyrrolidine-2-methanol  
20 (109)**

A catalytic quantity of DMF (2 drops) was added to a stirred  
solution of **108** (10 g, 38.9 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (5.87 g,  
46.2 mmol) in dry CHCl<sub>2</sub> (100 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere.  
The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight, and the  
25 product was used directly in the next stage of the reaction.  
The newly formed acid chloride was added dropwise to a stirred  
solution of pyrrolidinemethanol (3.92 g, 38.8 mmol) and  
anhydrous triethylamine (12.4 mL, 9.8 g, 97.0 mmol) in  
anhydrous DCM (50 mL) at 0°C under nitrogen. Once the  
30 addition was complete, the reaction mixture was left to warm

to room temperature and left to stir overnight. The reaction mixture was washed with 1N HCl (100 mL), water (100 mL), and brine (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and the solvent was removed *in vacuo* to afford **109** (12.1 g, 91%) as a pale yellow oil:  $R_f = 0.39$  (silica, EtOAc);  $[\alpha]_{D}^{21.9} +135^\circ$  ( $c = 0.1$ , DCM); IR (neat) 3400, 3105, 2947, 2878, 1652, 1568, 1538, 1455, 1348, 1250, 1195, 1115, 975, 922, 849, 822, 792, 758, 733, 646 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.59 (1H, s), 4.46 (2H, d,  $J = 2.93$  Hz), 4.07 (3H, s), 4.03 (3H, s), 4.01 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, t), 3.45-3.29 (2H, m), 2.24-2.17 (2H, m), 2.00-1.84 (2H, m); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, rotamers)  $\delta$  165.7, 165.1, 153.3, 149.2, 148.1, 138.8, 122.5, 104.1, 66.4, 65.5, 62.4, 62.3, 61.3, 56.6, 49.2, 49.0, 28.7 24.3; MS (EI)  $m/z$  341 (M+1), 324, 309, 293, 277, 264, 254.

**N-(2-Amino-4,5,6-trimethoxybenzoyl)pyrrolidine methanol (110)**

Hydrazine hydrate (5.67 g, 177.2 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of **109** (12.1 g, 35.47 mmol) in gently refluxing methanol (142 mL) over Raney nickel (3.45 g, slurry). The resulting vigorous evolution of hydrogen gas subsided after approximately 10 minutes and the reaction was deemed to be complete by TLC after 3 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the solvent evaporated. Distilled water (200 mL) was added to the residue, and the aqueous mixture was extracted with DCM (2 x 100 mL) and the combined organic phase washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 100 mL) and brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of the solvent afforded **110** (11.24 g) as a yellow oil.  $R_f = 0.14$  (silica, EtOAc);  $[\alpha]_{D}^{21.8} = +100^\circ$  ( $c = 0.1$ , DCM); IR (neat) cm<sup>-1</sup> 3355, 2940, 2879, 2843, 1614, 1498, 1463, 1428, 1410, 1365, 1339, 1240, 1199, 1123, 1078, 1039, 997, 915, 817, 731, 646; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  6.10 (1H, s), 4.37 (2H, d,  $J = 3.67$  Hz), 3.93 (3H, s), 3.88 (3H, s), 3.86 (3H, s), 3.67 (2H, t), 2.17-2.02 (2H, m), 1.87-1.82 (2H, m); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  168.8, 154.7, 150.9, 149.6, 140.6, 133.8, 95.8, 66.5, 61.8, 61.4, 61.3, 61.1, 49.2, 28.6, 24.4; MS (EI)  $m/z$  310 (M<sup>+</sup>), 294, 279,

229, 210, 194, 180, 149, 124, 102, 83, 70, 57.

**N-(2-[2',2',2'-Trichloroethoxycarbonylamino]-4,5,6-trimethoxybenzoyl)pyrrolidine-2-methanol (111)**

A stirred solution of **110** (11.24 g, 36.3 mmol) in DCM (150 mL) and pyridine (5.86 mL, 5.73 g, 72.5 mmol) was treated dropwise with 2,2,2-trichloroethyl chloroformate (5 mL, 7.61 g, 35.9 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C. One hour after the addition of 2,2,2-trichloroethyl chloroformate, the reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (100 mL) and washed with 1N HCl (100 mL), water (2 x 150 mL), brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to afford **111** (15.44 g, 88%) as a clear brown oil:  $R_f$  = 0.44 (silica, EtOAc); IR (neat) cm<sup>-1</sup> 3437, 2948, 1738, 1628, 1497, 1458, 1422, 1397, 1238, 1115, 1027, 1008, 823, 760, 624; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, DMSO)  $\delta$  6.82 (1H, s), 5.06 (2H, s), 4.04 (2H, d,  $J$  = 6.83 Hz), 3.85 (3H, s), 3.84 (3H, s), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.67 (2H, t), 2.00-1.97 (2H, m), 1.96-1.88 (2H, m) <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, DMSO)  $\delta$  164.2, 153.5, 149.6, 139.6, 129.4, 121.3, 96.2, 73.9, 61.4, 60.9, 58.7, 56.2, 47.9, 27.5, 23.7; HRMS (FAB) calcd for C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>23</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) 484.0571, found 484.0944.

**6,7,8-Trimethoxy-10-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (112)**

A solution of oxalyl chloride in DCM (22.3 mL of a 2N solution, 44.7 mmol) diluted with anhydrous DCM (42 mL) at -45°C was treated dropwise with a solution of anhydrous DMSO (6.39 mL, 90.2 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (16.24 mL) over a period of 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was stirred at -45°C for 15 minutes and treated with a solution of **111** (15.44 g, 31.7 mmol) in dry DCM (34.3 mL) and stirred at -45°C for 45 minutes. Triethylamine (17.7 mL, 127.1 mmol) was added dropwise to the reaction mixture over 0.5 h, and then allowed to stir for a further 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was

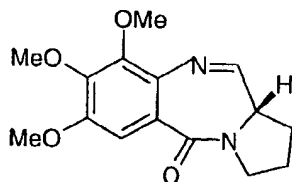


allowed to warm to room temperature and diluted with water (100 mL). The organic layer was washed with 1N HCl (200 mL), water (200 mL), brine (200 mL) and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). The reaction mixture was evaporated and purified by flash column chromatography (EtOAc) to afford the product **112** (8.27 g, 54%) as a clear yellow glass:  $R_f = 0.48$  (silica, EtOAc);  $[\alpha]^{22.2}_D +190^\circ$  ( $c$  0.15, DCM); IR (neat)  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3262, 2979, 2943, 2885, 1732, 1613, 1493, 1456, 1399, 1372, 1334, 1299, 1264, 1244, 1201, 1118, 1059, 1014, 969, 926, 888, 838, 784, 756, 720, 693, 624;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  6.64 (1H, s), 5.58 (1H, s), 5.31 (1H, s), 4.34 (1H, d,  $J = 19.78$  Hz), 4.15-4.00 (1H, m), 3.95 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 3.77 (2H, t), 3.55 (1H, t), 2.17-2.14 (2H, m), 2.14-2.10 (2H, m).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  163.49, 154.32, 152.30, 142.69, 129.51, 121.16, 109.35, 95.20, 85.63, 62.30, 61.36, 60.48, 56.09, 45.56, 28.44, 22.85; MS (EI)  $m/z$  485 (M+1), 467, 398, 384, 350, 291, 254, 236, 222, 194, 131, 102, 82, 70, 57.

**6,7,8-Trimethoxy-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (113)**

10% Cd/Pb couple (2.57 g, 20.6 mmol Cd) was added to a stirred solution of **112** (2.00 g, 4.1 mmol) in THF (20 mL) and 1N NH<sub>4</sub>OAc buffer (20 mL) and left at room temperature for 4 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (200 mL) and washed with water (2 x 100 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent was removed in vacuo to give **113** (0.76 g, 64%) as a yellow glass:  $R_f = 0.1$  (silica, EtOAc);  $[\alpha]^{20.7}_D = +505^\circ$  ( $c = 0.1$ , DCM); IR (neat)  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3339, 2976, 2939, 1614, 1455, 1428, 1392, 1359, 1275, 1245, 1203, 1113, 1052, 1035, 1000, 926, 804, 751, 665;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  (1H, d,  $J = 4.39$  Hz), 6.61 (1H, s), 6.14 (1H, d,  $J = 8.24$  Hz), 4.36 (1H, d,  $J = 8.79$  Hz), 4.01 (3H, s), 3.98 (3H, s), 3.84 (3H, s), 3.48-3.46 (2H, m) 2.26-2.23 (2H, m), 2.16-1.93 (2H, m); HRMS (FAB) calcd for C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>18</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (M+1) 290.1266, found 290.1208.

**Example 3(f) : Synthesis of the 7,8,9-Trimethoxy PBD (120, DRH-69) (see Figure 20)**



**3,4,5-Trimethoxy-2-nitrobenzoic acid (115)**

Methyl 3,4,5-trimethoxy-2-nitrobenzoic **114** (24.37 g, 89.9  
5 mmol) was added to a 5% solution of KOH (18 g) in MeOH (357 mL). The mixture was heated at reflux for 50 minutes. Evaporation of the solvent afforded a grey residue, which was dissolved in H<sub>2</sub>O (200 mL). The resulting alkaline solution was acidified to pH1 with concentrated HCl, and extracted with  
10 CHCl<sub>3</sub> (3 x 100 mL). The organic layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 100 mL), brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of the solvent afforded a pure white crystalline solid (20.67 g, 80.4 mmol): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 3.9 (s, 3H), 4.0 (s, 3H), 4.1 (s, 3H), 7.4 (s, 1H),  
15 12.4 (br s, 1H).

**N-(2-Nitro-3,4,5-trimethoxybenzoyl)pyrrolidine-2-methanol (116)**

A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a stirred solution of **115** (2.57 g, 10 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (1.40 g, 11 mmol) in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (40 mL) under an inert atmosphere. The  
20 reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight, the resulting solution of the acid chloride, (2.76 g, 10 mmol) in anhydrous CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (40 mL) was added dropwise over 1 hour to a vigorously stirred solution of pyrrolidinemethanol (1.11 g, 11 mmol) and  
25 TEA (2.52 g, 25 mmol) in anhydrous CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (40 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C and allowed to stir overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with 1N HCl (1 x 50 mL), 1N NaOH (1 x 50 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 50 mL) and brine (3

x 50 mL) and dried over anhydrous  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . Filtration and evaporation of the solvent afforded a yellow oil (2.81 g, 8.3 mmol):  $R_f = 0.47$  (5% MeOH/ $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.7-2.0 (m, 3H), 2.1-2.2 (m, 1H), 3.3-3.5 (m, 2H), 3.7-3.9 (m, 2H), 3.9-4.0 (2 x s, 6H), 4.0-4.1 (s, 3H), 4.2-4.3 (m, 1H), 6.7 (s, 1H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  167.3, 156.5, 147.9, 143.5, 128.8, 104.8, 65.8, 62.6, 61.4, 61.2, 56.6, 50.2, 28.4, 28.1, 24.5, 14.2.

10 **N-(2-Amino-3,4,5-trimethoxybenzoyl)pyrrolidine-2-methanol (117)**

Hydrazine hydrate (1.33 mL, 41.5 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of **116** (2.83 g, 8.3 mmol) in methanol (142 mL) gently refluxing over Raney nickel (500 mg, slurry). The resulting vigorous evolution of hydrogen gas subsided after approximately 10 minutes and the reaction was deemed to be complete by TLC after 2 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the solvent evaporated. Distilled water (100 mL) was added to the residue, and the aqueous mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL) and the combined organic phase washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (3 x 100 mL) and brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . Evaporation of the solvent afforded the product (2.18 g, 6.5 mmol) as a brown oil:  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.6-2.0 (m, 3H), 2.1-2.2 (m, 1H), 3.4-3.7 (m, 4H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 3.8-3.9 (2 x s, 6H), 4.4 (br s, 1H), 4.7-4.3 (br s, 1H), 6.6 (s, 1H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  144.7, 144.5, 141.6, 134.6, 107.1, 66.9, 61.0, 60.9, 60.5, 56.8, 50.9, 28.6, 24.9, 21.1, 14.2.

**N-2-(Trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)-3,4,5-trimethoxybenzoylpyrrolidine-2-methanol (118)**

30 A solution of 2,2,2-trichloroethylchloroformate (1.37 g, 6.5 mmol) in distilled dichloromethane (40 mL) was added dropwise over 0.5 hours to a solution of anhydrous pyridine (0.93 g, 11.8 mmol) and the substrate, **117** (1.82 g, 5.9 mmol) in distilled dichloromethane (60 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ . After 1.5 h. the

reaction mixture was diluted with anhydrous DCM (100 mL) and washed with 1N HCl (2 x 100 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of the solvent yielded a brown oil which was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with 1% MeOH/ 99% CHCl<sub>3</sub> to afford the product as a yellow oil (1.83 g, 3.8 mmol): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.6-1.9 (m, 3H), 2.1-2.2 (m, 1H), 3.3-3.6 (m, 2H), 3.6-3.85 (m, 2H), 3.8-3.9 (m, 9H), 4.2-4.3 (m, 1H), 4.7-4.8 (br s, 1H), 4.8 (s, 2H), 6.6 (s, 1H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 169.9, 153.2, 151.9, 143.1, 128.5, 120.1, 105.2, 95.3, 74.6, 66.3, 61.2, 61.2, 61.0, 56.3, 50.6, 28.7, 24.6.

**(11S,11aS)7,8,9-trimethoxy-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2',2'',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepin-5-one (119)**

Anhydrous DMSO (3.15 mL, 44.3 mmol) in dry DCM (8.2 mL) was added dropwise over 20 minutes to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (2.79 g, 11.0 mL of a 2N solution in DCM; 22.0 mmol) in dry DCM (20.6 mL) under an inert atmosphere at -45°C (varied between -38° and -48°C). After stirring for 15 minutes, the substrate (7.59 g ; 15.6 mmol) in dry DCM (17 mL) was added dropwise over 45 minutes to the reaction mixture, which was then stirred for a further 45 minutes at -45°C after the final addition of the substrate. Dry TEA (4.84 g, 48.0 mmol, 4 eq) was added dropwise to the mixture over 0.5 hours and stirred for a further 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and the reaction mixture diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O (80 mL). The organic phase was separated, washed with brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was evaporated to afford the product as an off-white solid (4.39 g, 9.1 mmol): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.95-2.2 (m, 4H), 3.4-3.8 (m, 2H), 3.8-3.9 (m, 9H), 4.05 (d, 1H), 4.5-4.8 (dd, 2H), 5.6-5.7 (q, 1H), 7.1 (s, 1H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) rotamers δ 166.7, 166.5, 155.2, 153.5, 153.3, 150.0, 144.5, 129.5, 129.0, 121.7, 106.4, 106.2, 94.6, 86.1, 85.9, 75.7 75.2, 61.5, 61.3, 60.9, 60.1 59.8, 56.2, 56.1, 46.5, 46.3, 28.7, 28.6, 23.0.

**7,8,9-Trimethoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (120, DRH-69)**

10% Cd/Pb couple (1.25 g, 10 mmol Cd) was added to a rapidly stirring solution of the Troc-carbamate, **119** (1.00 g, 2.1 mmol) in a mixture of THF (13 mL) and 1N NH<sub>4</sub>OAc (8 mL). Upon addition, the reaction mixture went cloudy. After 40 minutes, TLC showed the reaction to be complete and the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (200 mL). The solution was dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub> and the solids were filtered and rinsed with EtOAc (50 mL). Evaporation of the solvent yielded the product as a yellow glass (0.581 g, 2.0 mmol). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.73 (d, 1H, J = 4.57 Hz), 7.08 (s, 1H), 4.0-3.4 (m, 12H), 2.4-1.8 (m, 4H)

**Example 3(g) : 8-Hydroxy-7,9-dimethoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydropyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (130, DRH-168)(see Figure 21)**

**Methyl 4-hydroxy-3,5-dimethoxybenzoate (121)**

Concentrated sulphuric acid (3 mL), was added dropwise to a solution of **81** (20.24 g, 102.1 mmol) in refluxing methanol (70 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at reflux for a further 5 hours and then cooled to room temperature and concentrated to a third of its original volume. The concentrate was poured onto crushed ice (c. 150 mL) and allowed to stand for 30 minutes. The aqueous mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100 mL) and the combined organic phase washed with distilled water (3 x 100 mL), brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded the product as a yellow solid, **121** (18.39 g, 86.7 mmol; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 3.9 (s, 3H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.975 (s, 3H), 6.1 (s, 1H), 7.3 (s, 2H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 166.9, 146.6, 139.2, 121.0, 106.6, 56.4, 52.1.

**Methyl 4-Benzoyloxy-3,5-dimethoxybenzoate (122)**

Benzyl chloride (11.04 g, 86.9 mmol) was added to a stirred

solution of **121** (19.22 g, 90.8 mmol) over  $K_2CO_3$  (6.59 g, 47.7 mmol) in anhydrous MeOH (175 mL) and the mixture was heated at reflux for 12 h. Excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was extracted with benzene (3 x 100 mL). The organic layer was washed with  $H_2O$  (3 x 100 mL), brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous  $MgSO_4$ . Evaporation of the solvent afforded an orange oil which crystallised on standing. The solid was redissolved in EtOAc, and briefly washed with 1N NaOH (100 mL),  $H_2O$  (100 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried over  $MgSO_4$ . Evaporation of excess solvent yielded the product as a yellow solid **122** (19.20 g, 63.6 mmol);  $^1H$  NMR (270 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  3.8 (s, 3H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 3.9 (s, 3H), 5.1 (s, 2H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 7H);  $^{13}C$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  166.7, 153.2, 140.8, 137.3, 128.7, 128.6, 128.4, 128.4, 128.2, 128.0, 127.7, 125.3, 106.7, 74.9, 56.1, 52.2.

**Methyl 2-nitro-4-benzyloxy-3,5-dimethoxybenzoate (123)**

Finely ground copper nitrate ( $Cu(NO_3)_2$ , 14.79 g, 78.7 mmol) was added portionwise to a vigorously stirred solution of the substrate (19.00 g, 62.9 mmol) in acetic anhydride (120 mL) whilst keeping the reaction temperature below 40°C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour and then poured over ice (800 mL). The aqueous mixture was left to stir for 1 hour and the product collected by filtration to afford a yellow solid (18.7 g);  $^1H$  NMR (270 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  3.85 (s, 3H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 5.19 (s, 2H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 6H);  $^{13}C$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  163.2, 154.3, 146.0, 145.2, 136.2, 128.7, 128.5, 128.4, 128.3, 117.8, 108.52, 75.5, 62.7, 56.5, 53.0.

**2-Nitro-4-benzyloxy-3,5-dimethoxybenzoic acid (124)**

Potassium hydroxide (10.84 g, 193.6 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of the substrate (18.7 g, 53.9 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (220 mL) and the reaction mixture heated at reflux for 2 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool and acidified to pH2 with 1N HCl and extracted with chloroform (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water

(3 x 200 mL), brine (3 x 200 mL) and dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . Evaporation of excess solvent by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the product as a yellow solid (17.01 g, 51.1 mmol, 95%);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  3.9 (br s, 3H), 3.9 (br s, 3H), 5.1 (br s, 2H), 7.2-7.5 (m, 6H).

**N-(4-Benzyloxy-3,5-dimethoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)pyrrolidine-2-methanol (125)**

A catalytic amount of DMF (5 drops) was added to a stirred solution of **124** (10g, 30.0 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (4.65 g, 36.0 mmol) in dry  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  (115 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight and the resulting acid chloride used directly in the next part of the procedure. 4-benzyloxy-3,5-dimethoxy-2-nitro-benzoyl chloride in anhydrous  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  (115 mL) was added dropwise over 0.5 hours to a stirring solution of pyrrolidine methanol (3.34 g, 33.03 mmol, 1.1 eq) and TEA (7.58 g, 75.1 mmol, 2.5 eq) in anhydrous DCM (100 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  under a nitrogen atmosphere and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with 1N HCl (2 x 100 mL), and the organic layer was washed with distilled  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (2 x 100 mL), brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . Evaporation of the solvent yielded a brown glass (8.71 g, 20.9 mmol, 70%);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.7-2.2 (m, 4H), 3.3-3.5 (m, 2H), 3.7-3.9 (m, 2H), 3.9 (s, 3H), 4.0 (s, 3H), 4.2-4.3 (m, 1H), 5.1 (s, 2H), 6.85 (s, 1H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 5H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  167.3, 156.8, 148.2, 142.3, 136.4, 136.0, 129.0, 128.5, 128.4, 104.8, 75.6, 65.7, 62.8, 61.4, 56.6, 50.2, 28.3, 24.5.

**N-(2-Amino-4-Benzyloxy-3,5-dimethoxybenzoyl)pyrrolidine-2-methanol (126)**

Hydrazine hydrate (2.31 g, 72.2 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of **125** (6.01 g, 14.4 mmol) in methanol (60 mL) gently refluxing over Raney nickel (1.1g, slurry). The resulting vigorous evolution of hydrogen gas subsided after

approximately 10 minutes and the reaction was deemed to be complete by TLC after 2 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the solvent evaporated. Distilled water (100 mL) was added to the residue, and the aqueous mixture was  
5 extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL) and the combined organic phase washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 100 mL) and brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of the solvent afforded the product as a brown oil (3.97 g, 10.3 mmol, 73%):  
10 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.6-2.2 (m, 4H), 3.5-3.8 (m, 4H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 3.9 (s, 3H), 4.4 (br s, 1H), 5.1 (s, 2H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 7.3-7.6 (m, 5H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 171.5, 144.9, 143.5, 141.9, 137.5, 134.6, 128.6, 128.5, 128.3, 128.2, 128.0, 115.1, 107.3, 75.1, 66.9, 61.0, 60.6, 60.4, 56.9, 50.9, 28.5, 24.9, 21.1, 14.2.

15 **N-(4-Benzyloxy-3,5-dimethoxy-2-[(2'-trimethylsilylethoxy)carbonylamino]benzoyl)pyrrolidine-2-methanol (127)**

A solution of anhydrous pyridine (0.21 g, 2.6 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise over 15 minutes to a  
20 stirred solution of 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethanol (0.92 g, 7.8 mmol) and triphosgene (0.77 g, 2.6 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (30 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight and the resulting solution of 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl  
chloroformate added dropwise over 0.5 hours to the amine 126  
25 (1.98 g, 5.1 mmol) and anhydrous pyridine (1.22 g, 15.4 mmol) in distilled dichloromethane (70 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature, diluted with anhydrous DCM (100 mL), washed with 1N HCl (3 x 100 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 100 mL), brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over  
30 anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of the solvent yielded the product as a colourless glass (1.43 g, 2.7 mmol, 53%); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ -0.05 (s, 9H), 0.94-0.99 (m, 2H), 1.66-2.12 (m, 4H), 3.32-3.54 (m, 2H), 3.74-3.88 (m, 8H), 4.05-4.22 (m, 3H), 4.69 (br s, 1H), 4.97 (s, 2H), 6.57 (s, 1H), 6.64 (br s, 1H), 7.23-7.43 (m, 5H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 170.1, 155.1, 151.4, 148.1, 142.0, 137.1, 128.4,



128.3, 128.1, 121.2, 105.6, 75.3, 66.1, 64.0, 61.3, 61.0,  
56.3, 50.6, 28.7, 24.7, 17.6, -1.5.

5 **(11S,11aS)-8-benzyloxy-7,9-dimethoxy-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2'-  
trimethylsilylethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-  
pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepin-5-one. (128)**

Anhydrous DMSO (0.57 g, 7.2 mmol) in dry DCM (5 mL) was added  
dropwise over 30 minutes to a stirred solution of oxalyl  
chloride (0.46 g, 3.6 mmol) in dry DCM (5 mL) under a nitrogen  
atmosphere at -45°C. After stirring for 15 minutes, the  
10 substrate (1.35 g, 2.6 mmol) in dry DCM (15 mL) was added  
dropwise over 45 minutes to the reaction mixture, which was  
then stirred for a further 45 minutes at -45°C. TEA (1.0 g,  
10.2 mmol) was added dropwise to the mixture over 0.5 hours  
and stirred for a further 15 minutes. The reaction mixture  
15 was left to warm to room temperature and diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O (100  
mL) and the phases separated. The organic phase was washed  
with 1N HCl (3 x 50 mL), water (3 x 50 mL), brine (3 x 50 mL)  
and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and evaporation of excess  
solvent afforded the product as an off-white glass (1.24 g,  
20 2.3 mmol, 92%); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ -0.05 (s, 9H),  
0.88-0.95 (m, 2H), 2.06-2.23 (m, 4H), 3.46-3.64 (m, 2H), 3.75-  
4.02 (m, 7H), 4.11-4.27 (m, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.65 (d, 1H, J  
= 9.71 Hz), 7.11 (s, 1H), 7.34-7.54 (m, 5H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8  
MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 166.8, 157.2, 153.1, 150.5, 143.4, 137.1, 129.2,  
25 128.4, 128.3, 128.3, 128.1, 123.0, 106.2, 85.7, 75.0, 64.7,  
61.7, 59.8, 56.1, 46.4, 28.6, 23.0, 17.5, -1.5, -1.6.

**(11S,11aS)-8,11-dihydroxy-7,9-dimethoxy-10-N-(2'-  
trimethylsilylethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-  
pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepin-5-one(129)**  
30 10% Pd/C catalyst (0.22 g) was added to a solution of the  
substrate **128** (0.95g, 2.1 mmol) in absolute EtOH (200 mL).  
The reaction mixture was hydrogenated under pressure using a  
Parr hydrogenator at 55 psi H<sub>2</sub> for 18 h. The reaction mixture  
was filtered through celite, and the celite washed with hot

EtOH, taking care not to allow the filtration pad to dry out. Removal of excess solvent afforded the product as a colourless glass (0.84 g, 1.9 mmol, 92%);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.07 (s, 9H), 0.91-0.97 (m, 2H), 2.07-2.20 (m, 4H), 3.52-3.75 (m, 2H), 3.98-4.26 (m, 9H), 5.65 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.71$  Hz), 6.26 (br s, 1H), 7.14 (s, 1H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  167.0, 157.3, 146.8, 143.4, 141.3, 124.9, 123.5, 105.5, 105.2, 85.8, 64.8, 64.6, 64.5, 61.2, 60.0, 56.4, 46.4, 28.9, 28.7, 23.1, 23.0, 17.3, -1.3, -1.5, -1.7.

10 **7,9-dimethoxy-8-Hydroxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydropyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-one (130)**

A solution of TBAF in THF (4.3 mL of a 1N solution, 4.3 mmol) was added to a rapidly stirred solution of **129** (0.37 g, 0.9 mmol) in THF (10 mL) and the reaction mixture heated to 35°C for 2 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (50 mL), dried over anhydrous  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered and removal of excess solvent by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the product as a brown oil (0.18 g, 0.7 mmol, 78%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) mixture of C11/C11'R/S carbinolamine methyl ethers  $\delta$  7.08 (s, 1H), 4.43 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.79$  Hz), 4.05-3.23 (m, 12H), 2.3-1.48 (m, 4H).

**Examples 3(h) to (j) : Synthesis of 7-Phenyl PBDs (See Figure 22)**

**Synthesis of the 7-Iodo-N10-Troc-PBD Intermediate (134, AG/91)**

25 **5-Iodo-2-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoic acid (132)**

A solution of Troc-Cl (2.88 mL, 20.9 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (20 mL) was added drop wise to a solution of 5-iodoanthranilic acid **131** (5 g, 19 mmol) and pyridine (3.1 mL, 38 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (30 mL) at 0°C. The solution was stirred for 5 hours at room temperature and then washed with 1N HCl (2 x 25 mL), water (1 x 25 mL) and brine (1 x 25 mL). The organic phase was dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and evaporated, residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate to

afford the title compound as a yellow solid (6.2 g, 75%):  
m.p. 248 C (ethyl acetate).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$  4.83  
(s, 2H); 7.78-7.82 (dd,  $J = 9.2$ ,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1H); 8.18 (d,  $J =$   
9 Hz, 1H); 8.38 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1H); 9.0-10.5 (bs, 1H); 11.04  
5 (s, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$  74.4, 84.6, 95.2, 117.7,  
120.7, 140, 140.8, 142.8, 151.5, 169. MS: m/e (relative  
intensity) 437 (M-1, 60), 289 (55), 272 (37), 245 (100), 218  
(27). HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{Cl}_3\text{INO}_4$ : 436.8485. Found:  
436.8485.

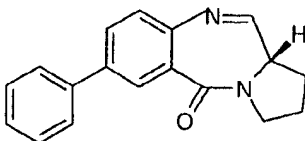
10 **N-(5-Iodo-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoyl)  
pyrrolidine-2-methanol (133)**

Oxalyl chloride (0.88 mL, 10 mmol) was added to a suspension  
of **132** (4 g, 9.1 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (50 mL),  
followed by 3-4 drops of DMF as catalyst. The solution was  
15 stirred at room temperature for 12 hours, and then used  
directly in the next step. The newly formed acid chloride was  
added drop wise, over 1 hour, to a solution of 2S-(+)-  
pyrrolidinemethanol (1.01 g, 10 mmol) and triethylamine (3.16  
mL, 22.7 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (50 mL) at  $-20^\circ\text{C}$ . The  
20 reaction mixture was allowed to stir for a further hour at  $-$   
 $20^\circ\text{C}$  and was then washed with dilute HCl (1N, 2 x 50 mL),  
water (50 mL) and brine (50 mL), dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and  
evaporated. The crude product was subjected to flash column  
chromatography to afford the title compound as a pale yellow  
25 oil (3.8 g, 81%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$  1.77-2.28 (m, 4H);  
3.48 (bs, 2H); 3.7 (dd,  $J = 11.4$ ,  $J = 6.2$ , 1H); 3.94 (d,  $J =$   
11.4 Hz, 1H); 4.40 (bs, 1H); 4.75 (d,  $J = 12$  Hz, 1H); 4.84 (d,  
 $J = 12$  Hz, 1H); 7.66 - 7.72 (m, 2H); 7.85 (d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz, 1H);  
8.91 (bs, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$  25.0, 28.1, 51.2,  
30 60.7, 65.3, 74.5, 86.1, 95.1, 123.0, 128.0, 135.6, 136.1,  
139.8, 151.8, 168.4. IR (Nujol):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3415, 3215, 1745, 1605,  
1527, 1445, 1377, 1221, 1101, 1056, 822, 733. MS: m/e  
(relative intensity) 522 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 3), 521 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 1), 520 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 3),  
491 (3), 490 (1), 489 (3), 372 (7), 341 (28), 272 (80), 245  
35 (14), 216 (14), 83 (15), 70 (100). HRMS Calculated for  
 $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{16}\text{Cl}_3\text{IN}_2\text{O}_4$ : 521.9193. Found: 521.9125.  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +123.4^\circ$  ( $c =$

2.8, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

**7-Iodo-10-N-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-, 1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (134)**

- 5 A solution of DMSO (1.79 mL, 25.67 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (35 mL) was slowly added (30 minutes) to a solution of oxalyl chloride (12.8 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (41.4 mL) at -45°C. The mixture was allowed to stir for 25 minutes and then treated with a solution of **133** (4.78 g, 9.2 mmol), in dry dichloromethane (80 mL), keeping temperature below -40°C. After further 60 minutes at -45°C, a solution of triethylamine (5.1 mL) in of dichloromethane (25 mL) was added, and the reaction mixture allowed to warm to room temperature. The organic phase was washed with water (180 mL), dilute HCl (1N, 2 x 100 mL) and brine (200 mL). Removal of excess solvent afforded the crude product which was purified by flash chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether 70/30) to give of a pale yellow oil (3.6 g, 76%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.02-2.15 (m, 4H); 3.37-3.60 (m, 2H); 3.70-3.77 (m, 1H); 4.19 (bs, 1H); 4.28 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1H); 5.17 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1H); 5.66 (d, J = 9.7 Hz, 1H); 7.10 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H); 7.79 (dd, J = 8.3, J = 2.2 Hz, 1H); 8.10 (d, J = 2.2 Hz, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 23.0, 28.8, 46.5, 59.6, 75.1, 86.0, 93.2, 94.8, 132.0, 133.6, 135.0, 137.9, 140.1, 154.1, 165.2. IR (Nujol): cm<sup>-1</sup> 3500-3000, 1716, 1619, 1458, 1376, 1312, 1075, 720. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 520 (M<sup>+</sup>, 62), 519 (22), 518 (62), 491 (15), 371 (19), 342 (39), 272 (84), 216 (31), 119 (27), 70 (100). HRMS Calculated for C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>14</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>IN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: 519.9036. Found: 519.9037. [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = +137.4° (c = 1.15, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

Example 3(h) : Synthesis of the 7-Phenyl-PBD (136, AG/129)

**7-Phenyl-10-N-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-  
1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5-H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]  
benzodiazepin-5-one (135)**

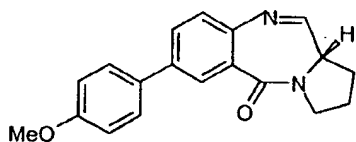
5 A suspension of **134** (0.5 g, 1.0 mmol), benzeneboronic acid (0.15 g, 1.22 mmol), Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> and anhydrous Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.16 g, 1.48 mmol) in distilled benzene (20 mL), water (2 mL) and ethanol (2 mL) was heated at reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL) and washed with  
10 water (2 x 20 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to yield a crude yellow oil. Purification by flash chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether 30/70 to 70/30) furnished the title compound (0.43 g, 95%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.98-2.09 (m, 2H); 2.12-2.15 (m, 2H); 3.51-3.62 (m, 2H); 3.7-3.79 (m, 1H); 4.28 (d, *J* = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 4.73 (d, *J* = 4.4 Hz, 1H); 5.18 (d, *J* = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 5.66-5.73 (dd, *J* = 4.8, *J* = 9.8 Hz, 1H); 7.33-7.48 (m, 4H); 7.61-7.70 (m, 3H); 8.02 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 22.9, 28.7, 46.4; 59.8; 75.0; 77.3; 86.0; 94.9; 127.0; 127.3; 128.0; 128.9;  
15 129.6; 130.8; 132.9; 133.5; 139.2; 141.1; 154.4; 166.9. MS: *m/e* (relative intensity) 468 (M<sup>+</sup>, 10), 292 (25), 222 (100), 195 (10), 166 (35), 140 (10), 70 (70). HRMS Calculated for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>19</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: 468.0411. Found: 468.0410. [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = + 103.8° (*c* = 0.42, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

25 **(11aS)-7-Phenyl-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]  
benzodiazepin-5-one (136, AG/129)**

Cd/Pb (0.47 g) couple was added portion wise to a vigorously stirred solution of **135** (0.33 g, 0.7 mmol) in THF (5 mL) and of aq. ammonium acetate (1M, 5mL). The suspension was  
30 allowed to stir at room temperature for 2 hours, then poured into ethyl acetate (200 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered.

The filtrate was evaporated and the residue purified by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to afford the title compound as colourless oil (0.19 g, 98%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.0-2.12 (m, 2H); 2.29-2.37 (m, 2H); 3.53-3.63 (m, 1H); 3.76-3.92 (m, 2H); 7.36-7.79 (m, 8H); 8.28 (d,  $J$  = 2.2 Hz, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  24.4; 29.8; 46.9; 53.8; 126.9; 127.3; 127.7; 128.0; 128.2; 128.8; 128.9; 129.1; 130.1; 130.5; 139.5; 145.0; 164.5; 165.1. IR (Nujol):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3000-2800, 1620, 1455, 1377, 1239, 1239, 1014, 990, 761, 728, 697. HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{16}\text{N}_2\text{O}$ : 276.1261. Found: 276.1262.  $[\alpha]_D^{25}$  = +131.4° ( $c$  = 0.19,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ).

**Example 3(i) : Synthesis of the 7-(4'-Methoxyphenyl)-PBD (138, AG/135)**



(11S,11aS)-7-(4'-Methoxy)phenyl-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2'',2'',2''-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (137)

134 (0.5 g, 1.0 mmol), 4-methoxybenzeneboronic acid (0.19 g, 1.2 mmol),  $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$  (15 mg) and anhydrous  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  (0.16 g, 1.48 mmol) were heated at reflux, over night, in a mixture of distilled benzene (20 mL), ethanol (2 mL) and water (2 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL) and washed with water (2 x 20 mL). The organic phase was dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and evaporated to yield a crude yellow oil. Purification by flash chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether 50/50) afforded the pure compound (0.34 g, 71%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.96-2.16 (m, 4H); 3.54-3.63 (m, 2H); 3.71-3.79 (m, 1H); 3.85 (s, 3H); 4.18 (d,  $J$  = 4.8 Hz, 1H); 4.29 (d,  $J$  = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 5.20 (d,  $J$  = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 5.66-5.72 (dd,  $J$  = 4.5,  $J$  = 9.8 Hz, 1H); 6.97 (d,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H); 7.37 (d,  $J$  = 8.2 Hz, 1H); 7.57 (d,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H); 7.64 (dd,  $J$  = 2.4,  $J$  = 8.2 Hz,

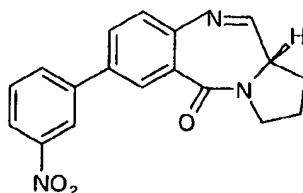
162

1H); 7.97 (d,  $J = 2$  Hz, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  23.0; 28.7; 46.4; 55.4; 59.6; 75.1; 86.1; 94.9; 114.3; 126.8; 129.1; 130.6; 131.7; 132.0; 132.2; 132.3; 133.5; 140.7; 154.5; 159.6; 166.9. IR (Nujol):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3000-2800, 1740, 1620, 1462, 1378, 1247, 1082, 816, 721. MS:  $m/e$  (relative intensity) 498 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 15), 350 (20), 321 (15), 252 (100), 196 (22), 182 (5), 126 (7), 70 (28). HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{21}\text{Cl}_3\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ : 498.0515. Found: 498.0513.  $[\alpha]^{25}_D = +149.4^\circ$  (0.25,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ )

10 **(11aS)-7-(4'-Methoxyphenyl)-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (138, AG/135)**

Cd/Pb couple (0.51 g) was added portion wise to a, vigorously stirred, solution of **137** (0.34 g, 0.76 mmol) in THF (5 mL) and aq. ammonium acetate (1M, 5 mL). The suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 2 hours, then poured into ethyl acetate (200 mL), dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and filtered. The organic solution was evaporated and the residue purified by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate), to afford the title compound as colourless oil (0.1 g, 70%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$  2.1 (m, 2H); 2.3-2.4 (m, 2H); 3.5-3.62 (m, 1H); 3.85 (m, 5H); 7.0 (d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz, 2H); 7.36 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2H); 7.6 (d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz, 2H); 7.72 (dd,  $J = 2.2$ ,  $J = 8.2$  Hz, 1H); 7.8 (d,  $J = 4.4$  Hz, 1H); 8.2 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$  24.1; 29.5; 46.7; 53.6; 55.3; 77.3; 114.1; 114.3; 127.4; 127.6; 127.8; 128.0; 129.3; 131.9; 138.7; 144.3; 159.4; 164.2; 164.8. IR (Nujol):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3000-2800, 1662, 1607, 1491, 1454, 1245, 1069, 823, 759. MS:  $m/e$  (relative intensity) 306 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 100), 277 (15), 237 (10), 182 (12), 153 (10), 132 (5), 70 (10). HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$ : 306.1367. Found: 306.1365.  $[\alpha]^{25}_D = +773.1^\circ$  ( $c = 0.11$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ).

**Example 3(j) : Synthesis of the 7-(3'-Nitrophenyl)-PBD (140, AG/150)**



(11S,11aS)-7-(3'-Nitro)phenyl-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2'',2'',2'''-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c]-[1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (139)

134 (0.5 g, 1.0 mmol), 3-nitrobenzeneboronic acid (0.2 g, 1.2 mmol), Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (25 mg) and anhydrous Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.16 g, 1.48 mmol) were heated at reflux, over night, in a mixture of distilled benzene (20 mL), ethanol (2 mL) and water (2 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL) and washed with water (2 x 20 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to yield a crude yellow oil. Purification by flash chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether 50/50) afforded the pure compound (0.45 g, 90%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.0-2.2 (m, 4H); 3.6 (m, 2H); 3.76 (m, 1H); 4.31 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1H); 5.19 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1H); 5.76 (d, J = 10 Hz, 1H); 7.5-8.5 (m, 8H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (68.7 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 22.9, 28.7, 46.4, 59.7, 75.0, 86.0, 94.8, 121.7, 122.6, 127.5, 129.4, 129.9, 131.2, 132.0, 132.8, 133.9, 138.3, 140.7, 148.6, 154.1, 166.3. IR (Nujol): cm<sup>-1</sup> 3000-2800, 1721, 1626, 1530, 1455, 1349, 1062, 821, 759. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 513 (M<sup>+</sup>), 336 (55), 321 (100), 292 (15), 267 (54), 221 (16), 197 (18), 164 (15), 70 (22). HRMS Calculated for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>18</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: 515.0233. Found: 515.0235. [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = + 129.6° (c = 0.1, CH<sub>3</sub>OH).

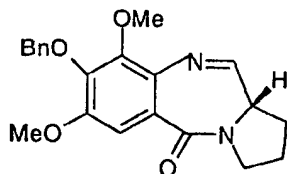
(11aS)-7-(3'-Nitrophenyl)-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (140, AG-150)

A solution of TBAF in THF (1M solution, 7.6 mL, 7.6 mmol) was added to a solution 139 (0.39 g, 0.8 mmol) in THF (20 mL)



and the reaction mixture allowed to stir for 2 hours at room temperature. The solution was diluted with ethyl acetate (50 mL) and washed with water (3 x 50 mL) to remove excess TBAF. The organic phase was dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ), to afford the title compound as a colourless oil (0.15 g, 63%):  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.8-2.2 (m, 3H); 3.5-4.0 (m, 3H); 7.3-8.5 (m, 7H). IR (Nujol):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  3000-2850, 1624, 1527, 1466, 1349, 1244, 757, 740. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 321 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 100), 292 (8), 265 (5), 224 (5), 197 (7), 151 (5), 70 (5). HRMS Calculated for  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{15}\text{N}_3\text{O}_3$ : 321.1115. Found: 321.1113.  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +129.6^\circ$  ( $c = 0.1$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ).

**Example 3(k) : 8-Benzyloxy-7,9-dimethoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydropyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (143, DRH-105) (see Figure 23)**



**N-(4-Benzyloxy-3,5-dimethoxy-2-[trichloroethyloxycarbonylamino]benzoyl)pyrrolidine-2-methanol (141)**

A solution of 2,2,2-trichloroethyl chloroformate (1.08 g, 4.8 mmol) in distilled dichloromethane (10 mL) was added dropwise over 0.5 hours to a solution of anhydrous pyridine (0.80 g, 10.1 mmol) and **126** (Example 3(g)) (1.95 g, 5.1 mmol) in distilled dichloromethane (20 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ . After 1 hour the reaction mixture was diluted with anhydrous DCM (100 mL) and washed with 1N HCl (2 x 100 mL),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (100 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried over anhydrous  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . Evaporation of the solvent

yielded a brown oil which was purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel, EtOAc) to afford the product as a yellow glass (2.65 g, 4.7 mmol, 94%);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.6-2.2 (m, 4H), 3.3-3.6 (m, 2H), 3.6-3.9 (m, 2H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 3.9 (s, 3H), 4.2-4.3 (m, 1H), 4.8 (s, 2H), 5.1 (s, 2H), 6.6 (s, 1H), 7.2 (br s, 1H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 5H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  171.5, 153.1, 142.0, 137.023, 128.3, 128.3, 128.2, 120.1, 105.3, 95.4, 75.3, 74.6, 66.5, 61.4, 61.3, 56.3, 50.7, 28.7, 24.6.

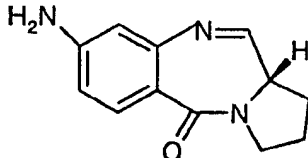
10 **(11S,11aS)-8-benzyloxy-7,9-dimethoxy-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepin-5-one (142)**

Anhydrous DMSO (0.97 g, 12.5 mmol) in dry DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise over 30 minutes to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (3.08 mL of a 2N solution in DCM, 6.2 mmol) in dry DCM (10 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$ . After stirring for 15 minutes, the substrate (2.46 g, 4.38 mmol) in dry DCM (25 mL) was added dropwise over 45 minutes to the reaction mixture, which was then stirred for a further 45 minutes at  $-45^\circ\text{C}$ . TEA (1.77 g; 17.5 mmol) was added dropwise to the mixture over 0.5 hours and stirred for a further 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was left to warm to room temperature, diluted with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (100 mL) and the phases allowed to separate. The organic phase was washed with 1N HCl (2 x 50 mL), water (2 x 50 mL), brine (2 x 50 mL) and dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . The solvent was evaporated to afford the product as an off-white glass (3.92 g, 11.7 mmol; 97 %);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.01-2.17 (m, 4H), 3.44-3.77 (m, 2H), 3.87-3.90 (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 4.68 (dd, 2H), 5.01 (s, 2H), 5.62 (d, 1H), 7.08 (s, 1H), 7.27-7.48 (m, 5H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  166.7, 155.2, 153.6, 150.5, 143.6, 137.1, 129.8, 129.3, 128.4, 128.3, 128.2, 128.1, 121.8, 106.5, 106.3, 94.7, 86.2, 85.9, 75.6, 75.4, 75.2, 75.0, 61.8, 61.5, 60.2, 59.870, 56.1, 56.0, 46.5, 46.3, 45.8, 28.7, 28.6, 23.0.

**8-Benzyloxy-7,9-dimethoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydropyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-on (143)**

10% Cd/Pb couple (1.2 g; 10 mmol Cd) was added to a rapidly stirring solution of **142** (1.08 g; 1.9 mmol) in a mixture of THF (15 mL) and 1N NH<sub>4</sub>OAc (15 mL). After 3.5 h, TLC revealed that reaction was still incomplete and more 10% Cd/Pb couple (500 mg) was added. After a further 1 hour the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (150 mL). The solution was dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub> and the solids were filtered and rinsed with EtOAc (50 mL). Removal of excess solvent yielded the product as a yellow glass (0.48 g, 1.3 mmol, 68%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.73 (d, 1H, J = 4.4 Hz), 7.36 (s, 2H), 7.31 (s, 2H), 7.11 (s, 1H), 7.08 (s, 1H), 5.12 (br s, 2H), 3.98-3.42 (m, 9H), 2.38-2.29 (m, 2H), 2.23-1.83 (m, 2H).

**Example 3(1) : Synthesis of the C8-NH, PBD (151, AG/149) (see Figure 24)**



**4-Nitro-2-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoic acid (145)**

A solution of 2,2,2-trichloroethylchloroformate (Troc-Cl) (1.66 mL, 12.1 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (25 mL) was added drop wise to a solution of 4-nitroanthranilic acid **144** (2 g, 11 mmol) and pyridine (1.78 mL, 22 mmol) in dichloromethane (25 mL) at 0°C. The solution was allowed to stir at 25°C for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was washed with dilute HCl (1N, 2 x 50 mL), water (1 x 50 mL), brine (1 x 25 mL) and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Removal of excess solvent by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the crude product which was used in the subsequent reaction without further purification.

**N-[4-nitro-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino) benzoyl]  
pyrrolidine-2-methanol (146)**

Oxalyl chloride (1 mL, 12.1 mmol) and a catalytic amount of dry DMF were added to a suspension of the crude product from the previous reaction in of dry dichloromethane (50 mL) and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 12 hours. The newly formed acid chloride was added drop wise, over 1 hour, to a solution of 2*S*-(+)-pyrrolidinemethanol (1.22 g, 12.1 mmol) and triethylamine (3.8 mL, 27.5 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 mL) at -20°C (CCl<sub>4</sub>-dry ice). The reaction mixture was stirred for a further hour at -20°C and was then allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with dilute HCl (1*N*, 2 x 50 mL), water (50 mL) and brine (50 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (EtOAc/petroleum ether 50/50), removal of excess eluent afforded of a yellow oil (1.34 g, 30%, over two steps): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.7 - 2.3 (m, 4H); 3.45 (m, 2H); 3.71 (dd, *J* = 5.5, *J* = 11, 1H); 4.06 (m, 2H); 4.43 (bs, 1H); 4.85 (d, *J* = 13, 1H); 4.89 (d, *J* = 13 Hz, 1H); 7.56 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H); 7.96 (dd, *J* = 2.2, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H); 8.94 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1H); 9.2 (bs, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 24.9; 27.9; 50.8; 60.5; 64.3; 74.6; 94.9; 115.9; 117.9; 128.6; 130.5; 136.9; 149.0; 151.8; 167.7. MS: *m/e* (relative intensity) 441 ([*M*+1], 1), 291 (10), 260 (12), 191 (30), 164 (15), 154 (8), 113 (20), 77 (20), 70 (100). HRMS Calculated for C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>16</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: 439.0104. Found: 439.0105. [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = - 110.6° (*c* = 0.13, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

**N-[4-amino(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoyl]  
pyrrolidine-2-methanol (147)**

A solution of 146 (1 g, 2.3 mmol) and SnCl<sub>2</sub> 2H<sub>2</sub>O (2.56 g, 11.4 mmol) in methanol (20 mL) was heated at reflux for 6 hours (the reaction was monitored by TLC (3% methanol, ethyl acetate). The reaction mixture was reduced to 1/3 of it's original volume and the pH adjusted to 8-9 with satd. aqueous

NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. Ethyl acetate (100 mL) was added and the mixture was vigorously stirred for 12 hours, then filtered through Celite to remove tin salts. The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to afford the product as a yellow oil (0.94 g, 97%) which was used in the next reaction without further purification: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.6 - 1.8 (m, 2H); 1.9 (m, 1H); 2.17 (m, 1H); 3.48 - 3.58 (m, 1H); 3.62 - 3.72 (m, 2H); 3.84 (m, 1H); 4.44 (m, 1H); 4.77 (d, *J* = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 4.83 (d, *J* = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 6.32 (dd, *J* = 2.2, *J* = 8.43 Hz, 1H); 7.18 (d, *J* = 8.43 Hz, 1H); 7.52 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1H); 9.62 (bs, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 21.1; 25.2; 28.2; 51.9; 60.9; 66.5; 74.3; 95.3; 105.5; 108.3; 112.6; 130.1; 138.9; 149.7; 151.8; 171.5. IR (Nujol): cm<sup>-1</sup> 3346, 3000-2800, 1738, 1620, 1463, 1196, 1046, 963, 820 760. MS: *m/e* (relative intensity) 409 ([M-1], 15), 309 (20), 179 (25), 161 (100), 134 (8), 113 (25), 77 (35), 70 (85). HRMS Calculated for C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>18</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: 409.0362. Found: 409.0363. [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = - 60.1° (*c* = 0.3, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

**N-[4-(Fmoc)amino(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonylamino)benzoyl] pyrrolidine-2-methanol (148)**

An aqueous solution of NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (0.6 g, 5.67 mmol, in 20 mL of H<sub>2</sub>O) was added to a solution of **147** (0.94 g, 2.3 mmol) in THF (20 mL). The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and Fmoc-Cl (0.65 g, 2.5 mmol) was added in small portions. After addition the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 2 hours at room temperature. (TLC: ethyl acetate /petroleum ether 50/50). The reaction mixture was acidified with dilute HCl (1N) and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 20 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and evaporated and the resulting yellow oil thus obtained was purified by flash chromatography to afford the product (1.03 g, 72%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.68 (m, 2H); 1.84 (m, 1H); 2.11 (m, 1H); 3.48 (m, 2H); 3.71 (m, 1H); 3.87 (m, 1H); 4.19 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H); 4.40 (m, 2H); 4.45 (d, *J* = 6.78 Hz, 2H); 4.73 (d, *J* = 12.1, 1H); 4.78 (d, *J* = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 7.2 - 7.8 (m, 11H); 8.04 (bs, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8

MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  25.1; 28.1; 46.8; 51.6; 60.8; 65.7; 67.1; 74.3; 95.2; 109.9; 112.3; 118.3; 120.0; 124.9; 127.1; 127.8; 129.3; 137.5; 140.9; 141.2; 143.6; 151.8; 153.2; 170.3. IR (Nujol): cm<sup>-1</sup> 3301, 3000-2800, 1738, 1599, 1525, 1451, 1224, 1056, 985, 758, 740, 667. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 632 (M<sup>+</sup>), 409 (15), 309 (20), 179 (25), 161 (100), 134 (8), 113 (25), 77 (35), 70 (85).  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -70.3^\circ$  ( $c = 0.25$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

10 **(11S,11aS)-8-(Fmoc)amino-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (149)**

A solution of DMSO (0.31 ml, 4.4 mmol) in of dry dichloromethane (10 mL) was slowly added (over 30 minutes) to a solution of oxalyl chloride (2.2 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (11.1 mL) at -45°C. The mixture was allowed to stir for 15 minutes followed by the addition of a solution of **148** (1 g, 1.58 mmol) in of dry dichloromethane (15 ml), keeping the temperature below -40°C. After further 60 minutes at -45°C, a solution of triethylamine (0.88 ml 6.32 mmol) in dichloromethane (6 mL) was added and the reaction mixture allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with water (50 mL), dilute HCl (1N, 50 mL) and brine (50 mL). Evaporation of solvent afforded the crude product which was purified by flash chromatography (ethyl acetate/petroleum ether 50/50). Removal of excess eluent furnished the product as a pale yellow oil (0.81 g, 82%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.96 - 2.16 (m, 4H); 3.47 - 3.56 (m, 3H); 3.6 (m, 1H); 4.1 - 4.28 (m, 3H); 4.46 (d,  $J = 6.15$  Hz, 2H); 5.01 (d,  $J = 12.1$  Hz, 1H); 5.64 (d,  $J = 12.1$  Hz 1H); 7.22 - 7.76 (m, 11H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  22.9; 28.7; 46.4; 46.9; 59.9; 67.0; 75.1; 86.0; 94.8; 117.7; 119.6; 120.1; 124.9; 127.9; 129.8; 134.9; 140.8; 141.3; 143.5; 153.0; 154.1; 166.7. IR (Nujol): cm<sup>-1</sup> 3282, 3000-2800, 1713, 1610, 1533, 1451, 1220, 1058, 908, 735, 647 MS: m/e (relative intensity) 631 ([M+2], 1), 196 (5), 178 (100), 152 (5), 89 (7), 70 (10). HRMS Calculated for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>26</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: 629.0887. Found: 629.0887.  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +58.7^\circ$  ( $c = 0.5$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

**(11S,11aS)-8-amino-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2',2',2'-trichloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (150)**

The protected carbinolamine **149** (0.8 g, 1.3 mmol) was added to a 5% solution of piperidine in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (12 mL, 5 eq. of piperidine). The mixture was allowed to stir for 12 hours, extracted with water (2 x 50 mL) and the organic phase was evaporated under reduced pressure to yield a pale yellow oil (0.24 g, 50%): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.9 - 2.2 (m, 4H); 3.45 - 3.7 (m, 3H); 4.26 (d, J = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 4.55 (m, 3H); 5.18 (d, J = 12.1 Hz, 1H); 5.61 (d, J = 10.3 Hz, 1H); 6.61 (s, 1H); 6.69 (d, J = 7.3 Hz, 1H); 7.56 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 23.0; 28.7; 46.3; 59.8; 74.9; 95.1; 114.8; 116.5; 130.4; 135.3; 154.4; 167.3. IR (Nujol): cm<sup>-1</sup> 3340, 3224, 3000-2800, 1714, 1602, 1460, 1311, 1208, 1141, 1061, 826, 759, 665. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 407 (M<sup>+</sup>, 40), 381 (5), 340 (10), 309 (25), 161 (100), 134 (15), 105 (15), 70 (80). HRMS Calculated for C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>16</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: 407.0206. Found: 407.0206. [α]<sub>D</sub><sup>25</sup> = + 47.8° (c = 0.5, CHCl<sub>3</sub>).

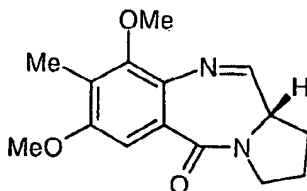
**20 Synthesis of (11aS)-8-amino-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (151)**

Cd/Pb couple (5 eq, 0.34 g) was added portion wise to a vigorously stirred solution of **150** (0.2 g, 0.5 mmol) in THF (10 mL) and aqueous ammonium acetate (10 mL). Stirring was allowed to continue for a further 2 hours at room temperature and the reaction mixture was poured into ethyl acetate (100 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated to yield the crude product which was subjected to flash chromatography (silica gel, 5% MeOH, 95% CHCl<sub>3</sub>). Removal of excess eluent afforded the product as a white solid (26 mg, 53% yield): <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 1.6 - 2.2 (m, 4H); 3.2 - 3.4 (m, 2H); 3.5 (m, 1H); 5.0 (m, 2H); 6.05 (m, 1H); 6.25 (m, 1H); 7.43 (m, 1H), 7.75 (m, 1H). IR (Nujol): cm<sup>-1</sup> 3304, 3000-2800, 1613, 1457, 1377, 1244, 1202, 1122, 1072, 825, 759, 721. MS: m/e (relative intensity) 215 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 186 (15), 178 (10),

171

146 (10), 119 (25), 91 (15), 70 (30), 65 (5). HRMS Calculated for  $C_{12}H_{13}N_3O$ : 215.1058. Found: 215.1059.  $[\alpha]^{25} = +163.3^\circ$  ( $c = 0.2$ ,  $CHCl_3$ ).

**Example 3(m) : Synthesis of (11aS)-8-methyl-7,9-dimethoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (194) (see Figure 25)**



**Methyl 4-methyl-3,5-dimethoxybenzoate (187)**

Concentrated sulphuric acid (1 mL), was added dropwise to a solution of 4-methyl-3,5-dimethoxybenzoic acid (**186**) (5.01 g, 25.56 mmol) in refluxing methanol (20 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at reflux for a further 5 hours and then cooled to room temperature and concentrated to a third of its original volume. The concentrate was poured onto crushed ice (c. 150 mL) and allowed to stand for 30 minutes. The aqueous mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100 mL) and the combined organic phase washed with distilled water (3 x 100 mL), brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous  $MgSO_4$ . Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded the product as a beige solid (**187**) (4.865 g, 23.17 mmol, 91%);  $^1H$  NMR (270 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  7.21 (s, 2H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.86 (s, 6H), 2.13 (s, 3H);  $^{13}C$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  171.57, 167.28, 158.16, 158.10, 128.23, 120.39, 105.20, 104.70, 55.85, 52.13, 8.77, 8.66.

**Methyl 2-nitro-4-methyl-3,5-dimethoxybenzoate (188)**

Finely ground copper nitrate ( $Cu(NO_3)_2$ , 5.37 g, 28.57 mmol) was added portionwise to a vigorously stirred solution of **187** (4.8 g, 22.86 mmol) in acetic anhydride (30 mL), whilst keeping the reaction temperature below  $40^\circ C$ . The reaction mixture was stirred



for 2 hours and then poured onto crushed ice (800 mL). The aqueous mixture was left to stir for 1 hour and the product collected by filtration to afford a yellow solid (**188**) (4.88 g, 18.945 mmol); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.20 (br s, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 3.84 (s, 3H), 2.21 (s, 3H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 163.70, 159.01, 150.89, 140.08, 127.06, 121.54, 106.98, 62.88, 56.21, 52.98, 9.82.

**2-Nitro-4-methyl-3,5-dimethoxybenzoic acid (189)**

Potassium hydroxide (3.71 g, 66.31 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of **188** (4.83 g, 18.95 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (80 mL) and the reaction mixture heated at reflux for 3 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool and acidified to pH 2 with 1 N HCl and the solid precipitate was filtered and washed with water (50 mL) and left to air dry to afford the product as a yellow-beige solid (**189**) (3.69 g, 15.31 mmol, 81%); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 13.88 (br s, 1H), 7.23 (s, 1H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 2.14 (s, 3H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 164.09, 158.65, 150.09, 139.38, 125.70, 122.50, 107.24, 62.78, 56.34, 9.62.

**N-(4-Methyl-3,5-dimethoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl) pyrrolidine-2-methanol (190)**

A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a stirred solution of **189** (3.96 g, 15.32 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (2.14 g, 16.85 mmol) in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight and the resulting acid chloride used directly in the next stage of the procedure. 4-methyl-3,5-dimethoxy-2-nitro-benzoyl chloride in anhydrous DCM (50 mL) was added dropwise over 0.5 hours to a stirring solution of pyrrolidine methanol (1.55 g, 15.32 mmol, 1.1 eq) and TEA (3.87 g, 38.3 mmol, 2.5 eq) in anhydrous DCM (50 mL) at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with 1 N HCl (2 x 100 mL), and the organic layer was washed with distilled H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 100 mL), brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of excess solvent yielded a yellow

glass (**190**) (2.13 g, 6.56 mmol, 43% - 2 steps); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 6.61 (s, 1H), 4.30-4.28 (m, 1H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 3.83-3.68 (m, 2H), 3.46-3.26 (m, 2H), 2.19 (s, 3H), 1.94-1.68 (m, 4H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 167.85, 161.15, 152.62, 135.70, 132.32, 123.17, 103.70, 65.87, 62.61, 61.37, 56.36, 50.20, 28.41, 24.50, 9.34.

**N-(2-Amino-4-methyl-3,5-dimethoxybenzoyl) pyrrolidine-2-methanol (191)**

Hydrazine hydrate (1.26 g, 39.37 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of **190** (2.13 g, 6.56 mmol) in methanol (50 mL) gently refluxing over Raney nickel (1 g, slurry). The resulting vigorous evolution of hydrogen gas subsided after approximately 10 minutes and the reaction was deemed to be complete by TLC after 2 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the solvent evaporated. Distilled water (100 mL) was added to the residue, and the aqueous mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL) and the combined organic phase washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 100 mL) and brine (3 x 100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of the solvent afforded the product as a brown glass (**191**) (1.91 g, 6.50 mmol) which was protected directly as the troc-carbamate.

**N-(4-Methyl-3,5-dimethoxy-2-[trichloroethyloxycarbonylamino]-benzoyl) pyrrolidine-2-methanol (192)**

A solution of 2,2,2-trichloroethyl chloroformate (1.38 g, 6.5 mmol) in distilled DCM (25 mL) was added dropwise over 0.5 hours to a solution of anhydrous pyridine (1.03 g, 13 mmol) and **191** (1.91 g, 6.5 mmol) in distilled DCM (25 mL) at 0°C. After 6 hours at room temperature, the reaction mixture was diluted with anhydrous DCM (100 mL) and washed with 1 N HCl (2 x 100 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of the solvent yielded a brown oil which was purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel, EtOAc) to afford the product (**192**) as a yellow glass (2.13 g, 4.53 mmol, 70%); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.59 (br s, 1H), 6.56 (s, 1H), 4.78 (br s, 2H), 4.25-4.23 (m, 1H), 3.82-3.79 (m, 3H+1H), 3.69-3.63 (m, 3H+1H),

174

3.52 (m, 1H), 3.42-3.33 (m, 1H), 2.13-2.06 (m, 3H+1H), 1.88-1.64 (m, 3H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 169.95, 156.82, 156.67, 154.02, 153.34, 131.92, 121.74, 119.33, 103.94, 95.43, 74.42, 66.04, 61.01, 60.60, 60.27, 55.73, 50.46, 28.53, 24.47, 9.13.

5     **(11S,11aS)-8-Methyl-7,9-dimethoxy-11-hydroxy-10-N-(2',2',2'-tri-chloroethoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4] benzodiazepin-5-one (193)**

Anhydrous DMSO (1.006 g, 12.87 mmol) in dry DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise over 5 minutes to a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride  
10     (3.19 mL of a 2 N solution in DCM, 6.373 mmol) under a nitrogen atmosphere at -50°C. After stirring for 5 minutes, a solution of **192** (2.13 g, 4.53 mmol) in dry DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise over 45 minutes to the reaction mixture, which was then stirred for a further 45 minutes at -50°C. TEA (1.83 g; 18.13 mmol) was added  
15     dropwise to the mixture over 0.5 hours and stirred for a further 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was left to warm to room temperature, diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL) and the phases allowed to separate. The organic phase was washed with 1 N HCl (2 x 50 mL), water (2 x 50 mL), brine (2 x 50 mL) and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The  
20     solvent was evaporated to afford the product (**193**) as an off-white glass (1.84 g, 3.93 mmol; 87 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.05 (s, 1H) (minor rotamer 1:4, visible at d 7.06), 5.58 (dd, J = 3.84 Hz, J = 9.89, 1H) (minor rotamer 1:4, visible at d 5.68, J = 4.21 Hz, J = 9.53), 4.71 (d, J = 11.72 Hz, 1H), 4.56 (d, J = 11.73 Hz,  
25     1H), 4.11 (d, J = 3.85 Hz, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 3.79-3.47 (m, 2H), 2.21-1.99 (m, 4H), 2.16 (s, 3H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) rotamers δ 166.82, 158.31, 157.92, 155.65, 155.43, 131.52, 124.17, 123.99, 121.62, 105.90, 105.64, 105.38, 94.53, 86.17, 85.93, 75.80, 75.23, 61.77, 61.65, 59.98, 59.58, 59.40, 55.88,  
30     55.79, 46.56, 46.38, 28.70, 28.62, 22.94, 10.14, 9.75.

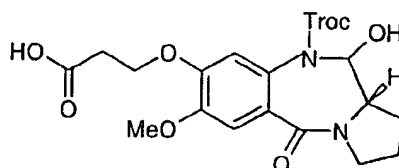
**8-Methyl-7,9-dimethoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydropyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (194)**

10% Cd/Pb couple (1.34 g; 10.7 mmol Cd) was added to a rapidly stirring solution of **193** (1 g; 2.14 mmol) in a mixture of THF (15

mL) and 1 N  $\text{NH}_4\text{OAc}$  (15 mL). After 3.5 hours the reaction was diluted with EtOAc (150 mL). The solution was dried over anhydrous  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and the solids were filtered and rinsed with EtOAc (50 mL). Removal of excess solvent yielded the product '(194)' as a white glass (554 mg, 2.021 mmol, 94 %).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (270 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (mixture of imine and methyl ether forms)  $\delta$  7.72 (imine, d,  $J = 4.39$ , 1H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.88-3.51 (m, 3H+2H+1H), 2.37-2.04 (m, 4H), 2.22 (s, 3H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (67.8 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  164.65, 161.41, 156.79, 153.47, 133.87, 126.29, 124.27, 105.71, 60.98, 55.80, 55.70, 53.71, 46.70, 29.52, 29.34, 24.13, 9.33.

#### Example 4 : Synthesis of the C8-Amines

Synthesis of 3-(11-Hydroxy-5-oxo-10-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxocarbonylamino)-(11aS)-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[2,1-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy-2-propenylpropanoate (159) (see Figure 27)



#### **Nitro Di-acid (153)**

14.63 g of (4-carboxy-2-methoxy-5hydroxy-phenoxy) propanoic acid 152 (61 mmol) was added portionwise to 70% nitric acid (100 mL) stirred at 0°C. The reaction was stirred for 1 hour at 0°C then allowed to return to rt. The reaction mixture was then poured onto ice and allowed to stir for 18 h. The solids were then collected by filtration and washed with water. The aqueous layer was then extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 150 mL). The organics were then washed with water and brine and dried with sodium sulphate. The solvent was then removed *in vacuo* to give 153 as a yellow solid, yield = 14.01 g (83%) mp 141°C.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  8.51 (bs, 2H,  $\text{COOH}$ ), 7.57 (s, 1H,  $\text{CHCNO}_2$ ), 7.15 (s, 1H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OCCH}$ ), 4.35 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.41$  Hz,  $\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.99 (s, 1H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 2.86 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.41$  Hz,  $\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ).  $^{13}\text{C}$ -NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  33.93 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 56.42 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 65.20 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 108.27 ( $\text{NO}_2\text{CCH}$ ),

111.26 (CH<sub>3</sub>OCCH), 122.50 (CCOOH), 141.14 (CNO<sub>2</sub>), 149.21 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OC), 152.40 (CH<sub>3</sub>OC), 166.93 (arom. COOH), 172.24 (aliph. COOH). IR (Nujol)  $\nu$  2860, 2620, 1740, 1720, 1590, 1540, 1480, 1390, 1350, 1290, 1230, 1250, 1200, 1060 cm<sup>-1</sup>. EIMS *m/e* (relative intensity): 286 (M<sup>+</sup>, 20), 241 (10), 213 (100), 169 (20), 152 (5), 111 (20), 96 (5), 79 (5), 73 (15), 55 (10). HRMS Calcd. for C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>14</sub>NO<sub>8</sub> = 285.0511 found = 285.0538.

**2-Propene 3-(4-carboxy-2-methoxy-5-nitrophenoxy)propanoate (154)**

A mixture of 3-(4-carboxy-2-methoxy-5-nitrophenoxy)propanoic acid (153) (20 g, 74.3 mmol) and *p*-toluene sulphonic acid monohydrate (2.3 g, 7.4 mmol) in allyl alcohol (240 mL, 3.5 mol) was refluxed for 7 hours then allowed to cool. The allyl alcohol was then removed *in vacuo*, and the residue triturated with dilute HCl acid and collected by filtration. This solid was taken up in EtOAc, and the resulting solution washed with water and brine and dried over sodium sulphate. Evaporation *in vacuo* afforded 154 as a white solid (19.27 g, 84%): mp 128–130 °C; <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  2.92 (t, 2H, *J* = 6.35 Hz); 3.94 (s, 3H); 4.38 (t, 2H, *J* = 6.41 Hz); 4.65 (d, 2H, *J* = 5.61 Hz); 5.27 (dd, 1H, *J*<sub>1</sub> = 1.28 Hz, *J*<sub>2</sub> = 19.42 Hz); 5.33 (dd, 1H, *J*<sub>1</sub> = 1.28 Hz, *J*<sub>2</sub> = 17.04 Hz); 5.92 (m, 1H); 7.15 (s, 1H); 7.45 (s, 1H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  34.1, 56.5, 65.0, 65.4, 108.5, 111.3, 118.3, 122.9, 131.8, 141.1, 149.1, 152.6, 167.1, 170.0; IR (Nujol);  $\nu$  1730, 1630, 1550, 1430, 1390, 1290, 1230, 1190, 1170, 1070, 1030, 1010 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (EI) *m/z* (relative intensity): 325 (M<sup>+</sup>, 19), 251 (3), 213 (2), 196 (3), 211 (3), 113 (19), 91 (4), 71 (9), 55 (6); HRMS: calcd. for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>15</sub>NO<sub>8</sub> 325.0798, found 325.0773.

**Prop-2-enyl 4-(*N*-2*S*-Diethylthiomethylpyrrolidinecarboxy)-2-methoxy-5-nitrophenoxy)propanoate (155)**

2-Propene 3-(4-carboxy-2-methoxy-5-nitrophenoxy)propanoate (154): 5 g, 15.34 mmol), oxalyl chloride (2 mL, 23 mmol) and 5 drops of DMF were stirred in dry THF (100 mL) for 18 h. The solvent was then removed *in vacuo* and the residue dissolved in

dry THF (50 mL). This was added dropwise to a vigorously stirred mixture of (2s)-pyrrolidone-2-caroxaldehyde diethyl thioacetate (3.15 g, 15.34 mmol) and triethylamine (1.86 g, 18.41 mmol). The stirring was continued for 18 h. The solvent was then removed in vacuo and the product purified by flash chromatography eluting with ethyl acetate to give **155** (7.48g, 95%) as a yellow oil. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.74 (s, 1H, OCCHC), 6.83 (s, 1H, MeOCCHC), 5.98-5.86 (m, 1H, CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 5.33 (d, 1H, J = 26.56 Hz, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 5.28 (d, 1H, J = 20.24 Hz, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 4.88 (d, 1H, J = 3.85 Hz, NCHCH), 4.74-4.65 (m, 2H, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>) 4.42 (t, 2H, J = 7.69 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OC), 3.94 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.29-3.21 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>), 2.96 (p, 2H, J = 3.12 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.87-2.67 (m, 4H, SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.32-1.78 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>) 1.38-1.31 (m, 6H, SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>). <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 15.00, 15.13 (SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 24.63 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 26.28, 26.59, 27.22 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 34.13 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 50.19 (NCH<sub>2</sub>), 52.80 (NCHCH), 56.60 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.08 (NCH), 65.13 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 65.64 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 108.70 (arom. CH), 109.47 (arom. CH), 118.55 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 128.58 (CCON), 131.73 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 137.17 (CNO<sub>2</sub>), 147.98 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OC), 154.57 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 166.61 (CON), 170.14 (COO). IR (Nujol) ν = 3550-2720, 3000, 2630, 2200, 1740, 1640, 1580, 1530, 1340, 1280, 1220, 1180, 1050 cm<sup>-1</sup>. MS (EI): m/e (relative intensity): 527 (M<sup>+</sup>, 1), 377 (10), 310 (12), 309 (72), 308 (94), 268 (20), 142 (4). HRMS calcd. for C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>35</sub>O<sub>7</sub>N<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub> = 527.1875, found = 527.1885.

**5-Amino-3-(4-(2-diethylthiomethyl-(2S)-perhydro-1-pyrroloylcarbonyl)-2-methoxyphenyloxy)2-propenylpropanoate (156)** **8** (7.21 g, 14.05 mmol) and Tin(II) chloride (15.85 g, 76 mmol) was refluxed for 40 minutes in ethyl acetate (100 mL) then allowed to cool. The solvent was then removed in vacuo and the residue was triturated with saturated bicarbonate solution at 0°C. EtOAc (50 mL) was added and the reaction stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was then filtered through Celite and the filter cake washed with ethyl acetate. The combined organics were then washed with water and brine, dried with sodium sulphate and the solvent removed in vacuo. The product was purified using flash chromatography eluting with 5%

MeOH in dichloromethane to give a yellow oil, yield = 5.87g (86%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 6.82 (s, 1H, arom. CH), 6.28 (s, 1H, arom. CH), 5.99-5.85 (m, 1H, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 5.31 (dd, 1H, J = 1.28 Hz, 27.66 Hz, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 5.26 (dd, 1H, J = 1.28 Hz, 20.70 Hz, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 4.71-4.62 (m, 5H, including doublet at 4.62, 2H, J = 5.49 Hz, NH<sub>2</sub> + NCHCH, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 4.27 (t, 2H, J = 6.59 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.92, (m, 1H, NCH), 3.74 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.66-3.57 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>) 2.89 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.83-2.64 (m, 4H, SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.28-1.80 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.25 (m, 6H, SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 14.20 (SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 26.55, 27.23 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 34.27 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 53.20 (NCHCH), 56.08 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.10 (NCH), 60.39 (NCH<sub>2</sub>), 64.20 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 64.41 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 102.26 (arom. CH), 113.71 (arom. CH), 118.40 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 131.93 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 141.03 (CNH<sub>2</sub>), 141.74 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OC), 154.56 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 169.69 (CON), 170.53 (COO). IR (neat liquid film) 3500-3000, 3460, 3400, 2970, 1740, 1650, 1535, 1470, 1345, 1290, 1225, 1190 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (EI): m/e (relative intensity): 482 (M<sup>+</sup>, 4), 347 (2), 278 (31), 137 (1), 70 (3); HRMS calcd. for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>34</sub>O<sub>5</sub>N<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub> = 482.1909, found = 482.1925.

**3-(4-(2-Diethylthiomethyl-(2S)-perhydro-1-pyrrolylcarbonyl)-2-methoxy-5-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxycarbonylamino)phenyloxy)2-propenylpropanoate (157)**

To a solution of **156** (5.67g, 11.74 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL) was added pyridine (2.02 mL, 23.48 mmol). To this was added dropwise at 0°C a solution of trichloroethyl chloroformate (1.616 mL, 11.74 mmol). The solution was stirred for a further 1 hour at 0°C. The organics were washed with 1 N HCl (3 x 100 mL), water (3 x 100 mL) brine (100 mL), dried over magnesium sulphate and the solvent removed in vacuo to give a brown oil (6.8g, 88%) <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.14 (bs, 1H, NH), 7.88 (bs, 1H, CHCNH), 6.93 (s, 1H, MeOCCHC), 5.99-5.86 (m, 1H, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 5.31 (dt, 1H, J = 1.47 Hz, 27.84 Hz OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 5.25 (dt, 1H, J = 1.29 Hz, 21.61 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 4.89-4.77 (m, 4H, including doublet 1H, J = 1.28 Hz, CHCHSEt, NH, CH<sub>2</sub>-TrOC), 4.62 (d, 2H, J = 1.28 Hz, OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 3.81 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.60 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>), 2.91 (d, 2H, J = 6.42 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.84-2.61 (m, 4H, SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 1.37-1.23 (m, 6H, SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 170.33 (ester CO), 168.50 (CON),

151.94 (OCO), 150.29 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 144.52 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 131.93 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 131.35 (CNH), 118.29 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 112.21 (arom. CH), 105.51 (arom. CH), 95.27 (CCl<sub>3</sub>), 76.24 (CH<sub>2</sub>TrOC), 74.39 (CH<sub>2</sub>TrOC), 65.42 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.14 (NCH), 56.30 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.00 (NCHCHSET), 34.27 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 27.30, 26.71, 26.43, 25.24 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 15.27, 14.87, 14.18 (SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>). MS (EI): m/e (relative intensity): 658, 656 (M<sup>+</sup>, 1), 508 (1), 373 (6), 305 (5), 304 (27), 192 (5), 70 (12).

10 **3-(11-Hydroxy-5-oxo-10-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxocarbonylamino)-(11aS)-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[2,1-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy-2-propenylpropanoate (158)**

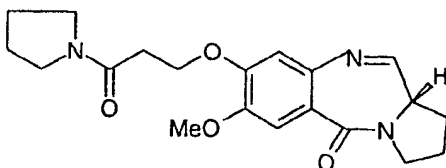
A solution of **157** (6.8g, 10.34 mmol) in acetonitrile/water (4:1, 200 mL) was treated with calcium carbonate (2.585g, 25.85 mmol) and mercuric(II) chloride (7.00g, 25.85 mmol) and the solution was stirred for 18 h. The reaction was then filtered through Celite and the filter pad washed with ethyl acetate. The organics were collected and washed with water (3 x 50 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the resulting product was purified by flash chromatography eluting with ethyl acetate to give the product as a yellow oil (3.67 g, 64%) <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.25 (arom. CH), 6.86 (s, 1H, arom. CH), 6.00-5.85 (m, 1H, CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 5.67 (d, 1H, J = 9.71 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>) 5.37-5.20 (m, 3H, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub> + OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 4.65 (d, 2H, J = 5.67 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.36-4.22 (m, 3H, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O + NCHOH), 3.90 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.72-3.47 (m, 3H, NCH + NCH<sub>2</sub>), 2.91 (t, J = 6.41 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O) 2.29-2.00 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>) <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 170.33 (ester carbonyl CO), 166.17 (CON), 154.4 (OCO), 149.88 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 148.93 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 131.86 (CH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 127.48 (arom. CN), 126.24 (CCON), 118.42 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 114.48 (arom. CH), 110.82 (arom. CH), 95.09 (CCl<sub>3</sub>), 86.42 (NCHOH), 74.96 (TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 65.47 (OCH<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>), 64.43 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.13 (NCH), 56.14 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 46.44 (NCH<sub>2</sub>), 34.26 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 28.64 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), MS (EI) m/z (relative intensity): = 552 (M<sup>+</sup> 10), 550 (10), 374 (2), 368 (5), 304 (15), 192 (8), 70 (24), 55(24). HRMS calcd. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>25</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>8</sub>Cl, = 552.0651, found 3 peaks due to chlorine 552.0646, 550.676, 554.0617.



3-(11-Hydroxy-5-oxo-7-methoxy-10-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxocarbonylamino)-(11aS)-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[2,1-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxypropanoic acid (159)

- 5 A solution of **158** (3.5 g, 6.35 mmol) was dissolved in ethanol (100 mL). To this was added Tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (350 mg, 0.303 mmol) and the solution refluxed for 30 minutes until the reaction was complete by TLC monitoring. The reaction was then allowed to
- 10 cool and the filtered through Celite. The EtOH was then removed in vacuo to give the crude material as a yellow solid which was used directly in the next steps. <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.22 (s, 1H, OCCHCN), 7.01 (s, 1H, MeOCCHC), 6.27 (bs, COOH), 5.67 (d, 1H, J = 9.5 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.06 (d, 1H, J = 12.09 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.29-
- 15 4.11 (m, 2H, CHOH), 3.85 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.71 (t, 2H, J = 6.97 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.51 (m, 1H, NCH), 2.80 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>), 2.12-1.99 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.21 (t, 2H, J = 6.96 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O) <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ = 174.27 (acid CH), 167.34 (CON), 154.20 (OCO), 149.78 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 148.74 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 133.79 (arom. CH), 132.16 (arom.
- 20 CH), 128.66 (arom. CN), 125.87 (CCON), 95.06 (CCl<sub>3</sub>), 86.53 (NCHCHOH), 74.95 (CH<sub>2</sub>-TrOC), 60.67 (NCH), 58.24 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.04 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 46.44 (NCH<sub>2</sub>), 35.24 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 28.59 (NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 23.08 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)

Example 4(a) : 3-(7-methoxy-5-oxo(11aS)-2,3,5,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-perhydro-1-pyrrolyl-1-propanone (161) (see Figure 28)



3-(11-Hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-10-(2,2,2-  
 5 trichloroethyloxocarbonylamino)-(11aS)-2,3,5,10,11,11a-  
 hexahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[2,1-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy-1-  
 perhydro-1-pyrrolyl-1-propanone (160)

To a solution of **159** (100 mg, 0.196 mmol) in dichloromethane was  
 added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide  
 10 hydrochloride (44 mg, 0.23 mmol) and 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine  
 (5 mg, 0.04 mmol) and the solution stirred for 1h. To the  
 reaction was added pyrrolidine (16.36 mg, 0.23 mmol) and the  
 reaction stirred for a further 2h. The solvent was then removed  
 in vacuo and the compound purified by flash chromatography  
 15 eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to give the product  
 as a yellow oil, yield = 56 mg, 51%. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.25  
 (OCCH), 6.90 (s, 1H, MeOCCHC), 5.66 (d, 1H, J = 5.49 Hz, TrOC-  
 CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.16 (d, 1H, J = 12.09 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.84-4.74 (m, 2H,  
 CHOH, C11aH), 4.35-4.23 (m, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.90 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>),  
 20 3.73-3.67 (m, 1H, NCH), 3.53-3.44 (m, 6H C-ring NCH<sub>2</sub>,  
 pyrrolidine- N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 2.92-2.76 (m, 2H CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.11-1.85 (8H,  
 C-ring NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub> + pyrrolidine-NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ  
 168.62 (amide CO), 167.05 (CON), 154.31 (OCO), 149.94 (COCH<sub>3</sub>),  
 148.56 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 127.76 (arom. CN), 125.95 (CCON), 114.14  
 25 (arom. CH), 110.49 (arom. CH), 95.04 (CCl<sub>3</sub>), 86.48 (NCHCHOH),  
 74.98 (CH<sub>2</sub>-TROC), 65.15 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.20 (NCH), 56.13 (OCH<sub>3</sub>),  
 46.85, 46.44, 45.76, 34.47, 28.60, 26.02, 24.42 (various N-  
 (X)CH<sub>2</sub>), 23.04 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); FABMS m/z (relative intensity) 564 (M<sup>+</sup>  
 1), 550(3), 549 (2), 548 (8), 547 (2), 546 (8), 279 (2), 192  
 30 (4), 126 (18), 98 (6).

**3-(7-methoxy-5-oxy(11aS)-2,3,5,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-perhydro-1-pyrrolyl-1-propanone (161)**

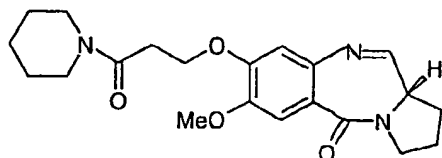
**Method A:** To a solution of **160** (100 mg, 0.164 mmol) in  
5 dichloromethane (5 mL) was added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (38 mg, 0.2 mmol) and pyrrolidine (14 mg, 0.2 mmol) and the reaction stirred for 18 h. The mixture was then dilute with dichloromethane (100 mL) and washed with water (3 x 50 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate  
10 solution (3 x 50 mL) and brine (50 mL). The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the product purified by flash chromatography eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to give the product **161** as a white solid (yield 26.3 mg, 40%)

**Method B:** To a solution of **160** (100 mg, 0.164 mmol) in  
15 dichloromethane (5 mL) was added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (38 mg, 0.2 mmol) and the reaction stirred for 3 hours. The reaction was then treated with tetrabutylammonium fluoride (200  $\mu$ L of a 1.0 M solution in THF, 0.2 mmol) and stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction was  
20 then treated with pyrrolidine (14 mg, 0.2 mmol) and stirred for 18 h. The mixture was then dilute with dichloromethane (100 mL) and washed with water (3 x 50 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (3 x 50 mL) and brine (50 mL). The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the product purified by flash chromatography  
25 eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to give the product **161** as a white solid (yield = 54.2 mg, 82%)

**Method C:** To a solution of **160** (56 mg, 0.1 mmol) in THF (3 mL) was added 1 M ammonium acetate solution (2 mL) and the reaction mixture stirred. To the solution was added 10% Cd/Pb couple  
30 (0.5 mmol, 62.4 mg) and the reaction was stirred for 90 minutes. The reaction was filtered and diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL). The solution was dried with magnesium sulphate and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. the product as then purified by flash chromatography eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to

give the compound as a white solid (yield = 21 mg, 56%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.66 (m, 1H, J = 4.39 Hz, N=CH), 7.50 (s, 1H, arom. CH), 6.88 (s, 1H arom. CH), 4.42 (t, 2H, J = 6.96 Hz, OOCCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.90-3.44 (m, 5H, pyrrolidine CH<sub>2</sub>+NCH), 2.87 (t, 2H, 5.96 Hz, OOCCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.28-2.33 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.10-1.87 (m, 8H, C-ring +pyrrolidine CH<sub>2</sub>). 168.58 (amide CO), 164.65 (CON), 162.43 (imine CH), 150.52 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 147.61 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 140.76 (arom. CN), 120.33 (CCON), 111.54 (arom. CH), 110.61 (arom. CH), 65.20 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 56.21 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.7 (NCH), 46.77, 46.67, 45.69, 34.40, 29.62, 26.06, 24.54, (CH<sub>2</sub>), 24.19 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>) MS (EI): m/e (relative intensity): 371 (M<sup>+</sup>, 10), 246 (10), 245 (5), 231 (3), 126 (18), 98 (2), 70 (5), 55 (3); HRMS calcd. for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>15</sub>O<sub>4</sub>N<sub>3</sub> = 371.1845, found 371.1788.

**Example 4(b) : 3-(7-methoxy-5-oxo(11aS)-2,3,5,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-piperidino-1-propanone (163) (see Figure 28)**



**3-(11-Hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-10-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxocarbonylamino)-(11aS)-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[2,1-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-perhydro-1-piperidino-1-propanone (162)**

To a solution of **159** (100 mg, 0.196 mmol) in dichloromethane was added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (44 mg, 0.23 mmol) and 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine (5 mg, 0.04 mmol) and the solution stirred for 1h. To the reaction was added piperidine (25 μL, 0.23 mmol) and the reaction stirred for a further 2h. The solvent was then removed in vacuo and the compound purified by flash chromatography eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to give the product as a yellow oil, yield = 94 mg, 84%). <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.25 (s, 1H, OCCHCN), 6.90 (s, 1H, MeOCCHC), 5.65 (d, 1H, J = 9.71 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.17 (d, 1H, J = 11.94 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.37-4.24

184

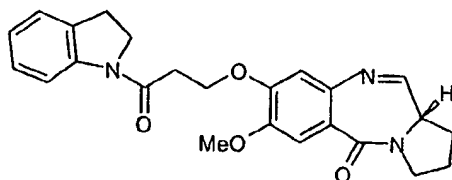
(m, 4H, CHOH + CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.91 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.73-3.67 (m, 1H, NCH), 3.54-3.45 (m, 6H, NCH<sub>2</sub>, piperidine-N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 2.99-2.83 (m, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.13-2.00 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>) 1.67-1.56 (m, 6H, piperidine-CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 168.22 (amide CO), 167.11 (CON), 154.38 (OCO), 149.96 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 148.57 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 127.74 (arom. CN), 125.94 (CCON), 114.19 (arom. CH), 110.44 (arom. CH), 95.02 (CCl<sub>3</sub>), 86.38 (NCHCHOH), 74.96 (CH<sub>2</sub>-TROC), 65.38 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.33 (NCH), 56.08 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 46.77, 46.44, 42.75, 32.73, 28.60, 26.33, 25.48, 24.44 (various N-(X)CH<sub>2</sub>), 23.05 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); MS (EI) m/z (relative intensity): = 579 (1), 577 (1), 331 (1), 278 (1), 246 (1), 192 (4), 140 (32), 113 (2), 112 (2), 97 (1), 84 (3), 77 (3), 70 (7), 69 (4), 55 (4), HRMS calcd. for C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>30</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>7</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub> = 579.1120 found 579.1066

**3-(7-methoxy-5-oxy(11aS)-2,3,5,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-piperidino-1-propanone (163)**

To a solution of **162** (94 mg, 0.162 mmol) in THF (3 mL) was added 1 M ammonium acetate solution (2 mL) and the reaction mixture stirred. To the solution was added 10% Cd/Pb couple (0.81 mmol, 100 mg) and the reaction was stirred for 90 minutes. The reaction was filtered and diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL). The solution was dried with magnesium sulphate and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. the product as then purified by flash chromatography eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to give the compound as a white solid (yield = 25 mg, 39%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.67 (d, 1H, J = 4.4 Hz, N=CH), 7.51 (s, 1H, OCCHCN), 6.89 (s, 1H, MeOCCHC), 4.42 (t, 2H, J = 7.14 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.93 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.90-3.44 (m, 5H, NCH, NCH<sub>2</sub>, piperidine-N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 2.73 (t, 2H, J = 7.32 Hz CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.33-2.29 (m, 2H, C-ring CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.11-2.02 (m, 2H, C-ring CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.62-1.59 (m, 6H, piperidine CH<sub>2</sub>), <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 168.19 (amide CO), 164.66 (imine CH), 162.43 (CON), 150.52 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 147.61 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 140.70 (arom. CN), 120.31 (CCON), 111.51 (arom. CH), 110.58 (arom. CH), 65.44 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.11 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.73 (NCH), 46.70, 46.39, 42.69, 32.72, 29.62, 26.38, 25.52, 24.40 (various N-(X)CH<sub>2</sub>), 24.19 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); MS (EI): m/e (relative intensity): 385

(M<sup>+</sup>, 6), 246 (8), 245 (3), 231 (3), 140 (15), 138 (5), 97 (5), 84 (3); HRMS calcd. for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>27</sub>O<sub>4</sub>N<sub>3</sub> = 385.2002, found 385.2058.

Example 4(c) : 1, (2,3-dihydro-1H-indolyl)-3-(7-methoxy-5-  
oxy(11aS)-2,3,5,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-  
a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-propanone (165) (see Figure 28)



1-(2,3-Dihydro-1H-1-indolyl)-3-(11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-10-(2,2,2-trichloroethyloxocarbonylamino)-(11aS)-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[2,1-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-propanone (164)

- 10 To a solution of 159 (100 mg, 0.196 mmol) in DMF was added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (44 mg, 0.23 mmol) and 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine (5 mg, 0.04 mmol) and the solution stirred for 1h. To the reaction was added indoline (27.4 mg, 0.23 mmol) and the reaction stirred for a further 8h.
- 15 The solvent was then removed *in vacuo* and the compound purified by flash chromatography eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to give the product as a yellow oil (yield = 71 mg, 61%). <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 1.99-2.12 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.20 (t, J = 8.42 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.71-5.00, (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>, NCH, CHOH), 3.89 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 4.18-4.09 (m, 2H, indole-CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.27 (d, 2H, J = 11.90 Hz, indole-CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.43 (t, J = 6.23 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.16 (d, 1H, J = 11.91 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.30 (s, 1H, OH), 5.66 (d, 1H, J = 9.89 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 7.20-6.93 (m, 5H, indole-CH, arom CH), 8.18 (d, 1H, J = 8.25 Hz, indole-CH); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 168.24 (CON), 166.97 (CON), 154.36 (OCO), 149.91, COCH<sub>3</sub>), 148.65 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 132.14, 131.99 (indolyl ring junction), 128.61, 128.43 (indole-CH), 127.52, (arom. CN), 124.61 (CCON), 114.20 (arom. CH), 110.58 (arom. CH) 95.02 (CCl<sub>3</sub>), 86.43 (NCHCHOH), 75.01 ((TrOC-CH), 64.89 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.13 (NCH), 56.11 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 48.11 (indole-CH<sub>2</sub>), 46.43 (NCH<sub>2</sub>), 35.64, 28.64, 27.97, (CH<sub>2</sub>), 23.03 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O);
- 20
- 25
- 30

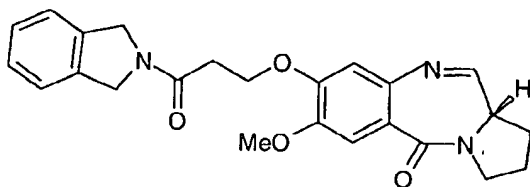
MS (EI) m/z (relative intensity): = 595 (M<sup>+</sup> 1), 415 (1), 365 (1), 246 (2), 192 (13), 174 (11), 173 (7), 119 (17), 118 (10), 70 (13).

**Iso-indoline (2,3,-dihydro-1H-isoindole)** <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.22 (m, 4H, arom CH), 4.26 (s, 4H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.08 (bs, 1H, NH), <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 140.37, 140.36 (ring junctions), 127.15, 126.90, 122.60, 122.51, 122.33 (arom. CH), 52.31 (CH<sub>2</sub>).

**1, (2,3-dihydro-1H-indolyl)-3-(7-methoxy-5-oxy(11aS)-2,3,5,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-propanone (165)**

To a solution of **164** (71 mg, 0.116 mmol) in THF (3 mL) was added 1 M ammonium acetate solution (2 mL) and the reaction mixture stirred. To the solution was added 10% Cd/Pb couple (0.58 mmol, 72 mg) and the reaction was stirred for 90 minutes. The reaction was filtered and diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL). The solution was dried with magnesium sulphate and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. The product as then purified by flash chromatography eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to give the compound as a white solid (yield = 26 mg, 54%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.66 (d, 1H, J = 4.58 Hz, CH=N), 7.50 (s, arom. CH), 7.19 (m, 4H indolyl arom. CH), 6.91 (s, 1H, arom. CH), 4.48 (m, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.18-4.19 (m, 2H, indolyl CH<sub>2</sub>), 3.91 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.88-3.44 (m, 3H, NCH, +indolyl CH<sub>2</sub>), 3.02 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.30-2.28 (m, 2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>), 2.17-2.05 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 168.31 (amide CO), 164.61 (CON), 162.47, (imine CH), 147.59 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 140.70 (arom. CN), 127.53, 124.59, 123.87, (indolyl arom. CH), 120.44 (CCON), 117.03 (indolyl arom. CH), 11.56 (arom. CH), 110.61 (arom. CH), 64.80 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 56.14 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.70 (NCH), 48.11, 46.69, 35.50, 29.60, 28.67, 28.00 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 24.19 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>).

Example 4(d) : 1-(2,3-dihydro-1H-2-isoindolyl)-3-(7-methoxy-5-oxo(11aS)-2,3,5,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-propanone (167) (see Figure 28)



5 1-(2,3-dihydro-1H-2-isoindolyl)-3-(11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-10- (2,2,2-trichloroethyloxocarbonylamino)-(11aS)-2,3,5,10,11,11a-hexahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[2,1-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)-1-propanone (166)

To a solution of **159** (100 mg, 0.196 mmol) in DMF was added 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (44 mg, 0.23 mmol) and 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine (5 mg, 0.04 mmol) and the solution stirred for 1h. To the reaction was added indoline (27.4 mg, 0.23 mmol) and the reaction stirred for a further 8h. The solvent was then removed in vacuo and the compound purified by flash chromatography eluting with 5% methanol in  
15 dichloromethane to give the product as a yellow oil (yield = 75 mg, 64%). <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.29-7.20 (m, 5H, isoindole arom. + arom.CH), 6.91 (s, 1H, arom CH), 5.66 (d, 1H, J = 9.7 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>) 5.30 (s, 1H, OH), 5.19 (d, 1H, J = 9.7 Hz, TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.94 (m, 2H, isoindolyl CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.79 (s, 2H, isoindolyl CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.38 (t, 20 2H, J = 6.42 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.25, (d, 1H, J = 11.91 Hz, C11-H), 3.81-3.40 (2H, NCH<sub>2</sub>), 3.03-2.85 (m, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.11-1.98 (m, 4H, NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 169.17 (CON), 167.02 (CON), 154.27 (OCO), 149.91 (COCH<sub>3</sub>), 148.64 (COCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 136.19, 136.11 (isoindolyl ring junction), 128.61, 127.88 (isoindolyl CH), 25 127.78 (arom. CN), 127.58, (CCON), 114.28 (arom. CH), 110.54 (arom. CH), 95.09 (CCl<sub>3</sub>), 86.51 (NCHCHOH), 74.98 (TrOC-CH<sub>2</sub>), 65.21 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.23 (NCH), 56.05 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.14, 52.81 (isoindolyl CH<sub>2</sub>), 46.43, (NCH<sub>2</sub>), 34.31, 29.68, 28.60 (N<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>), 23.03 (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O); FABMS m/z (relative intensity): = 612 (1), 596 30 (1), 594 (1), 279 (1), 192 (1), 174 (8), 146 (5), 118 (13), 91



(2), 55 (3). FABHRMS found compound minus OH i.e.  $C_{27}H_{27}N_3O_6Cl_3$  = 595.1044

**1, (2,3-dihydro-1H-2-isoindolyl)-3-(7-methoxy-5-oxy(11aS)-  
2,3,5,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-  
yloxy)-1-propanone (167)**

To a solution of **166** (75 mg, 0.122 mmol) in THF (3 mL) was added 1 M ammonium acetate solution (2 mL) and the reaction mixture stirred. To the solution was added 10% Cd/Pb couple (0.61 mmol, 76 mg) and the reaction was stirred for 90 minutes. The reaction was filtered and diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL). The solution was dried with magnesium sulphate and the solvent removed in vacuo. The product was then purified by flash chromatography eluting with 5% methanol in dichloromethane to give the compound as a white solid (yield = 42.6 mg, 83%).  $^1H$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ ):  $\delta$  7.66 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4.39 Hz, N=CH), 7.48 (s, 1H, arom. CH), 7.30 (s, 4H, indolyl arom. CH), 6.89 (s, 1H, arom. CH), 4.48 (t, 3H,  $J$  = 6.59 Hz,  $COCH_2CH_2$ ), 3.84 (s, 3H,  $OCH_3$ ), 3.81-3.69 (m, 2H, indolyl  $CH_2$ ), 3.61-3.51 (m, 1H, NCH), 2.97 (p, 5H,  $J$  = 6.9 Hz,  $CH_2CH_2O$ ), 2.32-2.28 (m, 2H,  $NCH_2$ ), 2.30-2.01 (m, 4H,  $NCH_2CH_2CH_2$ );  $^{13}C$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ ):  $\delta$  169.29 (amide CO), 164.66 (imine CH), 162.52 (CON), 150.45 ( $COCH_3$ ), 147.63 ( $COCH_2CH_2$ ), 140.57, (arom. CN), 127.86, 127.56, 123.04, 122.62 (indolyl arom. CH), 120.38 (CCON), 111.52 (arom. CH), 110.53 (arom. CH), 65.16 ( $COCH_2CH_2$ ), 56.06 ( $COCH_3$ ), 53.73 (NCH), 52.16, 50.64, 46.70, 34.22, 29.57 ( $CH_2$ ), 24.18 ( $COCH_2CH_2$ ); MS (EI): m/e (relative intensity): 419 ( $M^+$ , 21), 416 (2), 415 (2), 246 (10), 245 (3), 231 (3), 174 (4); HRMS calcd. for  $C_{24}H_{25}O_6N_3$  = 419.1845, found 419.1821.

Example 4(e) : Synthesis of (11aS) 8-(N-9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)aminopropoxy-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (205) (See Figure 26)

- 5     **Synthesis of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-hydroxypropylamine (196)**  
A solution of (Boc)<sub>2</sub>O (25.0 g, 114.5 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (50 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 3-amino-1-propanol (**195**) (7.8 g, 104.5 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (100 mL), under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed  
10     to stir for 12 hours, after which time TLC (50% pet-ether/EtOAc) revealed complete loss of starting material. The solution was diluted with Et<sub>2</sub>O (150 mL) and washed with phosphate buffer 0.5 M, pH 5.4 (2 x 70 mL), sat. aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (70 mL), brine (2 x 70 mL) and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Excess solvent was removed by  
15     evaporation under reduced pressure to give a viscous colourless oil (**196**) (18.3 g, 100%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (270 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 1.44 (s, 9H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 1.67 (m, 2H, H<sub>2</sub>'), 3.26 (q, 2H, J = 6.23 Hz, H<sub>3</sub>'), 3.65 (dd, 2H, J = 5.86, 5.68 Hz, H<sub>1</sub>'), 3.78 (dt, 1H, J = 6.04, 5.87 Hz, OH), 5.18 (br, 1H, NH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (67.8 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ  
20     28.4 (CH<sub>3</sub>), 32.6 (C<sub>2</sub>'), 37.1 (C<sub>3</sub>'), 59.3 (C<sub>1</sub>'), 79.4 (C<sub>quator</sub>), 157.1 (C=O); MS (E/I) m/z (relative intensity): 176 (M<sup>+</sup>, 30), 120 (100), 119 (31), 102 (49), 83 (33), 76 (67), 74 (36); HRMS (E/I) exact mass calcd for C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>17</sub>O<sub>3</sub>N: m/e 175.1200, obsd m/e 175.1208; IR (Nujol<sup>δ</sup>) ν: (cm<sup>-1</sup>) 3355, 2976, 2936, 2878, 1810,  
25     1694, 1531, 1455, 1392, 1366, 1278, 1253, 1173, 1072, 996, 914, 870, 781, 752, 638.

**Synthesis of Methyl 4-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)]aminopropoxy-3-methoxybenzoate (198)**

- A solution of DEAD (18.3 g, 105.3 mmol) in freshly distilled THF  
30     (50 mL) was added dropwise to a mechanically stirred solution of triphenylphosphine (27.6 g, 105.3 mmol), methyl vanillate **197** (19.2 g, 105.3 mmol), and Boc-amino-1-propanol (**196**) (18.4 g, 105.3 mmol) in freshly distilled THF (250 mL), at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. After the DEAD was added the reaction

mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature overnight and the progress of the reaction was monitored by TLC (50% EtOAc/pet-ether). The solvent was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure and the residue was triturated with Et<sub>2</sub>O (300 mL) to precipitate some of TPO and diethyl hydrazinedicarboxylate, which were removed by filtration. The filtrate was washed with 1 N aqueous NaOH (150 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 150 mL), brine (2 x 150 mL) and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Excess solvent was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure and the crude product (**198**) was purified by column chromatography (80% pet-ether/EtOAc) to afford a beige solid (30 g, 85 %). mp = 79-82 °C; <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ 1.46 (s, 9H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.0-2.08 (m, 2H, H<sub>2</sub>'), 3.38 (dd, 2H, J = 5.68, 6.04 Hz H<sub>3</sub>'), 3.90 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub><sub>ester</sub>), 3.93 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub><sub>ether</sub>), 4.14 (t, 2H, J = 5.95 Hz, H<sub>3</sub>'), 5.58 (br, 1H, NH), 6.86 (d, 1H, J = 8.42 Hz, H<sub>5</sub>), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 1.83 Hz, H<sub>2</sub>), 7.65 (dd, 1H, J = 2.02, 8.42 Hz, H<sub>6</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 68.7 MHz): δ 28.5 (C<sub>prima</sub>), 29.2 (C<sub>2</sub>'), 38.9 (C<sub>3</sub>'), 52.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub><sub>ester</sub>), 55.8 (OCH<sub>3</sub><sub>ether</sub>), 68.1 (C<sub>1</sub>'), 78.9 (C<sub>quater</sub>), 111.3 (C<sub>5</sub>), 112.0 (C<sub>2</sub>), 122.84 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 123.5 (C<sub>6</sub>), 148.8 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 152.1 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 156.1 (NC=O), 166.8 (C=O); MS (E/I) m/z (relative intensity): 339 (M<sup>+</sup>, 11), 266 (13), 182 (42), 151 (27), 102 (100); HRMS (E/I) exact mass calcd for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>: m/e 339.1682, obsd m/e 339.1733; IR (Nujol<sup>δ</sup>) ν: (cm<sup>-1</sup>) 3362, 2923, 2854, 1712, 1684, 1599, 1520, 1464, 1377, 1272, 1217, 1132, 1045, 1022, 872, 780, 762, 722.

#### Synthesis of Methyl 4-Aminopropoxy-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoate (**199**)

The ester **198** (4.0 g, 11.8 mmol) was added in small portions to a stirred solution of 70% HNO<sub>3</sub> (2 mL acid/g of substrate) at room temperature and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight. After 16 hours TLC (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) revealed the complete loss of starting material. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice bath, and 15 g of iced water was added, precipitating the product. The precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and washed with small amount of iced water. The filtrate was cooled and a second crop of precipitate was collected by vacuum

filtration and washed with iced water. The combined precipitate was dried in vacuo to provide compound **199** as a yellow solid, which was not purified further, but used directly in the subsequent reaction (2.3 g, 70%). mp = 101-103 °C; <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>/DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 270 MHz): δ 2.31 (m, 2H, H2'), 3.20 (br, 2H, H3'), 3.95 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub><sub>ether</sub>), 3.98 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub><sub>ester</sub>), 4.24 (t, 2H, J = 5.95 Hz, H1'), 7.11 (s, 1H, H6), 7.49 (s, 1H, H3), 8.21 (s, 3H, NH); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 68.7 MHz): δ 26.5 (C2'), 37.0 (C3'), 53.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub><sub>ester</sub>), 56.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub><sub>ether</sub>), 66.7 (C1'), 108.3 (C3), 111.0 (C6), 121.6 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 140.9 (C2), 149.3 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 152.6 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 166.8 (C=O); MS (E/I) m/z (relative intensity): 284 (M<sup>+</sup>, 90), 237 (70), 227 (93), 196 (47), 181 (38), 137 (100), 122 (81), 93 (52), 79 (44); HRMS (E/I) exact mass calcd for C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>17</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: m/e 284.1008, obsd m/e 284.1018; IR (Nujol<sup>®</sup>) n: (cm<sup>-1</sup>) 3472, 2937, 2911, 2855, 1733, 1532, 1516, 1462, 1377, 1292, 1224, 1143, 1052, 884, 812, 792, 773, 756, 724, 646.

**Synthesis of Methyl 4-(N-9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)aminopropoxy-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoic acid (200)**

A solution of **199** (3.9 g, 11.2 mmol) and KOH (1.9 g, 33.4 mmol) in aqueous methanol (77 mL, MeOH; 15 mL, H<sub>2</sub>O) was heated at reflux for 90 minutes. At which time TLC (EtOAc/MeOH/TEA 100:10:1) revealed complete consumption of starting material. Excess MeOH was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure and the concentrate diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O (20 mL). The aqueous solution was neutralised with conc. HCl, diluted with THF (100 mL) and sodium carbonate (2.9 g, 27.9 mmol) was added to adjust the solution to pH 9. Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (3.0 g, 11.6 mmol) was added portionwise over 30 minutes to the basic solution and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 12 hours. Excess THF was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure and the aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL) to remove excess fluorenylmethyl chloroformate and related by-products. The aqueous layer was then acidified with conc. HCl and extracted again with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The

organic phase was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and excess solvent was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure to afford **200** as a beige solid which was not purified further, but used directly in the subsequent

5 reaction (4.7 g, 86%). mp = 145-146°C; <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ 1.81 (m, 2H, H<sub>2</sub>'), 3.43 (m, 2H, H<sub>3</sub>'), 3.78 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 4.08-4.23 (m, 3H, H<sub>1</sub>' + Fmoc CH), 4.49 (d, 2H, J = 6.41, Fmoc CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.70 (br, 1H, NH), 7.14 (s, 1H, H<sub>6</sub>), 7.26-7.41 (m, 5H, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub> + H<sub>3</sub>), 7.59 (d, 2H, J = 7.51 Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 7.74 (d, 2H, J = 7.15 Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 9.62 (s, 1H, CO<sub>2</sub>H); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 68.7

10 MHz): δ 28.8 (C<sub>2</sub>'), 39.1 (C<sub>3</sub>'), 47.2 (CH Fmoc), 56.4 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 66.3 (CH<sub>2</sub> Fmoc), 68.5 (C<sub>1</sub>'), 107.9 (C<sub>3</sub>), 111.1 (C<sub>6</sub>), 120.0, 124.9, 127.1 and 127.7 (CH Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 128.0 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 137.0 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 141.3 (C Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 143.8 (C Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 148.2 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 154.7 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 156.8 (NC=O) 171.5 (CO<sub>2</sub>H); MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity): 493 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 3), 297 (6), 271 (4), 191 (18), 180 (21), 179 (100), 178 (67), 165 (30), 102 (17), 93 (13); HRMS (FAB) exact mass calcd for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>25</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (M+H): m/e 493.1532, obsd m/e 493.1536; IR (Nujol<sup>δ</sup>) n: (cm<sup>-1</sup>) 1712, 1535, 1463, 1377, 1277, 1219, 1081,

15 970, 762, 722, 656.

20

**Synthesis of (2S)-N-[4-(N-9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)aminopropoxy-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl]pyrrolidine-2-methanol (201)**

A catalytic amount of DMF (2 drops) was added to a solution of

25 the nitrobenzoic acid **200** (8.0 g, 16.3 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (2.3 g, 17.9 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (120 mL), at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was stirred for 16 hours and the resulting solution of acid chloride was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone) under a nitrogen

30 atmosphere. A solution of pyrrolidinemethanol (1.8 g, 17.9 mmol) and DIPEA (4.6 g, 35.77 mmol) in anhydrous DCM (40 mL) was added dropwise over 30 minutes. Once the addition was complete, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. Stirring was continued for a further 2 hours, at which time TLC

35 (95% EtOAc/MeOH) revealed complete reaction. The reaction

mixture was washed with 1 N aqueous HCl (2 x 100 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 100 mL), brine (100 mL), and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Excess solvent was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the crude compound as a brown oil. Purification by flash column chromatography (99% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) afforded **201** as a beige solid (5.6 g, 82%).  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -53.3^\circ$  ( $c = 1.03$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); mp = 78-81 °C; <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz):  $\delta$  1.69-1.88 (m, 4H, H<sub>4</sub> + H<sub>3</sub>), 2.04-2.12 (m, 2H, H<sub>2</sub>'), 3.16 (m, 2H, H<sub>3</sub>'), 3.45 (m, 2H, H<sub>5</sub>), 3.81 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.86-3.91 (m, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>-OH), 4.08-4.24 (m, 3H, H<sub>1</sub>' + Fmoc CH), 4.38-4.48 (m, 3H, H<sub>2</sub> + Fmoc CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.65 (br, 1H, NH), 6.78 (s, 1H, H<sub>6</sub><sub>arom</sub>), 7.27-7.42 (m, 5H, H<sub>3</sub><sub>arom</sub> + Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 7.61 (d, 2H,  $J = 7.32$  Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 7.76 (d, 2H,  $J = 7.32$  Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 68.7 MHz):  $\delta$  24.4 (C<sub>4</sub>), 28.4 (C<sub>3</sub>), 28.9 (C<sub>2</sub>'), 39.1 (C<sub>3</sub>'), 47.3 (CH Fmoc), 49.5 (C<sub>5</sub>), 56.6 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.4 (C<sub>2</sub>), 61.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>-OH), 66.2 (CH<sub>2</sub> Fmoc), 68.5 (C<sub>1</sub>'), 108.0 (C<sub>3</sub><sub>arom</sub>), 108.9 (C<sub>6</sub><sub>arom</sub>), 120.0, 124.9, 127.0 and 127.7 (CH Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 128.0 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 137.0 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 141.3 (C Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 143.9 (C Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 148.2 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 154.7 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 156.5 (NC=O<sub>carbamate</sub>), 171.2 (C=O<sub>amide</sub>); MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity): 576 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 32), 191 (18), 179 (100), 165 (25), 102 (33); HRMS (FAB) exact mass calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (M+H):  $m/e$  576.2268 obsd  $m/e$  576.2257; IR (Nujol<sup>®</sup>)  $\nu$ : (cm<sup>-1</sup>) 2626, 1714, 1615, 1576, 1520, 1452, 1434, 1333, 1276, 1218, 1147, 1059, 869, 818, 759, 742.

**Synthesis of (2S)-N-[4-(N-9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino propyloxy-5-methoxy-2-aminobenzoyl]pyrrolidine-2-methanol (202)**

A mixture of the nitro compound **201** (5.5 g, 9.5 mmol) and SnCl<sub>2</sub>/2H<sub>2</sub>O (10.2 g, 45.4 mmol) in MeOH (100 mL) was heated at reflux and the progress of the reaction monitoring by TLC (95% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH). After 2 hours excess MeOH was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was cooled (ice), and treated carefully with sat. aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (170 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (170 mL) and after 16 hours stirring at room temperature the inorganic precipitate was removed by filtration through Celite. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine (150 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a brown

solid. Purification by flash column chromatography (95% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) afforded the pure amine **202** as a greyish-pink solid (4.3 g, 82%).  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -78.6^\circ$  ( $c = 1.02$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>);  $mp = 83-86^\circ C$ ; <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz):  $\delta$  1.68-1.85 (m, 4H, H<sub>4</sub> + H<sub>3</sub>), 2.00-2.04 (m, 2H, H<sub>2</sub>'), 3.43-3.45 (m, 2H, H<sub>3</sub>'), 3.49-3.58 (m, 2H, H<sub>5</sub>), 3.67 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.72-3.78 (m, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>-OH), 4.04 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.58$  Hz, H<sub>1</sub>'), 4.22 (t, 1H,  $J = 6.86$  Hz, Fmoc-CH), 4.41-4.44 (m, 3H, H<sub>2</sub> + Fmoc CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.92 (br, 1H, NH), 6.23 (s, 1H, H<sub>3</sub><sub>arom</sub>), 6.71 (s, 1H, H<sub>6</sub><sub>arom</sub>), 7.27-7.41 (m, 4H, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 7.62 (d, 2H,  $J = 7.32$  Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 7.75 (d, 2H,  $J = 7.33$  Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 68.7 MHz):  $\delta$  24.9 (C<sub>4</sub>), 28.6 (C<sub>3</sub>), 29.1 (C<sub>2</sub>'), 39.5 (C<sub>3</sub>'), 47.3 (CH Fmoc), 51.0 (C<sub>5</sub>), 56.6 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.4 (C<sub>2</sub>), 61.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>-OH), 66.4 (CH<sub>2</sub> Fmoc), 68.0 (C<sub>1</sub>'), 102.0 (C<sub>3</sub><sub>arom</sub>), 111.6 (C<sub>6</sub><sub>arom</sub>), 120.0, 125.1, 127.0 and 127.7 (CH Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 128.0 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 137.8 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 141.3 (C Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 144.0 (C Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 148.2 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 150.8 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 156.6 (NC=O<sub>carbamate</sub>), 171.9 (C=O<sub>amide</sub>); MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity): 546 ( $M^+ + 1$ , 11), 445 (10), 191 (14), 179 (100), 166 (51), 102 (70); HRMS (FAB) exact mass calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>37</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub> ( $M+H$ ):  $m/e$  546.2526 obsd  $m/e$  546.2532; IR (Nujol<sup>o</sup>)  $\nu$ : (cm<sup>-1</sup>) 1698, 1622, 1588, 1506, 1476, 1404, 1228, 1173.

**Synthesis of (2S)-N-[4-(N-9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)aminopropoxy-5-methoxy-2-(N-2,2,2-trichloroethyloxycarbonyl)aminobenzoyl]pyrrolidine-2- methanol (203)**

A solution of the amine **202** (1.1 g, 2.0 mmol) in DCM (40 mL) was cooled to 0°C (ice/acetone bath) and treated with pyridine (0.33 mL, 0.3 g, 4.1 mmol). A solution of trichloroethyl chloroformate (0.27 mL, 0.41 g, 1.9 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise over 30 minutes to the stirred mixture. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 3 hours, at which time TLC (EtOAc) revealed complete loss of starting material. The reaction mixture was washed with 1 N HCl solution (50 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated in vacuo. The crude residue was purified by flash column chromatography (98% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) to afford the pure

trichloroethyl-carbamate **203** as a brown solid (1.1 g, 74%).  
 $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -35.7^\circ$  ( $c = 0.87$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ); **mp** = 54-57°C;  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 270 MHz):  $\delta$  1.73-1.89 (m, 2H,  $H_4$ ), 2.00-2.04 (m, 2H,  $H_2'$ ), 2.18 (m, 2H,  $H_3$ ), 3.44-3.54 (m, 4H,  $H_3' + H_5$ ), 3.72 (s, 3H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ),  
 5 3.81-3.90 (m, 2H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{-OH}$ ), 4.14-4.25 (m, 3H,  $H_1' + \text{Fmoc CH}$ ), 4.43-4.45 (m, 3H,  $\text{Fmoc CH}_2 + H_2$ ), 4.76 (d, 1H,  $J = 12.00$  Hz,  $\text{Troc CH}_2$ ), 4.83 (d, 1H,  $J = 12.00$  Hz,  $\text{Troc CH}_2$ ), 5.89 (br, 1H,  $\text{Fmoc NH}$ ), 6.82 (s, 1H,  $H_{6\text{arom}}$ ), 7.26-7.41 (m, 4H,  $\text{Fmoc}_{\text{aryl}}$ ), 7.62 (d, 2H,  $J = 7.33$  Hz,  $\text{Fmoc}_{\text{aryl}}$ ), 7.69 (s, 1H,  $H_{3\text{arom}}$ ), 7.75 (d, 2H,  $J =$   
 10 7.51 Hz,  $\text{Fmoc}_{\text{aryl}}$ ), 9.06 (br s, 1H,  $\text{Troc NH}$ );  $^{13}\text{C-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 68.7 MHz):  $\delta$  25.0 ( $\text{C}_4$ ), 28.2 ( $\text{C}_3$ ), 28.9 ( $\text{C}_2'$ ), 39.5 ( $\text{C}_3'$ ), 47.3 ( $\text{CH Fmoc}$ ), 51.4 ( $\text{C}_5$ ), 56.1 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 60.8 ( $\text{C}_2$ ), 66.0 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{-OH}$ ), 66.3 ( $\text{CH}_2 \text{ Fmoc}$ ), 68.2 ( $\text{C}_1'$ ), 74.4 ( $\text{CH}_2 \text{ Troc}$ ), 95.3 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 105.6 ( $\text{C}_{3\text{arom}}$ ), 110.7 ( $\text{C}_{6\text{arom}}$ ), 120.0, 125.1, 127.0 and 127.7 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{aryl}}$   
 15  $\text{Fmoc}$ ), 130.7 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 141.3 ( $\text{C}_{\text{aryl Fmoc}}$ ), 144.0 ( $\text{C}_{\text{aryl Fmoc}}$ ), 144.5 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 150.0 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 152.1 ( $\text{NC=O}_{\text{carbamate Troc}}$ ), 156.5 ( $\text{NC=O}_{\text{carbamate Fmoc}}$ ), 170.4 ( $\text{NC=O}_{\text{amide}}$ ); **MS** (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity): 720 ( $\text{M}^+ + 1$ , 2), 275 (4), 192 (29), 179 (100), 166 (13), 102 (48), 70 (10); **IR** ( $\text{Nujol}^b$ )  $\nu$ : ( $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ) 3338, 1742, 1714, 1599, 1520,  
 20 1464, 1378, 1215, 1170, 1119, 1024, 817, 759, 740.

**Synthesis of (11*S*, 11*aS*)-10-*N*-2,2,2-trichloroethyloxycarbonyl-11-hydroxy-8-(*N*-9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)aminopropoxy-7-methoxy-1,2,3,6,9,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (**204**)**

25 All glassware, needles and cannulae used for this procedure had been previously dried overnight in an oven, and were assembled while still warm and the enclosed vessel flooded with nitrogen and evacuated three times. Freshly distilled DCM (6.6 mL) was  
 30 transferred to the reaction vessel and the temperature lowered to -45°C (dry ice/  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$ ) under a nitrogen atmosphere. Oxalyl chloride (1.0 mL of a 2 M solution in DCM, 2.0 mmol) was transferred to the reaction vessel, followed by the dropwise addition over 30 minutes of anhydrous DMSO (0.3 mL, 0.3 g, 3.9 mmol) in dry DCM (4.2 mL). After stirring at -45°C for 30  
 35 minutes, a solution of the alcohol **203** (0.79 g, 1.1 mmol) dissolved in dry DCM (6.6 mL) was added dropwise over 50



minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at  $-45^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 45 minutes, the mixture was then treated dropwise with DIPEA (1.9 mL, 1.4 g, 10.8 mmol) in dry DCM (4.2 mL) over 30 minutes at  $-45^{\circ}\text{C}$ . After 35 minutes, TLC (97%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) revealed complete consumption of starting material. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature, diluted with DCM (30 mL), washed with 1 N HCl solution (30 mL),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (30 mL), brine (40 mL), dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. Purification by flash column chromatography (97%  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) furnished the protected carbinolamine **204** as a brown solid (0.48 g, 78%).  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = +62.3^{\circ}$  ( $c = 0.83$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ); mp =  $76-79^{\circ}\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 270 MHz)  $\delta$  2.00-2.17 (m, 6H,  $\text{H}_2 + \text{H}_2' + \text{H}_1$ ), 3.43-3.60 (m, 3H,  $\text{H}_3' + \text{H}_{11a}$ ), 3.66-3.73 (m, 2H,  $\text{H}_3$ ), 3.78 (s, 3H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 4.20-4.32 (m, 4H,  $\text{H}_1' + \text{Fmoc CH} + 1\text{H Troc CH}_2$ ), 4.44 (d, 2H,  $J = 6.78$  Hz, Fmoc  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 5.25 (d, 1H,  $J = 12.00$  Hz, Troc  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 5.65 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.71$  Hz,  $\text{H}_{11}$ ), 5.87 (br, 1H, NH), 6.82 (s, 1H,  $\text{H}_6$ ), 7.23-7.41 (m, 5H,  $\text{H}_9 + \text{Fmoc}_{\text{aryl}}$ ), 7.61 (d, 2H,  $J = 7.32$  Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 7.75 (d, 2H,  $J = 7.51$  Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>);  $^{13}\text{C-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 68.7 MHz)  $\delta$  23.0 (C2), 28.6 (C1), 29.0 (C2'), 39.5 (C3'), 46.4 (C3), 47.3 (CH Fmoc), 56.0 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 60.0 (C11a), 66.4 ( $\text{CH}_2$  Fmoc), 68.3 (C1'), 74.9 ( $\text{CH}_2$  Troc), 86.4 (C11), 95.1 ( $\text{C}_{\text{quat}}$ ), 110.5 (C6), 113.8 (C9), 120.0, 125.1, 127.0 and 127.7 ( $\text{C-H}_{\text{aryl}}$  Fmoc), 128.8 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 130.9 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 141.3 ( $\text{C}_{\text{aryl}}$  Fmoc), 143.9 ( $\text{C}_{\text{aryl}}$  Fmoc), 148.8 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 149.9 ( $\text{C}_{\text{arom}}$ ), 154.4 ( $\text{NC=O}_{\text{carbamate}}$  Troc), 156.6 ( $\text{NC=O}_{\text{carbamate}}$  Fmoc), 167.0 ( $\text{C}_4_{\text{amido}}$ ); MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity): 702 (6), 275 (3), 192 (16), 179 (100), 165 (18), 102 (21), 70 (15); IR (Nujol<sup>o</sup>)  $\nu$ : ( $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ) 3383, 2970, 2946, 2880, 2844, 1713, 1602, 1513, 1464, 1377, 1218, 1034, 908, 723, 645.

#### Synthesis of (11aS) 8-(N-9-

fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)aminopropoxy-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one (**205**)

Yellow lead (II) oxide (500 mg, 2.24 mmol) was dissolved in 50% aqueous acetic acid (5 mL) and the solution added slowly to a vigorously stirred suspension of cadmium dust (2.5 g, 22.4 mmol) in de-ionised  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (10 mL). The cadmium darkened as lead deposited on the surface and the clumps were broken up

carefully. After 20 minutes, the solid couple was filtered under vacuum, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O and acetone and dried *in vacuo*. The lumps were crushed and stored in a closed vial.

The cadmium/lead couple (0.62 g, equiv. 0.56 g, 4.94 mmol Cd) was added in one portion to a solution of the Troc protected carbinolamine **204** (0.71 g, 0.99 mmol) and ammonium acetate (1.0 M, 9 mL) in THF (9 mL) at room temperature. The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 hours, during which time the reaction mixture became cloudy and opaque with a fluffy white precipitate. When reaction was complete as indicated by TLC (95% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH), the solids were removed by filtration through Celite, and the THF removed by evaporation under reduced pressure. The filter cake was washed with several aliquots of EtOAc. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 15 mL), and the organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. Purification by flash column chromatography (97% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) furnished the target compound **205** as a brown solid (0.47 g, 90%) which was repeatedly evaporated *in vacuo* with CHCl<sub>3</sub> in order to obtain the N10-C11 imine form of the compound.  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +385.1^\circ$  (*c* = 0.47, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); *mp* = 73-76°C; <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 270 MHz): δ 2.04-2.06 (m, 4H, H<sub>2</sub> + H<sub>1</sub>), 2.27-2.29 (m, 2H, H<sub>2</sub>' ), 3.45-3.47 (m, 2H, H<sub>3</sub>' ), 3.67-3.73 (m, 2H, H<sub>3</sub>), 3.80 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.84-4.23 (m, 4H, H<sub>11a</sub> + H<sub>1</sub>' + Fmoc CH), 4.43-4.46 (m, 2H, Fmoc CH<sub>2</sub>), 5.92 (br, 1H, NH), 6.82 (s, 1H, H<sub>6</sub>), 7.29-7.41 (m, 4H, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 7.5 (s, 1H, H<sub>9</sub>), 7.61 (d, 2H, *J* = 7.14 Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>), 7.67 (d, 1H, *J* = 4.40 Hz, H<sub>11imine</sub>), 7.75 (d, 2H, *J* = 7.33 Hz, Fmoc<sub>aryl</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 68.7 MHz): δ 22.3 (C<sub>2</sub>), 29.3 (C<sub>1</sub>), 29.6 (C<sub>2</sub>' ), 39.6 (C<sub>3</sub>' ), 46.7 (C<sub>3</sub>), 47.4 (CH Fmoc), 53.7 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.0 (C<sub>11a</sub>), 66.3 (CH<sub>2</sub> Fmoc), 68.3 (C<sub>1</sub>' ), 110.2 (C<sub>6</sub>), 111.4 (C<sub>9</sub>), 120.0 (C-H<sub>aryl</sub> Fmoc), 120.5 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 125.1, 127.0, and 127.7 (C-H<sub>aryl</sub> Fmoc), 140.6 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 141.3 (C<sub>aryl</sub> Fmoc), 144.0 (C<sub>aryl</sub> Fmoc), 147.7 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 150.3 (C<sub>arom</sub>), 156.6 (NC=O<sub>carbamate</sub>), 162.5 (C<sub>11</sub>), 164.5 (C<sub>4amide</sub>); MS (FAB) *m/z* (relative intensity): 526 (M<sup>+</sup> + 1, 15), 348 (7), 330 (4), 304 (4), 247 (12), 191 (15), 179 (100), 165 (17), 102 (40), 91 (10), 70 (13); HRMS (FAB) exact mass calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> (M+H): *m/e* 526.2264 obsd *m/e*

526.2198; IR (Nujol<sup>o</sup>)  $\nu$ : (cm<sup>-1</sup>) 3327, 1729, 1690, 1601, 1509, 1427, 1261, 1217, 1023, 759, 740, 699.

#### Examples 5 to 8 : Cytotoxicity Data

##### **NCI In Vitro Cytotoxicity Studies**

5 The National Cancer Institute (NCI), Bethesda, Maryland, USA has available an *in vitro* cytotoxicity screen which consists of approximately 60 human tumour cell lines against which compounds are tested at a minimum of five concentrations each differing 10-fold. A 48 hour continuous exposure protocol is used, where  
10 cell viability or growth is estimated with an SRB protein assay.

##### *Method*

The test compounds were evaluated against approximately 60 human tumour cell lines. The NCI screening procedures were described in detail by Monks and co-workers (Monks, A et al., Journal of  
15 the National Cancer Institute, 1991, 83, 757). Briefly, cell suspensions were diluted according to the particular cell type and the expected target cell density (5000-40,000 cells per well based on cell growth characteristics), and added by pipette (100  $\mu$ L) into 96-well microtitre plates. The cells were allowed a  
20 preincubation period of 24 hours at 37°C for stabilisation. Dilutions at twice the intended test concentration were added at time zero in 100  $\mu$ L aliquots to the wells. The test compounds were evaluated at five 10-fold dilutions ( $10^{-4}$ ,  $10^{-5}$ ,  $10^{-6}$ ,  $10^{-7}$  and  $10^{-8}$   $\mu$ M). The test compounds were incubated for 48 hours in  
25 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere and 100% humidity. The cells were then assayed using the sulphorhodamine B assay. A plate reader was used to read the optical densities and a microcomputer processed the readings into LC<sub>50</sub> values, which is the dosage required to kill half of the cells.

30 The results presented in examples 5 to 8 are LC<sub>50</sub> values which are below 10  $\mu$ M, which is taken to be the dividing line between cytotoxicity and non-cytotoxicity.

**NCI Hollow Fibre Assay for Preliminary *In Vivo* Testing**

The Biological testing Branch of the Developmental Therapeutics Program of the NCI has adopted a preliminary *in vivo* screening tool for assessing the potential anticancer activity of compounds identified by the large scale *in vitro* cell screen. For these assays, human tumour cells are cultivated in polyvinylidene (PVDF) hollow fibres, and a sample of each cell line is implanted into each of two physiologic compartments (intraperitoneal and subcutaneous) in mice. Each test mouse received a total of 6 fibres (3 intraperitoneally and 3 subcutaneously) representing 3 distinct cancer cell lines. These mice are treated with potential antitumour compounds at each of 2 test doses by the intraperitoneal route using a QD x 4 treatment schedule. Vehicle controls consist of 6 mice receiving the compound diluent only. The fibre cultures are collected on the day following the last day of treatment. To assess anticancer effects, the viable cell mass is determined for each of the cell lines using a formazyn dye (MTT) conversion assay. From this, the %T/C can be calculated using the average optical density of compound treated samples divided by the average optical density of the vehicle controls. In addition, the net increase in cell mass can be determined for each sample, as a sample of fibre cultures are assessed for viable cell mass on the day of implantation into mice. Thus, the cytostatic and cytotoxic capacities of the test compound can be assessed.

Generally, each compound is tested against a minimum of 12 human cancer cell lines. This represents a total of 4 experiments since each experiment contains 3 cell lines. The data are reported as %T/C for each of the 2 compound doses against each of the cell lines with separate values calculated for the intraperitoneal and subcutaneous samples.

Compounds are selected for further *in vivo* testing in standard subcutaneous xenograft models on the basis of several hollow fibre assay criteria. These include: (1) a %T/C of 50 or less

in 10 of the 48 possible test combinations (12 cell lines X 2 sites X 2 compound doses); (2) activity at a distance (intraperitoneal drug/subcutaneous culture) in a minimum of 4 of the 24 possible combinations; and/or (3) a net cell kill of 1 or more of the cell lines in either implant site. To simplify evaluation, a points system has been adopted which allows rapid evaluation of the activity of a given compound. For this, a value of 2 is assigned for each compound dose which results in a 50% or greater reduction in viable cell mass. The intraperitoneal and subcutaneous samples are scored separately so that criteria (1) and (2) can be evaluated. Compounds with a combined IP + SC score of 20, a SC score of 8 or a net cell kill of one or more cell lines are referred for xenograft testing. This comparison indicated that there was a very low probability of missing an active compound if the hollow fibre assay was used as the initial *in vivo* screening tool. In addition to these criteria, other factors (e.g. unique structure, mechanism of action) may result in referral of a compound for xenograft testing without the compound meeting these criteria.

#### NCI Human Xenograft Studies

These are carried out on nucle athymic mice with a disabled immune system. The human tumour tissue to be tested is implanted in their flanks, and whilst the control mouse receives no treatment, the others are subjected to varying doses of the test compound, which is administered intraperitoneally. The results are expressed as the toxicity of the compound, the amount of tumour growth, and the inhibition of growth.

#### Example 5 : In Vitro Cytotoxicity of compounds of formula I

Some of the compounds synthesised in example 1, were subjected to the NCI *In Vitro* Cytotoxicity study. The results ( $LC_{50}; \mu M$ ) are set out below, and are illustrated in Figure 29.

TUMOUR TYPE	CELL-LINE DESIGNATION	UP2003 (24)	UP2051 (31)	UP2052 (33)	UP2065 (42)
		LC <sub>50</sub> (μM)			
Lung	NCI-H23		9.3		
	NCI-H460	7.6		3.0	
	NCI-H522			3.1	
Colon	COLO 205	1.4			4.0
	HCC-2998	5.2	5.2	0.8	
	HCT-116			1.1	
	KM12	9.5			
CNS	SNB-75	6.0			
Melanoma	MALME-3M	0.7	5.1		4.7
	M14			2.7	
	SK-MEL-2		7.6	0.5	3.5
	UACC-62	0.7			
Renal	786-0			3.0	
	RXF 393		0.8		0.8
Breast	MDA-MB-435				0.8

Of the compounds tested, the above showed cytotoxicity against human lung, colon, CNS, melanoma, renal and breast cancer cell lines. Replacing the C-8 benzyloxy group in UP2003 (24) with a methoxy substituent (UP2065, 42) significantly changed the cytotoxicity profile, activity was lost against lung, CNS, and colon cancer cell lines (only reduced activity against Colo 205 remained). However, additional cytotoxic activity was gained against the melanoma cell lines SKMEL-2 and MALME-3M, the renal cell line RXF-393 and the breast cell line MDA-MB-435. Reduction of the ester moiety in UP2003 (24) to afford the alcohol UP2052 (33) resulted in increased activity in the lung cancer cell line NCI-460 and the colon cell line HCC-2998. Additional activity was registered against the lung cell line NCI-H522, the colon cell line HCT-116, the melanoma cell line M14 and the renal cancer cell line 786-0. Interestingly, the acetylated analogue UP2051 (31) exhibited attenuated or abolished activity in these cell lines (e.g. 7.6 μM verses 0.5 μM for UP2052 in the melanoma SK-MEL-2 cell line.

**Example 6(a) : In Vitro Cytotoxicity of compounds of Formula II**

Some of the compounds synthesised in example 2, were subjected to the NCI *In Vitro* Cytotoxicity study. The results ( $LC_{50}$ ;  $\mu M$ ) are set out below, and are illustrated in Figure 30.

TUMOUR TYPE	CELL-LINE DESIGNATION	UP2064 (74)	UP2001 (80)	UP2004 (70)	UP2023 (64)	UP2067 (172)
		$LC_{50}$ ( $\mu M$ )				
Lung	NCI-H23			7.6		
	NCI-H226				9.1	
	NCI-H460		2.7			
	NCI-H522				5.2	5.0
Colon	COLO 205	0.6		3.9	5.8	5.8
	HCC-2998		0.099	5.5	7.0	
	KM12				7.1	
CNS	SF-539				9.4	6.8
	SNB-75		7.5			5.4
Melanoma	MALME-3M	0.9	0.073		7.8	7.4
	M14					0.8
	SK-MEL-2	1.7			7.4	
	SK-MEL-28	2.6			8.4	6.6
	SK-MEL-5			7.8	6.0	
	UACC-257	7.4		7.3		
	UACC-62	0.6	0.077	5.3	7.2	3.0
Renal	RXF 393	0.8			6.1	0.8
Breast	MDA-MB-435	2.3			7.6	0.8
	MDA-N			9.0	6.6	0.6

Of the compounds tested, the above listed exert their cytotoxic effect ( $LC_{50}$ ) most strongly in the Lung, Colon, CNS. Melanoma, Renal and Breast cell line panels. Within the group, it is apparent that exchanging a C-8 benzyloxy substituent (UP2004, 70) for a methoxy group (UP2064, 74) results in increased activity in the Melanoma panel. The methoxy analogue is more potent and acts against a greater number of cell lines. The methoxy analogue also exhibits improved activity against the colon cancer cell line Colo 205 and, in addition, the methoxy analogue exhibits activity against the renal cell line RXF-393 which is not observed with the benzyloxy compound. Replacing the electron rich dimethoxy A-ring with an iodo substituted

- aromatic ring (UP2023, **64**) resulted in slight attenuation of activity in some cell lines, but the analogue showed activity against a wider spread of cell lines (i.e. 5 melanoma cell lines against only 3 for the benzyloxy analogue). Changing the nature of the C-ring ex-unsaturation from an alkene to a ketone (UP2067, **172**) lead to additional activity against the breast cancer cell line MDA-MB-435, renal cell line RXF-393, the melanomas MALME-3M, M14, SKMEL-28, the CNS cancers SF-539 and SNB-75 and against the lung cell line NCI-H522.
- 10 The PBD dimer UP2001 (**80**) exhibited potent and selective cytotoxicity activity against the lung cancer cell line NCI-H460, the colon cell line HCC-2998, the CNS cancer cell line SNB-75 and the melanoma cell lines MALME-3M (very potent, 0.08  $\mu$ M) and UACC-62 (very potent, 0.07  $\mu$ M), which may be attributable to its ability to cross link DNA.

**Example 6(b) : Hollow Fibre Assay on Compounds of Formula II**

Two of the compounds tested underwent the NCI Hollow Fibre Assay, and the results are presented below.

	UP2001 ( <b>80</b> )	UP2004 ( <b>70</b> )
IP score	40	8
SC score	14	10
Total score	54	18
Cell Kill	Y	N

- UP2001 (**80**) and UP2004 (**70**) were subjected to the NCI Hollow Fibre assay described above. UP2001 has been selected for xenograft studies based on its combined IP + SC score (54) which was greatly in excess of 20, and its SC score which was higher than 8. UP2004 has been selected on the basis of its SC score, it being higher than 8.

**Example 6(c) : Human Xenograft Studies on Compound 80 (UP 2001)**

- Human tumour xenograft studies on UP2001 were performed by the



Biological Testing Branch of the NCI as described above.

Athymic nude mice bearing MDA-MB-435 xenografts (human mammary tumour), OvcAR-3 (human ovarian tumour), UACC-62 (human melanoma) or OVCAR-5 (human ovarian tumour) were treated at  
 5 doses of 0.67 (high), 0.45 (middle) and 0.3 (low) mg/kg/injection given once every 4th day for a total of 3 doses (6 mice per dose level with 20 controls).

UP2001 (80) was evaluated by measuring the toxicity of the drug and its ability to retard tumour growth.

Tumour	Toxicity			%T/C			%Growth Delay		
	High	Mid	Low	High	Mid	Low	High	Mid	Low
MDA-MB-435	3/6	1/6	2/6	toxic	3	3	41	41	41
OVCAR-3	0/6	0/6	0/6	7	20	46	73	73	9
UACC-62	0/6	0/6	0/6	22	28	67	43	43	43
OVCAR-5	0	0/6	0/6	52	45	38	16	28	32

15 Toxicity represents the number of mice which died as a result of treatment. %T/C represents the width of the tumours in the "test" mice (T) (as measured with calipers) compared to control untreated mice (C) and presented as a percentage. % Growth  
 20 Delay represents the increase in the amount of time taken for the tumors to reach an arbitrary size of 250 mg.

In the MDA-MB-435 xenografts UP2001 restricted tumour growth in treated mice to only 3% of the tumour growth observed in the control population. In addition, a 41% delay in the time taken to reach tumour mass of 250 mg was also observed. Some toxicity  
 25 towards the hosts was observed even at low dose.

A good dose response was observed for UP2001 (80) in the OvcAR-3 xenografts. At the high dose, tumour growth in treated subjects was only 7% of that observed in the control population. At the medium dose the value was 20% and at the low dose the tumours in  
 30 the treated mice were 46% of the size of the control tumours.

At the high dose a 73% growth delay in reaching a tumour mass of 250 mg was observed. No mice died as a result of exposure to UP2001 (80).

5 A similar dose response for tumour growth was observed in the UACC-62 xenografts for UP2001 (80). At the high dose treated tumours were 22% of the size of the control tumours. At the medium dose treated tumours were 28% of the size of the control tumours and at the low dose treated tumours were 67% of the size of the control tumours. Again no mice died as a result of exposure to UP2001 (80).

15 Results for the human ovarian tumour OVCAR-5 were less clear cut; approximately 50% tumour size reduction was observed and some growth delay was observed but activity appeared to be higher at lower concentrations. However, again, mice died as a result of exposure to UP2001 (80).

UP2001 (80) was also evaluated against the human CNS tumour SF-295. Athymic nude mice bearing SF-295 were treated at doses of 0.40, 0.27 and 0.18 mg/Kg by injection given intravenously once daily for a total of 5 doses.

20

Toxicity			%T/C			Tumour Free		
High	Med	Low	High	Med	Low	High	Med	Low
2/6	1/6	2/6	0%	0%	0%	4/4	5/5	3/4

UP2001 (80) displayed curative properties against SF-295 xenografts. At high and medium doses all the surviving mice were tumour free on day 27 of the experiment. At the lower dose 3 out of 4 mice were tumour free on day 27. Some toxicity was associated with the treatment, 2 mice dying at the high dose, 1 at the medium dose and two at the low dose. The higher intensities of the injection schedule may be reflected in the higher mortality observed.

**Example 7 : In Vitro Cytotoxicity of compounds of Formula III**

All of the compounds synthesised in example 3, were subjected to the NCI In Vitro Cytotoxicity screen. The results ( $LC_{50}$ ;  $\mu M$ ) are set out below, and are illustrated in Figure 31.

TUMOUR TYPE	CELL-LINE DESIGNATION	UP2026 (136)	UP2027 (138)	UP2028 (151)	UP2068 (96)
		$LC_{50}$ ( $\mu M$ )			
Lung	NCI-H522	7.8	8.0	0.8	8.5
Colon	COLO 205	8.8		5.0	
	HCC-2998	6.4			
	KM12			8.8	
CNS	SNB-75			8.2	
Melanoma	MALME-3M	6.1		5.7	8.3
	LOX IMVI				9.7
	M14	7.8			6.5
	SK-MEL-2	7.4	9.5	5.4	8.1
	SK-MEL-28	7.1		8.1	9.6
	SK-MEL-5	9.0			
	UACC-257	7.7			
	UACC-62	6.6			
Renal	RXF 393	7.6	6.6	0.7	6.3
Breast	HS 578T			9.2	
	MDA-MB-435	6.3		7.2	8.3
	MDA-N				6.3

The C-7-phenyl substituted compound UP2026 (136) showed cytotoxicity against cell lines in the human lung, colon, melanoma, renal and breast cancer panels. Interestingly, unlike other PBDs the molecule was inactive in the CNS cell line panel. However, UP2026 (136) was active against nearly all the members of the melanoma panel. Inclusion of a methoxy group in the C7 aryl moiety (138) resulted in increased selectivity as cytotoxicity was only observed in the lung cell line NCI-H522, the melanoma cell line SKMEL-2 and the renal cell line RXF-393. Introduction of a nitro group at C7 completely abolished cytotoxic activity, however, it seems likely that activity would be restored once the nitro group is reduced to an amine; in this way UP2029 (140) might prove to be a useful prodrug with

potential use in treating large hypoxic tumours. The C8 amino substituted PBD (UP2028, **151**) showed good activity in the lung, colon, CNS, melanoma, renal and breast cell line panels. On the other hand the trimethoxy PBD (UP2068, **96**) was only active in the lung, melanoma, renal and breast cell line panels.

**Example 8 : In Vitro cytotoxicity of compounds of Formula IV:**

The compounds synthesised in example 4, were subjected to the NCI In Vitro Cytotoxicity study. The results ( $LC_{50}; \mu M$ ) are set out below, and are illustrated in Figure 32.

TUMOUR TYPE	CELL-LINE DESIGNATION	UP2005 ( <b>161</b> )	UP2008 ( <b>167</b> )
		$LC_{50} (\mu M)$	
Lung	NCI-H23		8.9
	NCI-H522	8.7	
Colon	HCC-2998		8.1
CNS	SF-295	8.8	
	SF-539	7.7	
Melanoma	MALME-3M	7.5	6.8
	LOX IMVI	9.2	
	M14	6.2	8.4
	SK-MEL-2	7.6	6.5
	SK-MEL-28	6.5	
	UACC-257		7.1
Renal	RXF 393	6.8	

Two of the four C8 PBD amides, UP2005 (**161**) and UP2008 (**167**), demonstrated cytotoxicity ( $LC_{50}$ ) in the NCI assay. UP2005 (**161**) showed selectivity for the lung, CNS, melanoma and renal cancer in panels. The compound was particularly active in the melanoma panel exhibiting cytotoxicity against 5 out of the 8 melanoma cell lines. UP2008 (**167**) revealed a slightly different profile being active in the lung, colon, and melanoma panels. Again the molecule was particularly active in the melanoma panel.

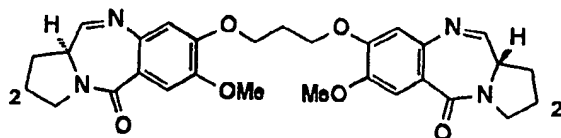
Example 9: Further results for PBD dimer SJG-136 (UP2001, 80)

The compound synthesized in example 2(d) (SJG-136, 80) underwent some further assays.

5 The first assay, which is described in G.B.Jones, et al., *Anti-Cancer Drug Des.*, 1990, 5, 249, which is incorporated herein by reference, determines the effect of the test compound on the helix melting temperature of DNA. This assay is designed to give an indication of the strength and extent of cross-linking of the DNA strands by the test compound (i.e. a measure of the  
10 stabilisation of the DNA upon ligand binding).

The melting temperature was determined for a 1:5 molar ratio of [ligand][DNA], where the calf thymus DNA concentration is 100 mM in aqueous sodium phosphate buffer (10 mM sodium phosphate + 1  
15 mM EDTA, pH 7.00  $\pm$  0.01). For calf thymus DNA at pH 7.00  $\pm$  0.01, the melting temperature is 67.83  $\pm$  0.06°C (mean value from 30 separate determinations).

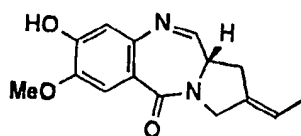
For a 1:5 molar ratio of [PBD]:[DNA], the PBD dimer 80 elevates the helix melting temperature ( $\Delta T_m$ ) of calf thymus DNA by an unprecedented 33.6°C after incubation for 18 hours at 37°C.  
20 Under identical conditions, the C-ring-unsubstituted dimer DSB-120:



DSB-120

provides a  $\Delta T_m$  of 15.1°C, demonstrating the extraordinary effect of introducing C2/C2'-unsaturation. In common with other PBD  
25 dimers, 80 exerts most of its effect upon the GC-rich or high

temperature regions of the DNA melting curves. In a similar fashion to DSB-120, it provides some 60-80% of its stabilising effect without prior incubation, suggesting a kinetic effect in the PBD reactivity profile. However, the comparative  $\Delta T_m$  curves show that, on a concentration basis alone, SJG-136 is  $\geq 10$ -fold more effective than DSB-120. Even at a [PBD]:[DNA] molar ratio of 1:100, SJG-136 still exhibits significantly better DNA binding affinity than the monomer tomamycin at a 1:5 [PBD]:[DNA] molar ratio.



Tomamycin

The results for a [PBD]:[DNA] ratio of 1:5 are summarised in the table below (All  $\Delta T_m$  values  $\pm 0.1$ - $0.2^\circ\text{C}$ )

Compound	Induced $\Delta T_m$ ( $^\circ\text{C}$ ) after incubation at $37^\circ\text{C}$ for		
	0 h	4 h	18 h
SJG-136 (80)	25.7	31.9	33.6
DSB-120	10.2	13.1	15.1
Tomamycin	0.97	2.38	2.56

The data presented in the above table show that SJG-136 (80) is the most potent DNA-stabilising agent known to date according to this particular assay.

The second assay determined the cytotoxicity of SJG-136 (80) in the human ovarian carcinoma cell line A2780 and its cisplatin-resistant subline A2780cisR, and compared this data with the cytotoxicity of the related dimer DSB-120 (see above) and Cisplatin. Relative to the parental line, the A2780cisR subline is known to have elevated GSH levels, an increased level of repair of DNA-cisplatin adducts, and a decreased ability to

uptake cisplatin (M.Smellie, et al., Br. J. Cancer, 1994, 70, 48).

The results, which were obtained by incubating the cells with the compounds for 96 hours at 37°C, and assessing the cell number using Sulforhodamine B, are presented in the table below:

	IC <sub>50</sub> <sup>a</sup> (μM) for		
	A2780	A2780cis <sup>a</sup>	RF <sup>b</sup>
SJG-136 (80)	0.000023	0.000024	1.1
DSB-120	0.0072	0.21	29.2
Cisplatin	0.265	8.4	32

a Dose of compounds required to inhibit cell growth by 50% compared with control

b RF is the resistance factor (IC<sub>50</sub> resistant/parent)

The IC<sub>50</sub> value for 80 in the A2780 cell line is only 23 pM, representing a 320-fold increase in cytotoxicity compared to DSB-120 (IC<sub>50</sub> = 7.2 nM). More interestingly, whereas DSB-120 has a reduced potency in the cisplatin-resistant A2780cisR (IC<sub>50</sub> = 0.21 nM), SJG-136 is almost 9,000-fold more potent in this cell line with a similar IC<sub>50</sub> value (24 pM) to that in the normal A2780, giving a Resistance Factor of 1.1. The fact that both DSB-120 and cisplatin give Resistance Factors of 29.2 and 32, respectively, across this pair of cell lines suggests that SJG-136 may have potential in the treatment of cisplatin-refractory disease.

#### Example 10: Ovarian Carcinoma Cytotoxicity Assay

Compounds of the invention (and Anthramycin as a comparison) were evaluated for their cytotoxic activity in ovarian cell

lines by Dr Lloyd R. Kelland's group at The Institute of Cancer Research, Sutton, UK. The five cell lines investigated were SKOV-3, A2780/A2780cisR and CH1/CH1cisR (cisR denotes that the cell line is resistant to cisplatin).

5 Single viable cells were seeded in growth medium (160  $\mu$ L) in 96-well microtitre plates and allowed to attach overnight. The PBDs were then dissolved in DMSO (to give 20 mM drug concentrations) immediately prior to adding to the cells in quadruplicate wells. The final drug concentrations in the wells  
10 ranged from 100  $\mu$ M to 2.5 nM as follows: 100, 25, 10, 2.5, 1  $\mu$ M, 250, 100, 25, 10, 2.5 nM (drugs were diluted in growth medium and then 40  $\mu$ L added to the existing well volume of 160  $\mu$ L to give final concentrations as above). After 96 hours, the medium was removed and the remaining cells fixed by exposure to 10%  
15 trichloroacetic acid on ice for 30 minutes. The wells were then washed 3-4 times with tap water, air dried overnight and treated with 100  $\mu$ L of sulphorhodamine B (0.4%) dissolved in 1% acetic acid. Staining was allowed to continue for 10-15 minutes, then the wells were washed 3-4 times with 1% acetic acid, air dried  
20 and then added to Tris base (100  $\mu$ L of 10 mM). Plates were then shaken and absorbance readings at 540 nm were determined using a plate reader. By using the Quattro-Pro software package, the IC<sub>50</sub> values were calculated from plots of concentration versus percentage absorbance (compared with 8 untreated wells).

25 (a) Compounds of Formula I

Compound	IC <sub>50</sub> ( $\mu$ M)				
	A2780	A2780cisR	CH1	CH1cisR	Skov3
Anthramycin	0.155	0.16	0.062	0.05	0.16
UP2003 (24)	0.0145	0.12	0.016	0.04	0.012
UP2051 (31)	0.1	0.27	0.105	0.16	0.46
UP2052 (33)	0.07	0.105	0.09	0.037	0.105
UP2053 (56)	0.0054	0.058	0.0115	0.011	0.1
UP2065 (42)	0.36	0.46	0.115	0.15	0.45
UP2074 (10)	0.155	0.43	0.105	0.27	0.52
UP2089 (177)	0.0022	0.0042	<0.0025	0.0023	0.0054
UP2092 (179)	0.004	0.007	0.0016	0.0082	0.0098
UP2095 (181)	<0.05	<0.05	<0.05	<0.05	<0.05



The most potent members of this group of compounds are those PBDs that possess aryl or vinyl substitution at the 2 position of the PBD: UP2089 (177), UP2092 (179) and UP2095 (181). Without wishing to be bound by theory, the potent activity of these molecules can probably be ascribed to the presence of conjugated *endo-exo* unsaturation in these molecules. *Endo-exo* unsaturation may improve the fit of the molecule in the minor groove of DNA, although the conjugated system may also indirectly affect the potency of the molecules through electronic and conformational effects. UP2089 (177) and UP2092 (181) are up to 100 times more potent than the natural product anthramycin, which also possesses conjugated *endo exo* unsaturation.

PBD dimers are able to cross-link DNA and block tumour cell replication and thus generally show high cytotoxicity. The PBD dimer UP2053, which possesses only *endo* unsaturation, exhibits potent activity in these ovarian cell lines. The dimer is markedly more cytotoxic than anthramycin but not as potent as the monomers UP2089 and 2092.

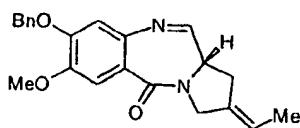
The remaining molecules of Formula I are monomers possessing only *endo* unsaturation, these molecules are broadly comparable with anthramycin. However, the ester UP2003 and the alcohol UP2053 are more potent than anthramycin against these ovarian tumour cell lines.

(b) Compounds of Formula II

UP No.	IC <sub>50</sub> /μM				
	A2780	A2780cisR	CH1	CH1cisR	Skov3
Anthramycin	0.155	0.16	0.062	0.05	0.16
UP2001 (80)	0.000023	0.000024	0.00012	0.0006	0.0091
UP2004 (70)	0.029	0.2	0.017	0.082	0.35
UP2023 (64)	0.49	1.45	0.37	0.43	16
UP2064 (74)	0.15	0.36	0.066	0.084	0.39
UP2067 (172)	0.115	0.39	0.165	0.18	0.54
UP2100 (207)	<0.05	0.066	<0.05	<0.05	0.081

Compound UP2100 (207) has the structural formula:

213



207

and was synthesised by the same route as compound 70.

UP2001 (80) exhibits cytotoxicity at picomolar/sub nanomolar levels across the ovarian tumour cell line panel. The potency of the molecule is probably due to its cross-linking properties coupled with the effect of exo saturation. UP2001 is markedly more potent than UP2053.

The monomers UP2004 (70) and UP2100 (206) exhibit good activity against the ovarian tumour cell lines comparable to that for anthramycin. UP2023 (64), which possesses a 7-iodo substituent is significantly less active than UP2004 (70), which contains two alkoxy groups at the 7 and 8 positions.

(c) Compounds of Formula III

Compound	IC <sub>50</sub> /μM				
	A2780	A2780cisR	CH1	CH1cisR	Skov3
UP2020 (90)	10	7.2	1.7	2.8	1.6
UP2021 (130)	>100	>100	51	47	>100
UP2022 (143)		16.5	14	11	33
UP2024 (101)	1.4	1.8	1.45	1.25	2.35
UP2025 (106)	0.064	0.155	0.082	0.11	1.7
UP2026 (136)	1.15	3.7	1.5	1.45	4.9
UP2027 (138)	0.56	1.55	1.35	1.15	1.7
UP2029 (140)	34.5	32	22.5	14	1.4
UP2066 (113)	11	12	3.8	7.4	15
UP2068 (96)	0.47	0.66	0.52	0.42	0.76
UP2086 (120)	0.84	0.45	1.6	2.2	2.5

UP2025 is the most potent monomer with two methoxy groups

donating electrons to the A-ring, however some compounds with 3 electron donating groups appear to be less cytotoxic (eg. UP2020-2022 and UP2066).

5 The simple phenyl substituted PBD (UP2026, **136**) shows micromolar activity in the ovarian tumour cell lines. Introducing an electron donating methoxy group into the phenyl substituent increases cytotoxicity (**138**) but the presence of an electron withdrawing nitro group reduces cytotoxic activity (**140**).

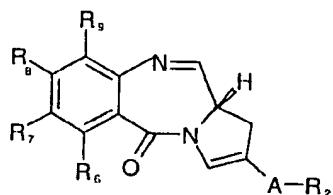
(d) *Compounds of Formula IV*

10

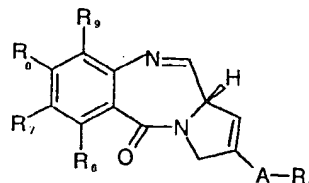
15

Compound	IC <sub>50</sub> /μM				
	A2780	A2780cisR	CH1	CH1cisR	Skov3
UP2005 (161)	1.5	4.3	1.4	1.85	5.4
UP2006 (163)	3.2	14.5	4.9	7.9	23.5
UP2007 (165)	1.55	4.9	1.5	3.0	5.8
UP2008 (167)	0.23	0.94	0.24	0.42	1.45
UP2088 (205)	11	8.5	12	16	14

1. A compound of the formula **Ia** or **Ib**:



(Ia)



(Ib)

wherein:

- 5 A is CH<sub>2</sub>, or a single bond;
- R<sub>2</sub> is selected from: R, OH, OR, CO<sub>2</sub>H, CO<sub>2</sub>R, COH, COR, SO<sub>2</sub>R, CN;
- R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn;
- where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an
- 10 aralkyl group of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally
- 15 containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group;
- and R<sub>9</sub> is selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn, where R is as defined above, or the compound is a dimer with each monomer being the same or different and being of formula **Ia** or **Ib**,
- 20 where the R<sub>9</sub> groups of the monomers form together a bridge having the formula -X-R'-X- linking the monomers, where R' is an alkylene chain containing from 3 to 12 carbon atoms, which chain may be interrupted by one or more hetero-atoms and/or aromatic rings and

may contain one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or N; or R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> together form a group -O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-O-, where p is 1 or 2; except that in a compound of formula **Ia** when A is a single bond, then R<sub>2</sub> is not CH=CH(CONH<sub>2</sub>) or CH=CH(CONMe<sub>2</sub>).

2. A compound of formula **Ia** according to claim 1, with the proviso that when A is a single bond, then R<sub>2</sub> is not CH=CR<sup>A</sup>R<sup>B</sup>, where R<sup>A</sup> and R<sup>B</sup> are independently selected from H, R<sup>c</sup>, COR<sup>c</sup>, CONH<sub>2</sub>, CONHR<sup>c</sup>, CONR<sup>c</sup>, cyano or phosphonate, where R<sup>c</sup> is an unsubstituted alkyl group having 1 to 4 carbon atoms.

3. A compound according to either claim 1 or claim 2, wherein A is CH<sub>2</sub>.

4. A compound according to claim 3, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is CO<sub>2</sub>H, CO<sub>2</sub>R, CH<sub>2</sub>OH, or CH<sub>2</sub>OR.

5. A compound according to claim 4, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is CO<sub>2</sub>Me, CO<sub>2</sub><sup>t</sup>Bu, CH<sub>2</sub>OH, or CH<sub>2</sub>OAc.

6. A compound according to claim 1 or claim 3, wherein A is a single bond, and R<sub>2</sub> is an aryl group, or an alkyl or alkaryl group which contains at least one double bond which forms part of a conjugated system with the double bond of the C-ring.

7. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims wherein R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> and, unless the compound is a dimer, R<sub>9</sub> are independently selected from H and OR.

8. A compound according to claim 7, wherein  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  are independently selected from H, OMe and  $OCH_2Ph$ .

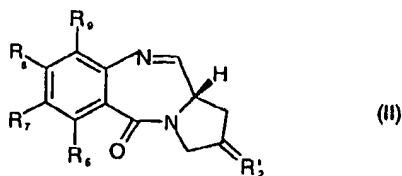
9. A compound according to claim 7, wherein  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are OR, and  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  are H.

10. A compound according to claim 9, wherein  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are independently either OMe or  $OCH_2Ph$ .

11. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims of formula Ia.

12. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims which is a dimer, wherein the dimer bridge is of the formula  $-O-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where p is from 1 to 12.

13. A compound of formula II:



wherein:

$R'_1$  is selected from: O,  $CHR''_2$ , where  $R''_2$  is selected from H, R,  $CO_2R$ , COR, CHO,  $CO_2H$ , halo;

$R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ ;

where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group;

and R<sub>8</sub> is selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn, where R is as defined above or the compound is a dimer with each monomer being the same or different and being of formula II, where the R<sub>8</sub> groups of the monomers form together a bridge having the formula -X-R'-X- linking the monomers, where R' is an alkylene chain containing from 3 to 12 carbon atoms, which chain may be interrupted by one or more hetero-atoms and/or aromatic rings and may contain one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or N; or R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> together form a group -O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-O-, where p is 1 or 2;

except that:

(i) when R'<sub>2</sub> is CH-Et, and R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>8</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are H, R<sub>7</sub> is not sibirosamine pyranoside; and

(ii) when R'<sub>2</sub> is CH-Me, and R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are H, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are not both H or both OMe, or OMe and OH respectively.

14. A compound according to claim 13, wherein R'<sub>2</sub> is O, CH<sub>2</sub> or CHCH<sub>3</sub>.

15. A compound according to either claim 13 or claim 14, wherein  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  are independently selected from H, OR or a halogen atom.

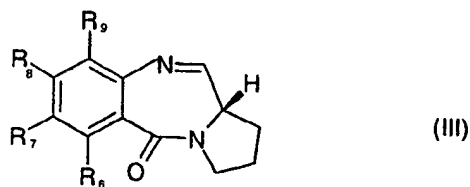
5 16. A compound according to claim 15, wherein  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_9$  are independently selected from H, OMe and  $OCH_2Ph$ , and I.

10 17. A compound according to claim 15, wherein  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are independently OR or a halogen atom and  $R_6$  and  $R_9$  are H.

15 18. A compound according to claim 17, wherein  $R_7$  and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  are independently selected from OMe,  $OCH_2Ph$  or I.

19. A compound according to any one of claims 13 to 18 which is a dimer, wherein the dimer bridge is of the formula  $-O-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where  $p$  is from 1 to 12.

20 20. A compound of the formula III:



wherein:

$R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ ;



where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group;

and R<sub>6</sub> is selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn, where R is as defined above or the compound is a dimer with each monomer being the same or different and being of formula **III**, where the R<sub>6</sub> groups of the monomers form together a bridge having the formula -X-R'-X- linking the monomers, where R' is an alkylene chain containing from 3 to 12 carbon atoms, which chain may be interrupted by one or more hetero-atoms and/or aromatic rings and may contain one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or N; or R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> together form a group -O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-O-, where p is 1 or 2;

wherein at least one of R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, R<sub>8</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are not H;

except that:

(i) when R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are H, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are not both OMe, OMe and OBn respectively, or OMe and OH respectively;

(ii) when R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are H, R<sub>8</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are not Me and OH respectively;

(iii) when three of R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, R<sub>8</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are H, the other is not Me;

(iv) when R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are H, R<sub>9</sub> is not OMe;

(v) when R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>8</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are H, R<sub>7</sub> is not OMe; and

(vi) when  $R_6$ , and  $R_9$  are H and  $R_7$  is OMe, the compound is not a dimer.

21. A compound according to claim 20, wherein only one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$   
5 and  $R_9$  is H.

22. A compound according to claim 21, wherein those of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_9$   
and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  which are not H are OR.

10 23. A compound according to claim 22, wherein those of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_9$   
and, unless the compound is a dimer,  $R_8$  which are not H are selected  
from OMe, and OBn.

15 24. A compound according to either claim 20 or claim 21, wherein  
at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  is a dimer, is  $NH_2$ .

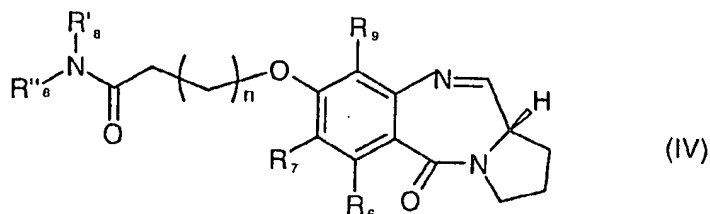
20 25. A compound according to claim 20, claim 21 or claim 24,  
wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  is an aryl group, preferably  
of up to 12 carbon atoms, which is optionally substituted by one or  
more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally contains  
one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional  
group.

25 26. A compound according to claim 25, wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  
 $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$ , is a phenyl group, optionally substituted by one or  
more methoxy, ethoxy or nitro groups.

27. A compound according to claim 26, wherein at least one of  $R_6$ ,  
 $R_7$ ,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$ , is selected from: Ph, p-MeO-Ph, m-NO<sub>2</sub>-Ph and p-NO<sub>2</sub>-Ph.

28. A compound according to any one of claims 20 to 27 where the compound is a dimer, wherein the dimer bridge is of the formula  $-(CH_2)_p-O-$ , where  $p$  is from 1 to 12.

5 29. A compound of formula **IV**:



wherein:

$R_6$ ,  $R_7$  and  $R_9$  are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, halo, amino, NHR, nitro,  $Me_3Sn$ ;

where R is a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an  
 10 aralkyl group of up to 12 carbon atoms, whereof the alkyl group optionally contains one or more carbon-carbon double or triple bonds, which may form part of a conjugated system, or an aryl group of up to 12 carbon atoms; and is optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups, and optionally  
 15 containing one or more hetero atoms which may form part of, or be, a functional group;

$R'_8$  and  $R''_8$  are either independently selected from H, R or together form a cyclic amine; and

$n$  is from 1 to 7.

20 30. A compound according to claim 29, wherein one of  $R'_8$  and  $R''_8$  is a nitrogen protecting group.

31. A compound according to either claim 29 or 30, wherein R<sub>7</sub> is an electron withdrawing group.

32. A compound according to any one of claims 29 to 31, wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are selected from H and OR.

33. A compound according to claim 32, wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are selected from OMe, OEt and OBn.

34. A compound according to any one of claims 30 to 33, wherein n is 1 to 3.

35. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims wherein R is selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, or an aralkyl group of up to 12 carbon atoms, or an aryl group of up to 12 carbon atoms, optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups.

36. A compound according to claim 35, wherein R is selected from a lower alkyl group having 1 to 10 carbon atoms optionally substituted by one or more halo, hydroxy, amino, or nitro groups.

37. A compound according to claim 36, wherein R is an unsubstituted straight or branched chain alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms.

38. The use of a compound according to any one of the preceding claims in a method of therapy.

39. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 37 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

5 40. The use of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 37 to prepare a medicament for the treatment of a gene-based disease.

41. The use of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 37 to prepare a medicament for the treatment of a viral, parasitic or  
10 bacterial infection.

42. A process for preparing a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 37.

15 43. The use of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 37 for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of cisplatin-refractory disease.

44. A method of inhibiting the growth of cisplatin-refractory cells  
20 which method comprises treating said cells with a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 37.

45. A method according to claim 44 wherein said compound is SJG-  
136 1,1'-[[ (Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-2-  
25 methylidene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-  
c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5-one].

1/32

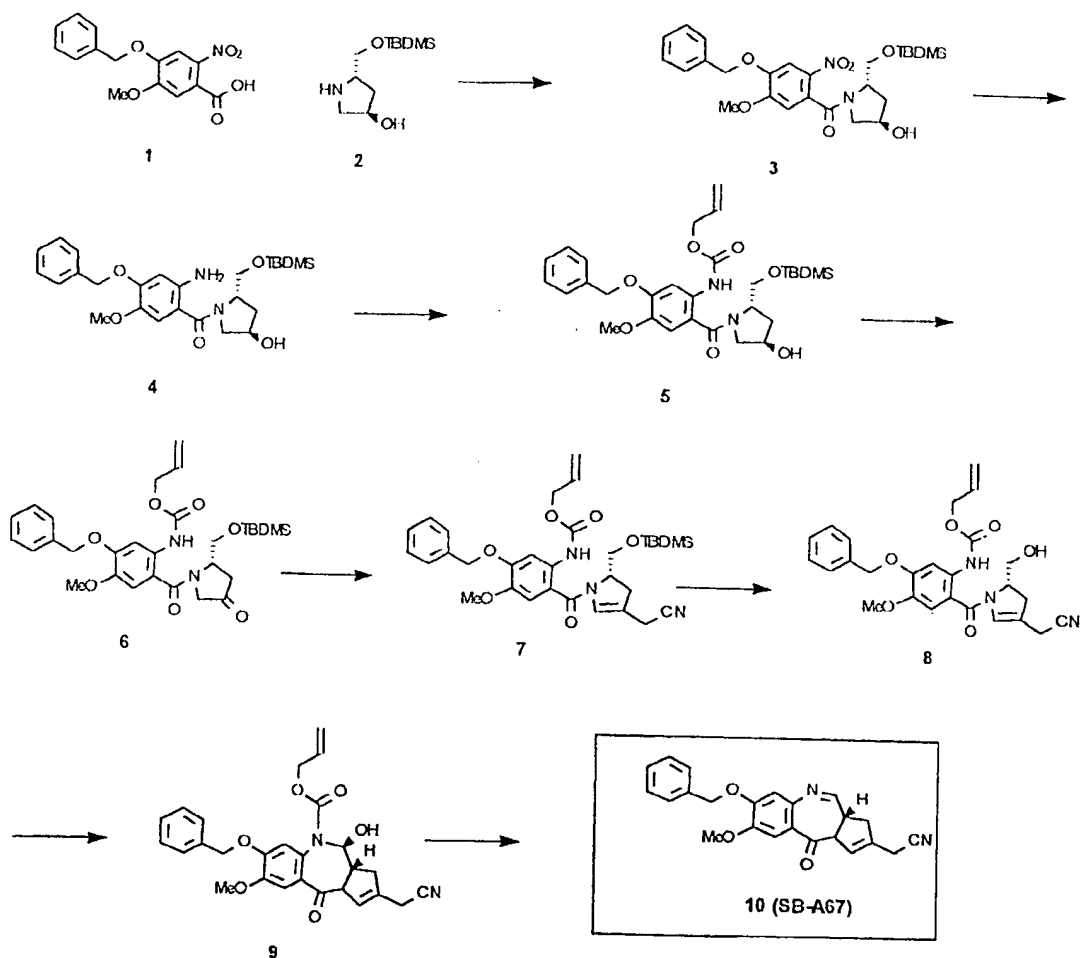


Figure 1

2/32

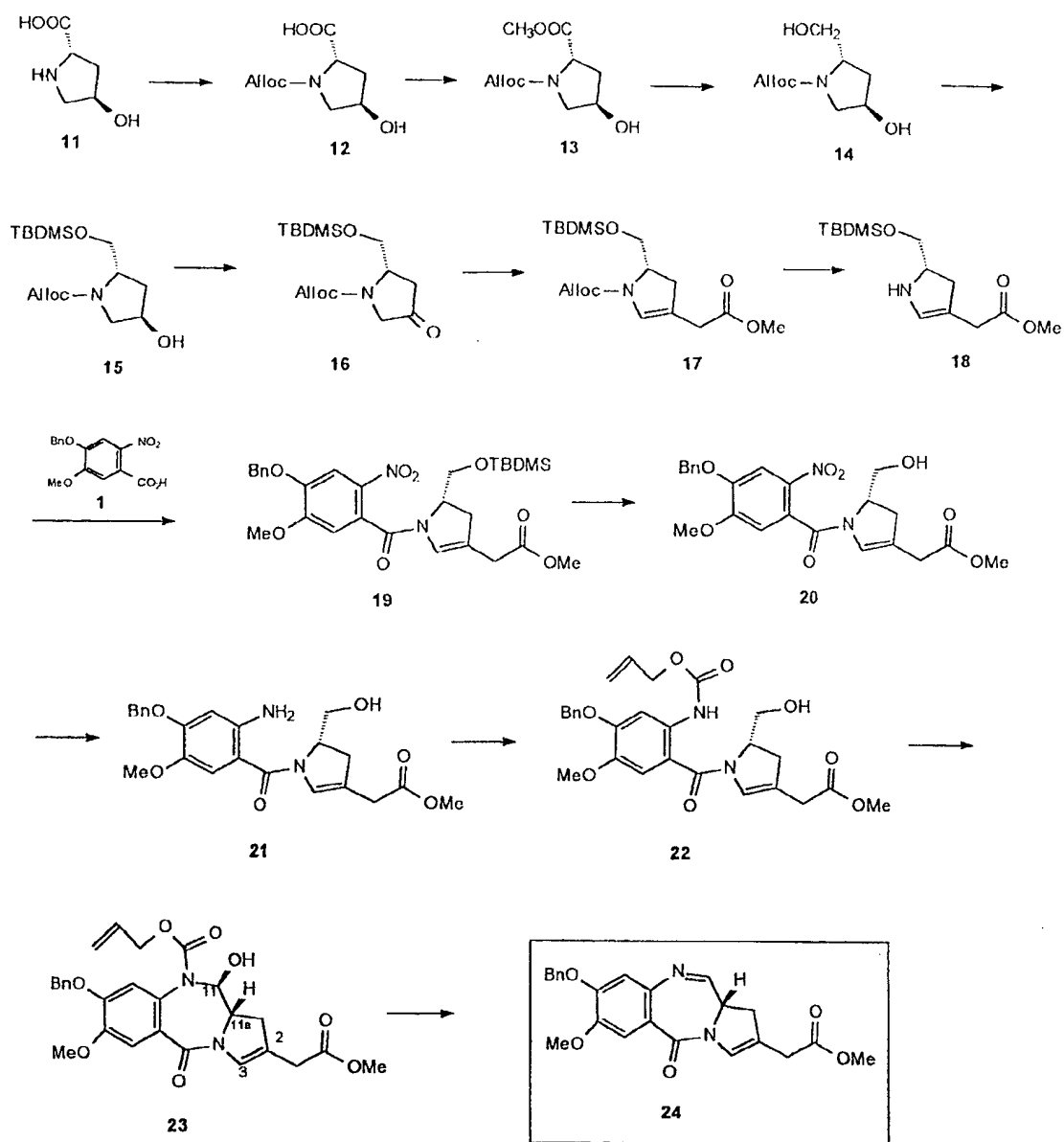


Figure 2

3/32

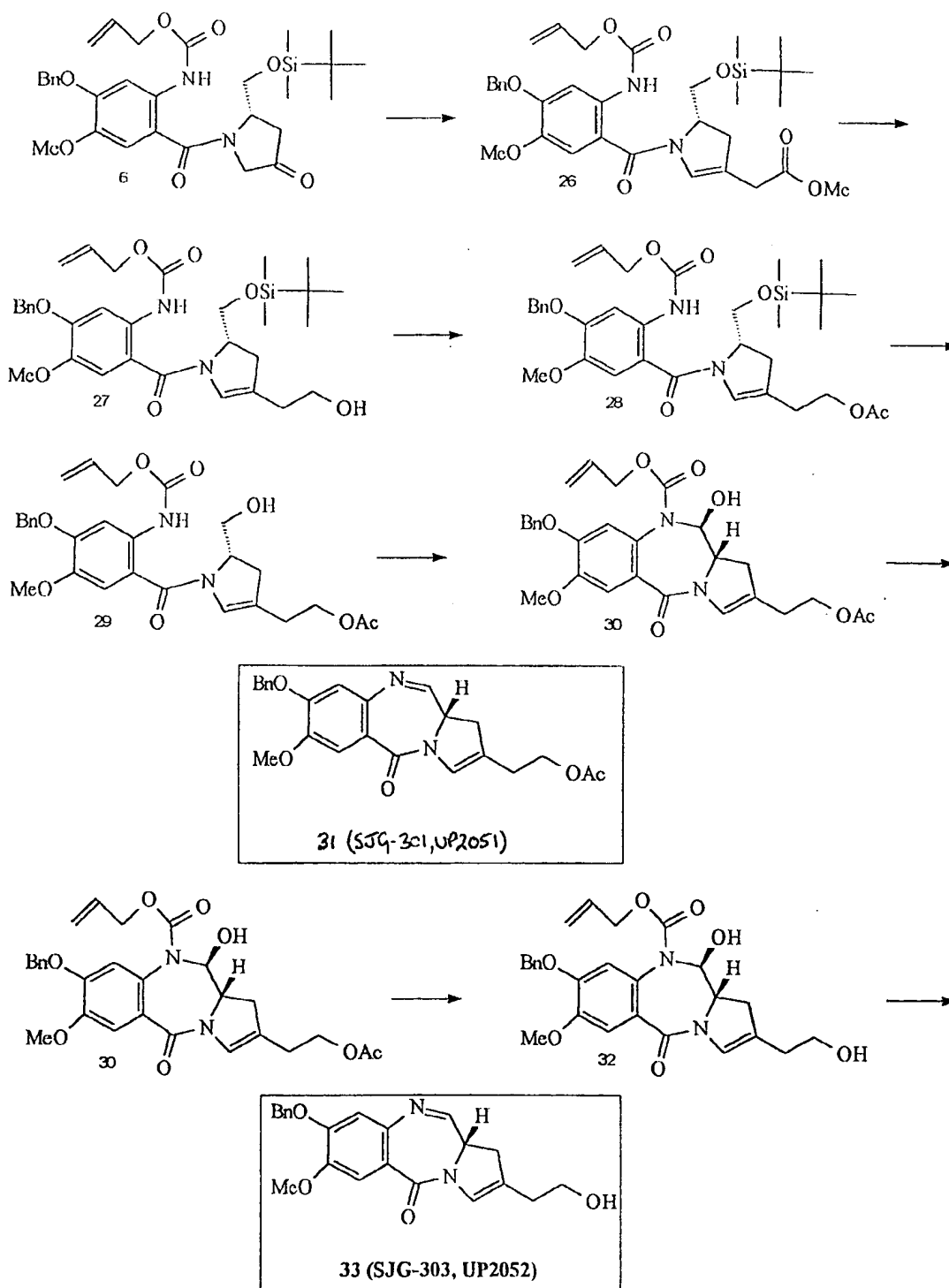


Figure 3



4/32

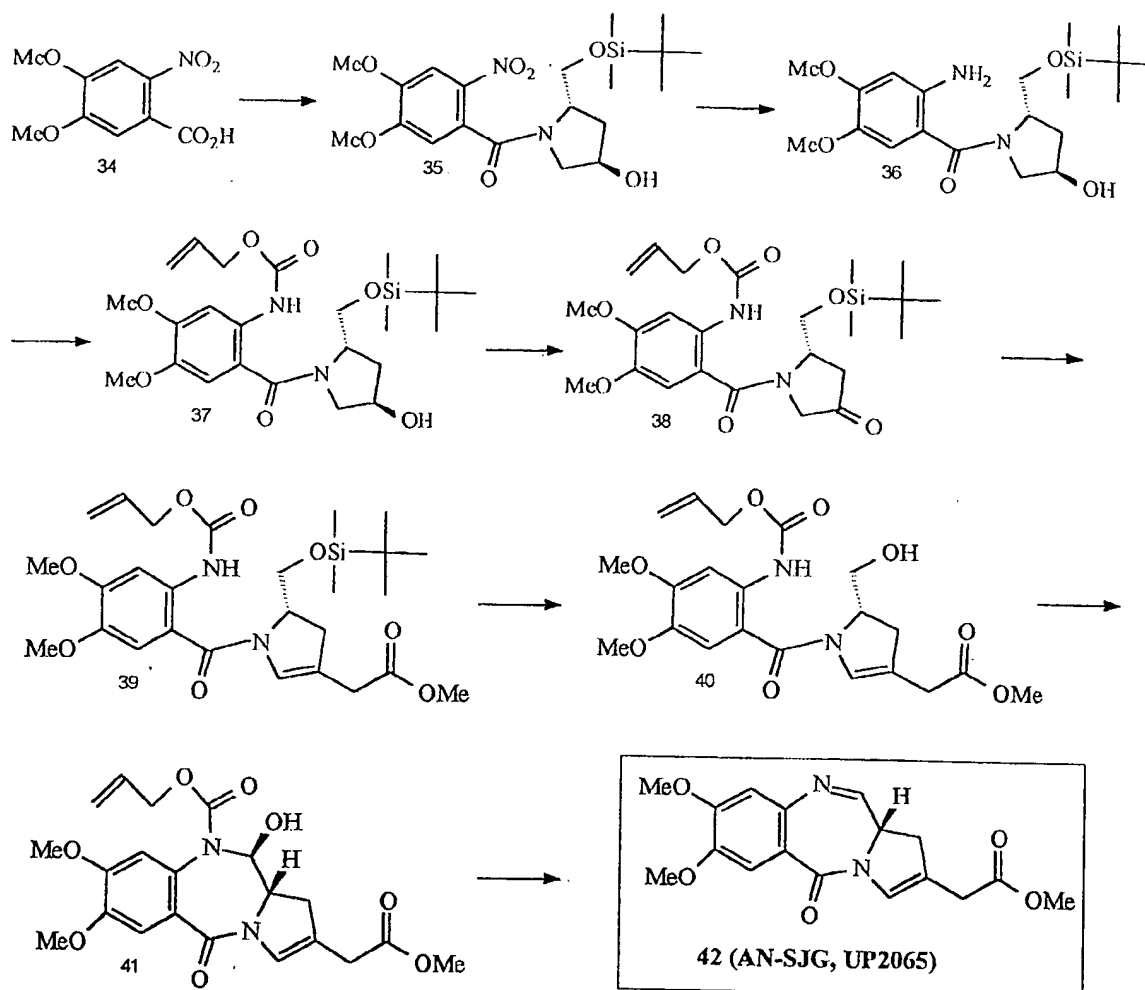


Figure 4

5/32

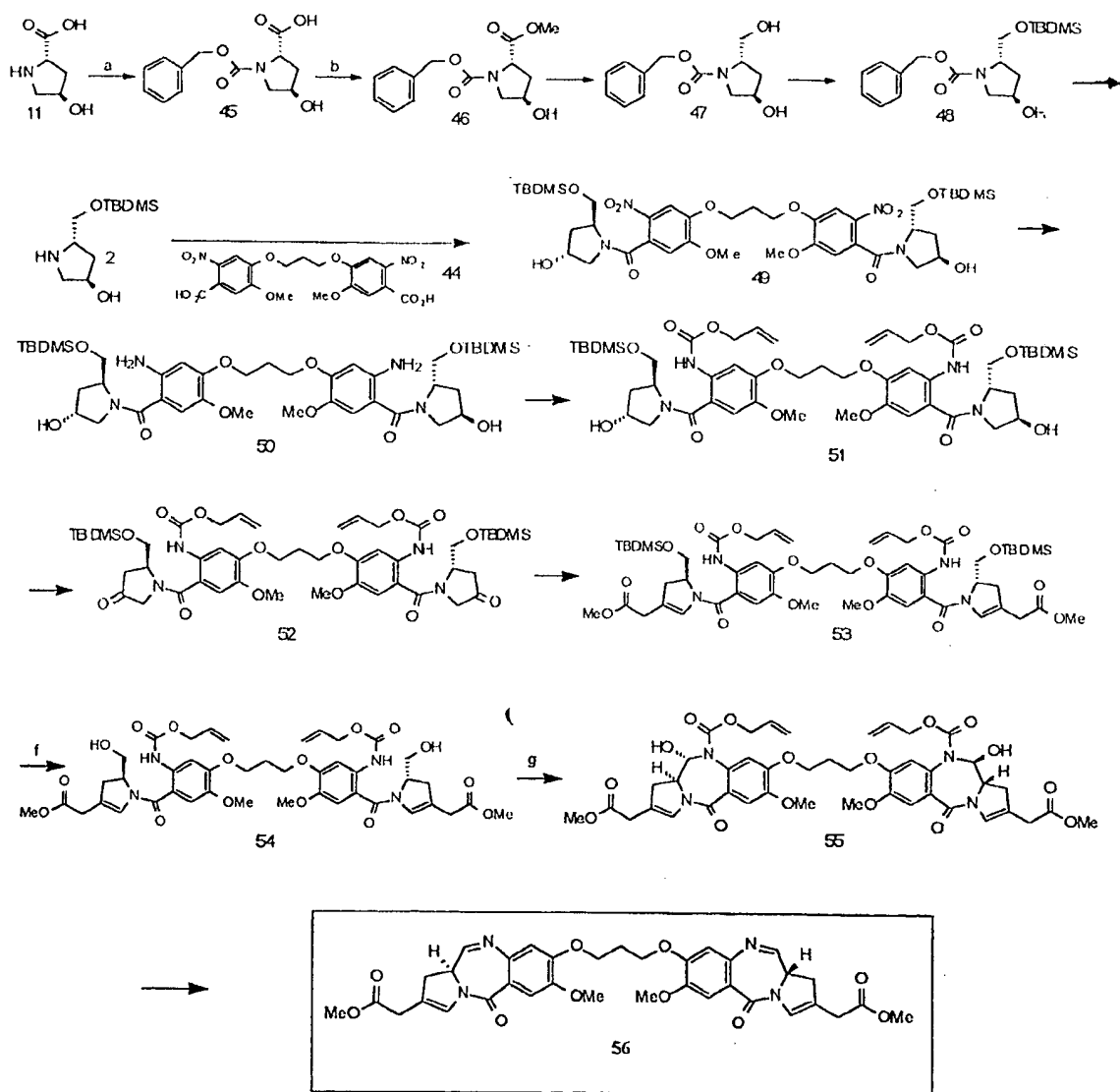


Figure 5

6/32

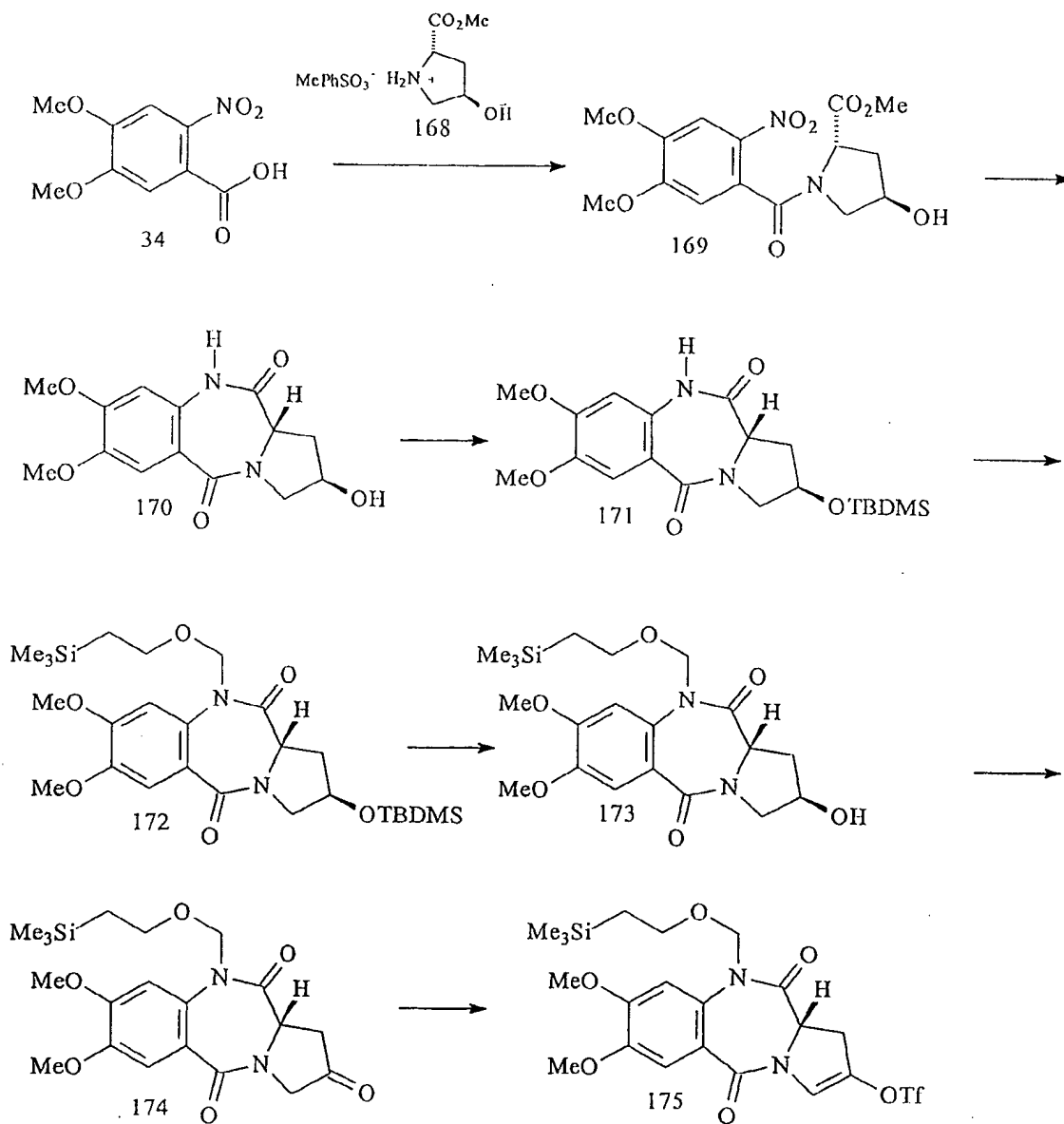


Figure 6a

7/32

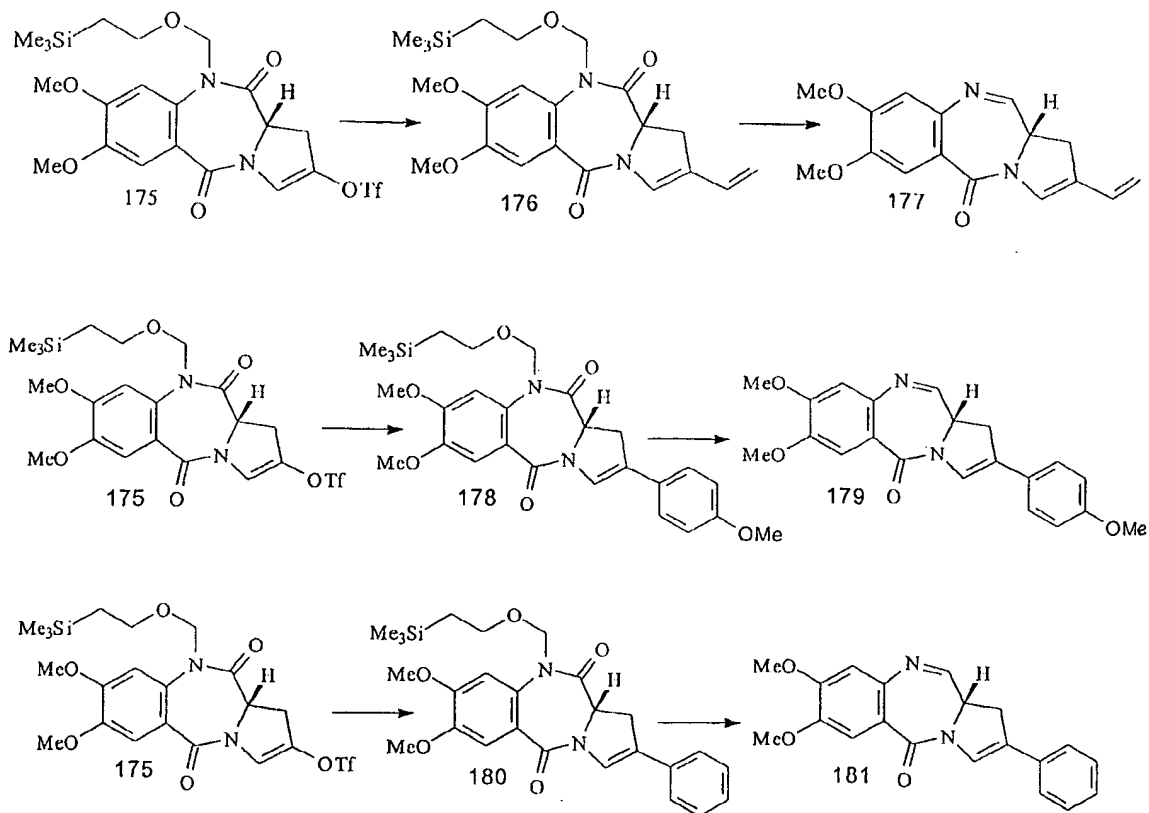


Figure 6b

8/32

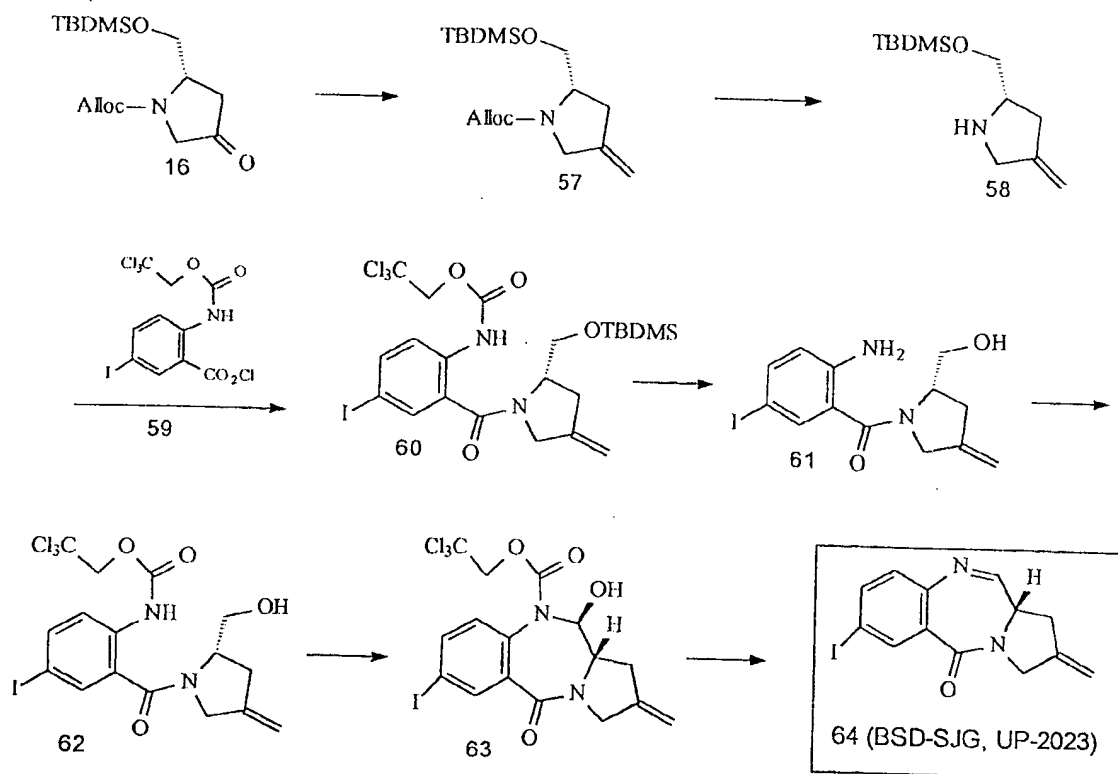


Figure 7

9/32

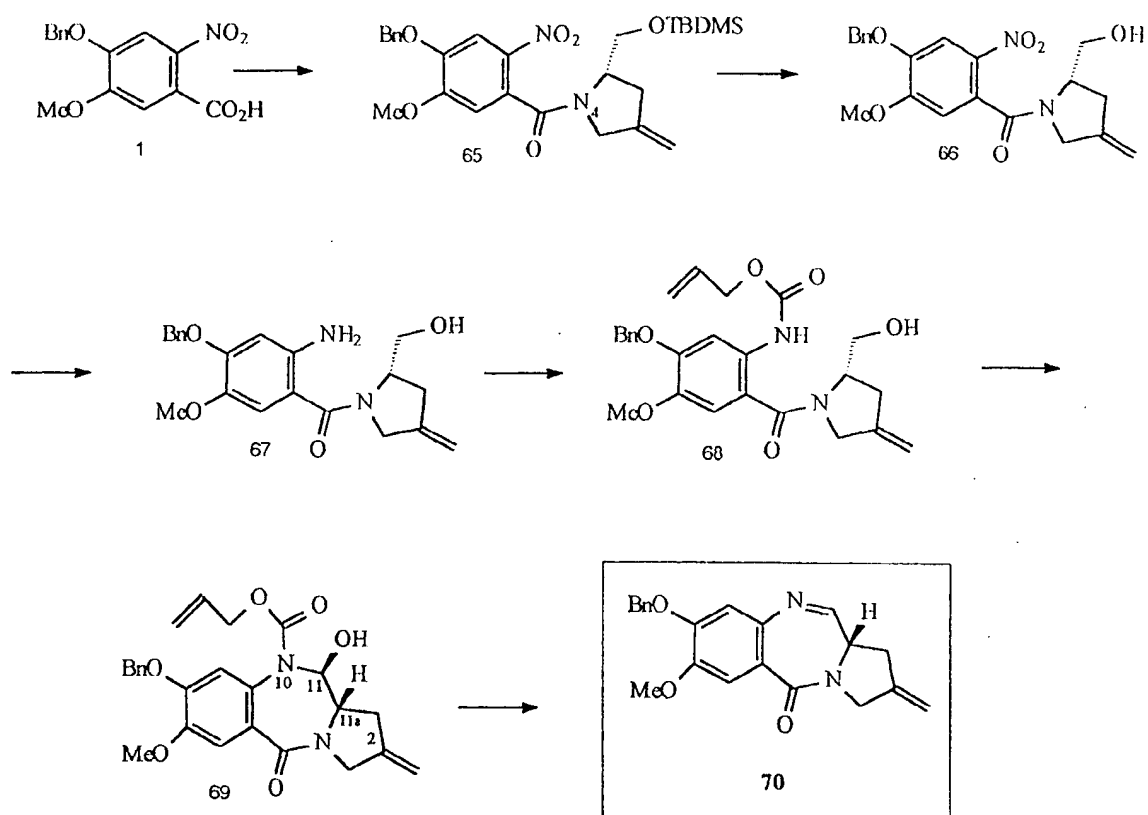


Figure 8

10/32

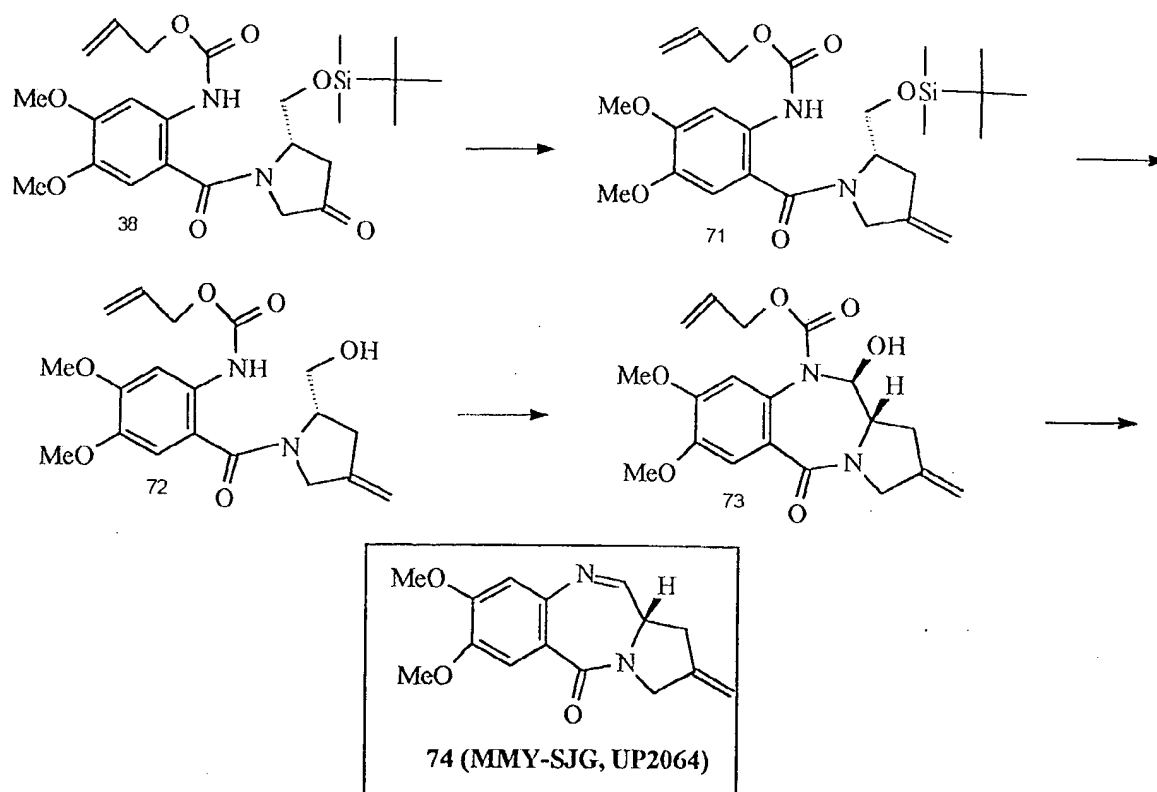


Figure 9

11/32

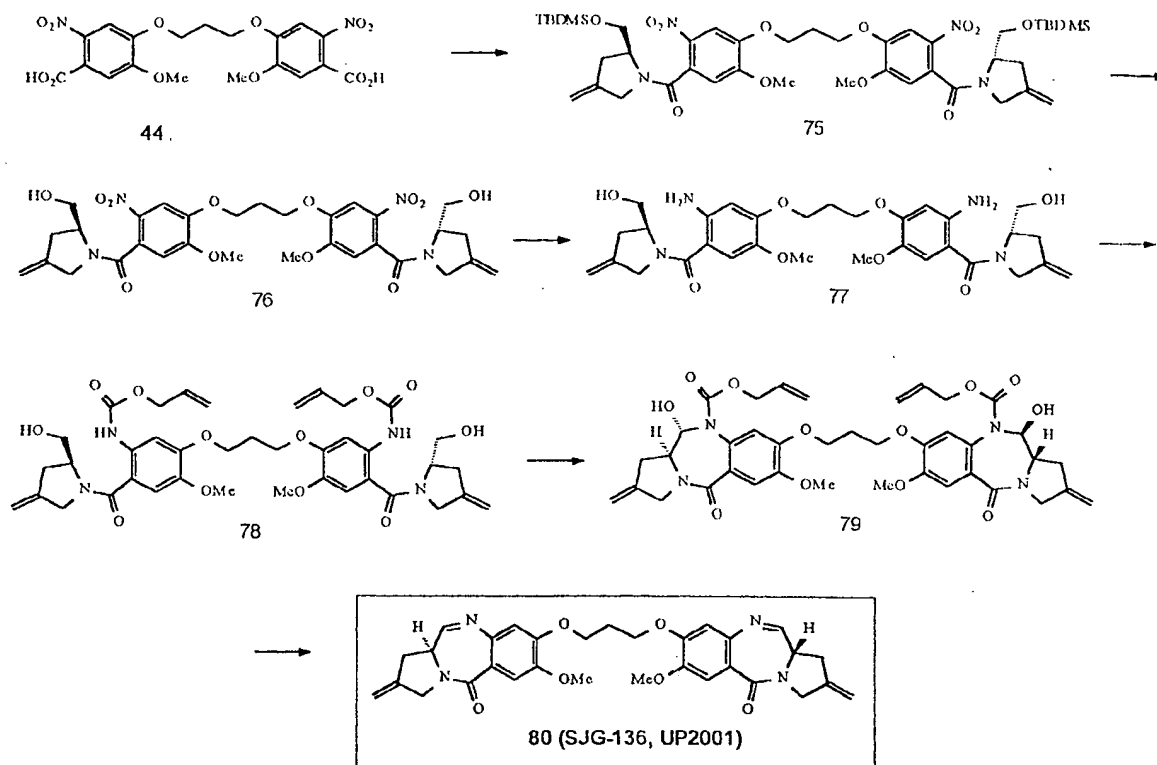


Figure 10



12/32

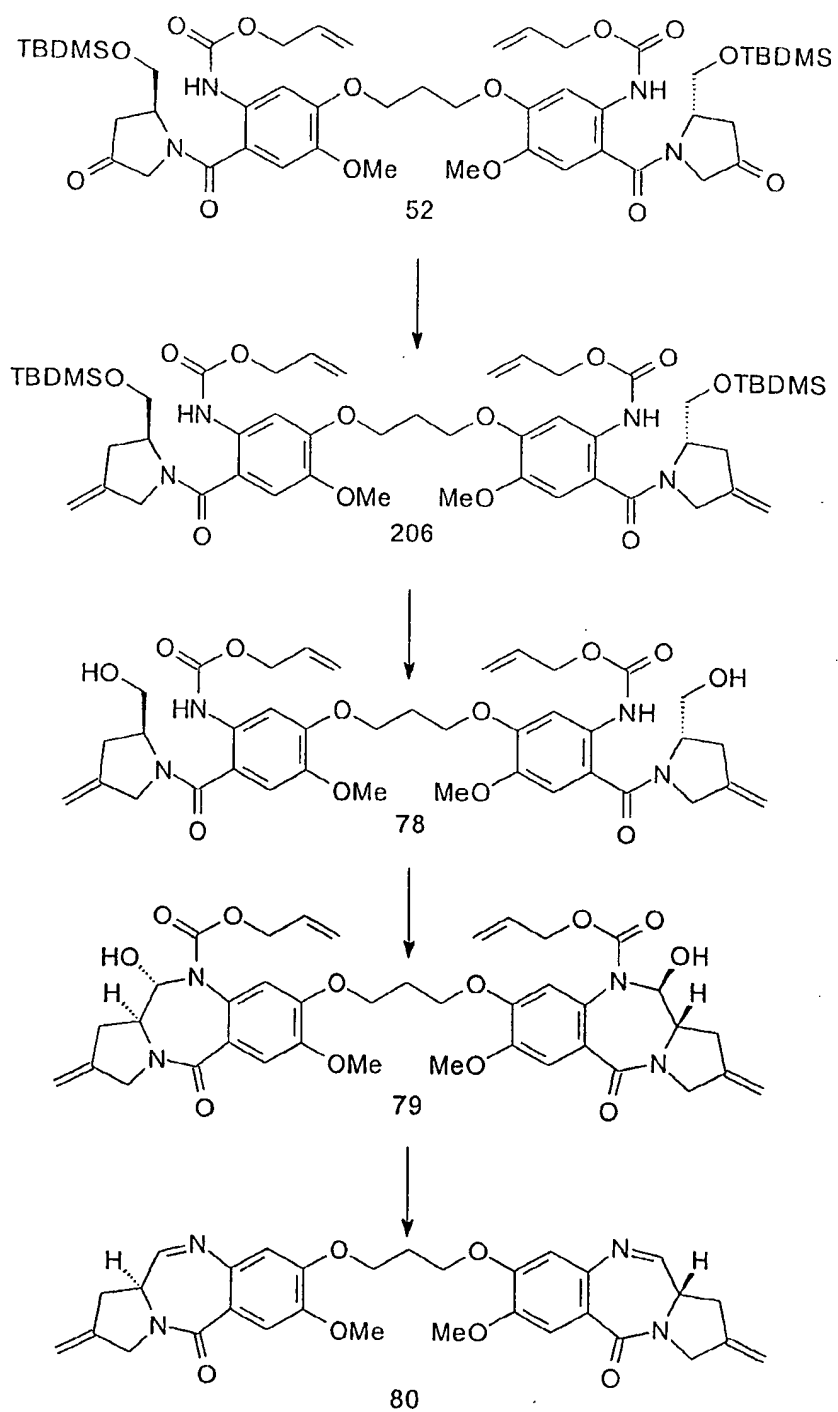


Figure 11

13/32

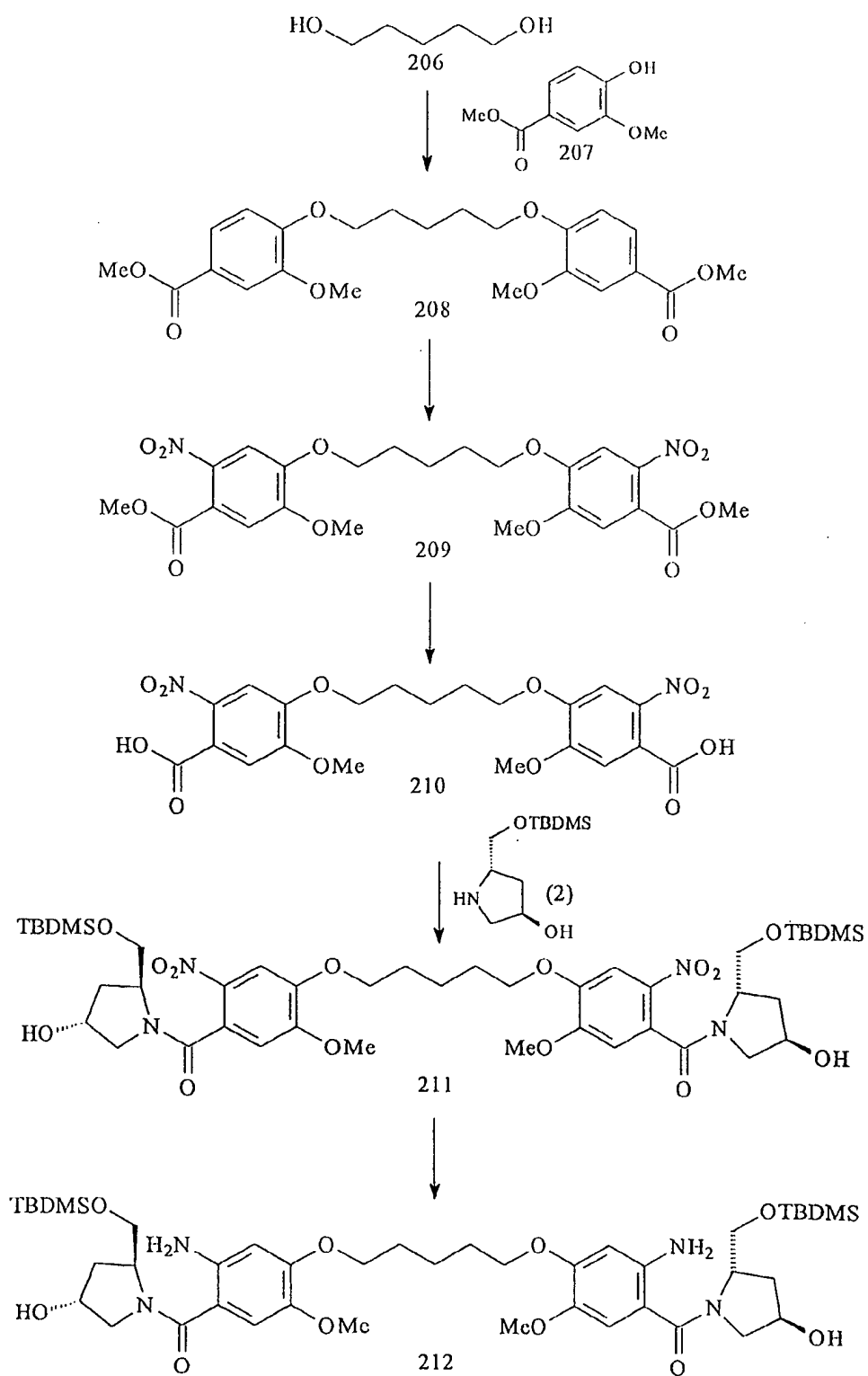
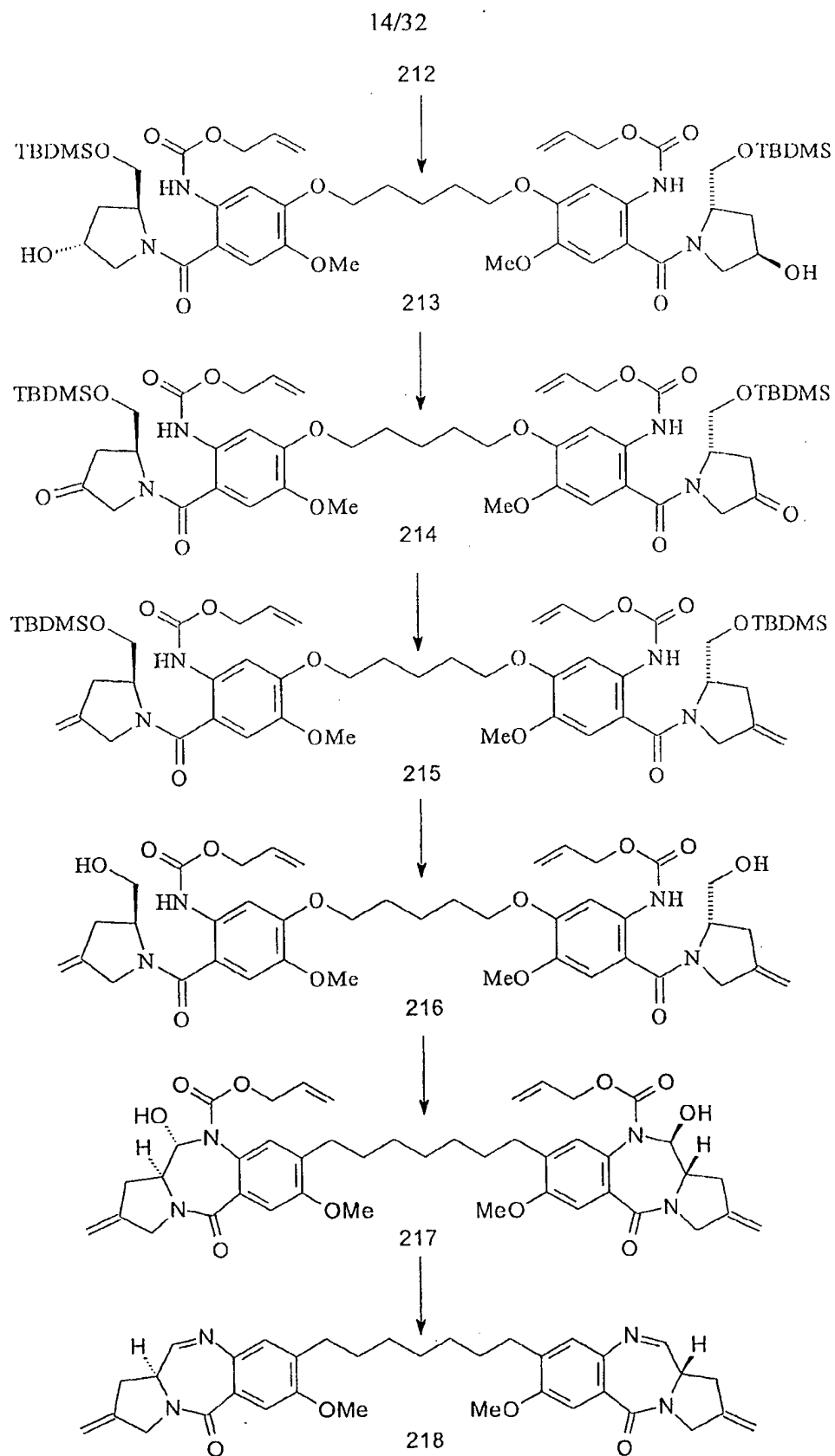


Figure 12a



15/32

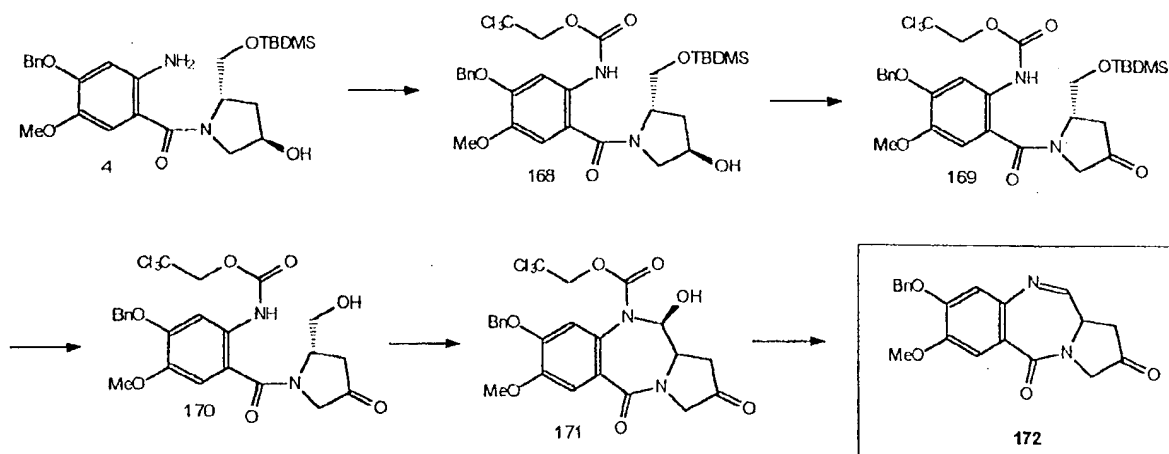


Figure 13

16/32

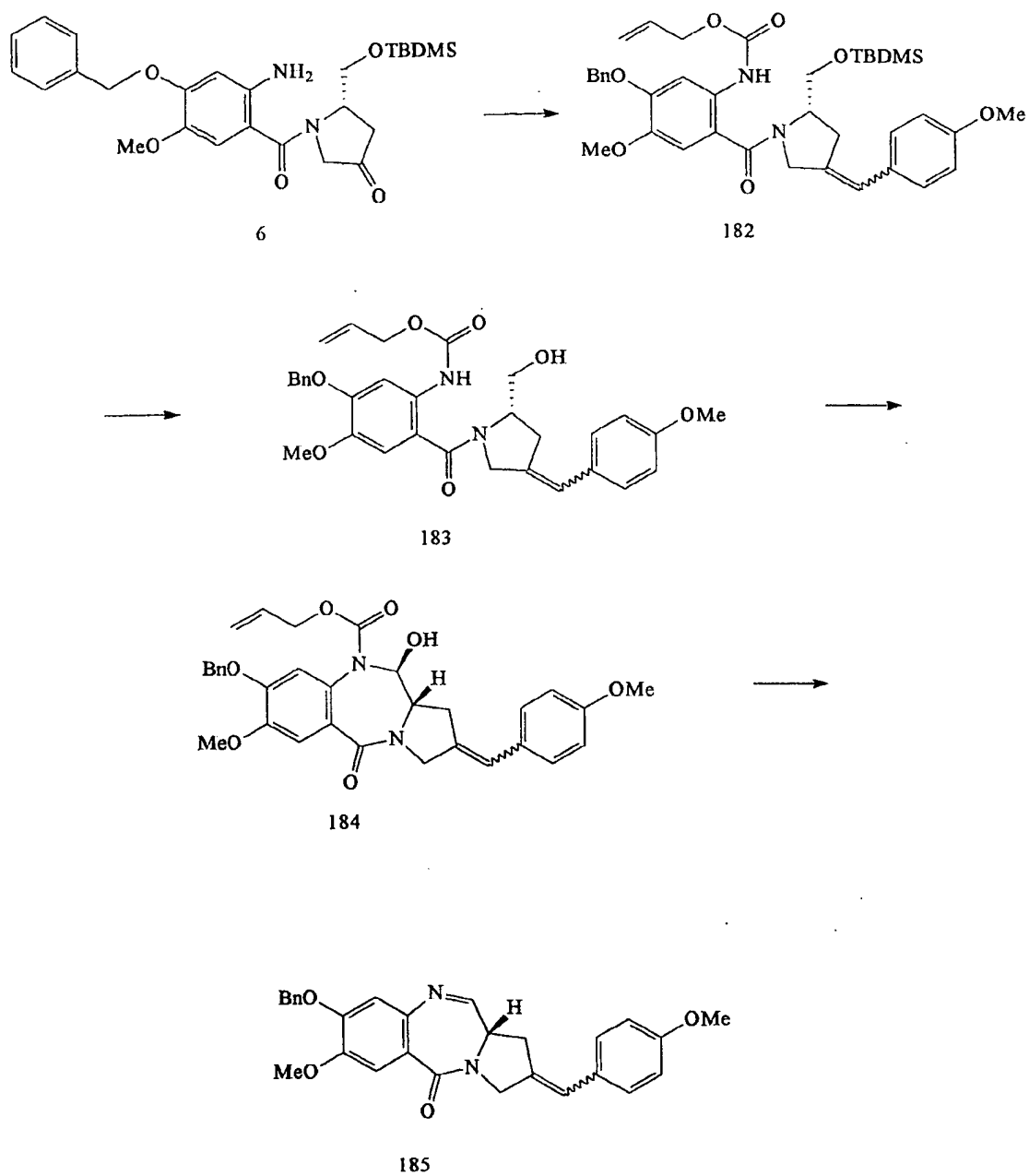


Figure 14

17/32

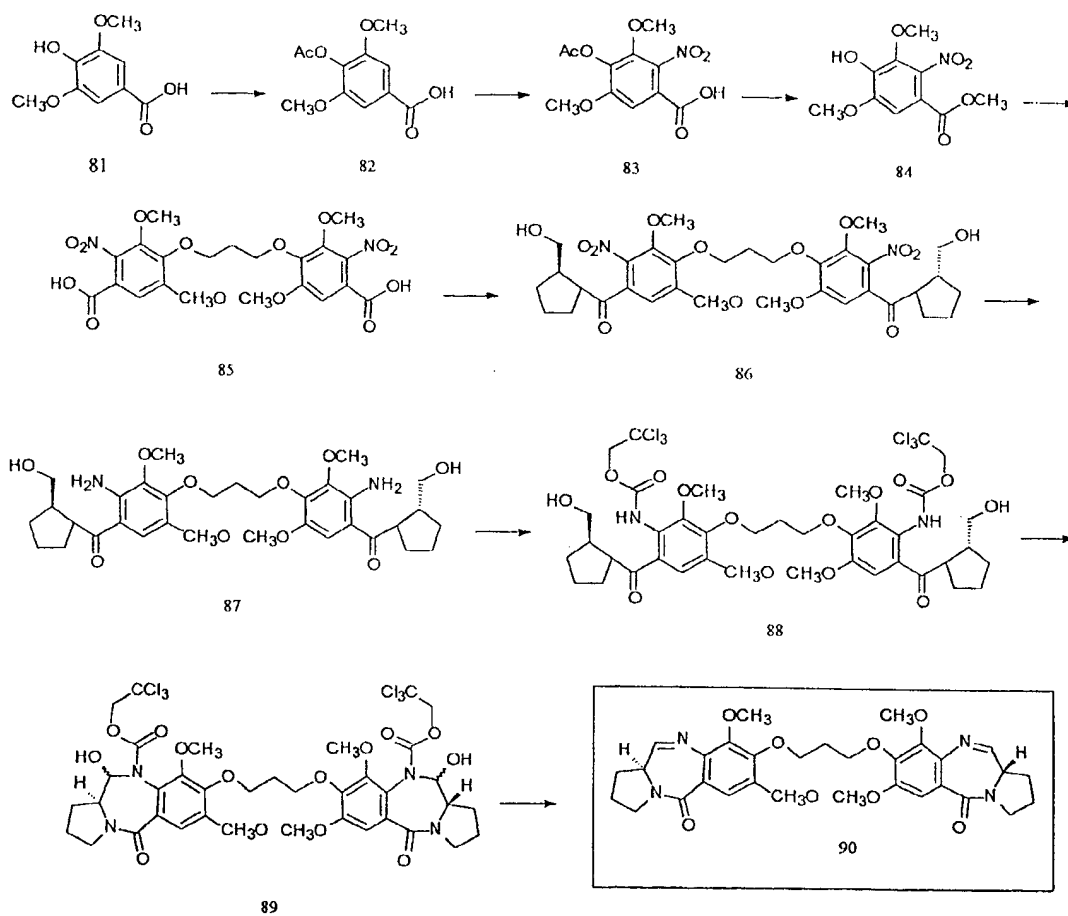


Figure 15

18/32

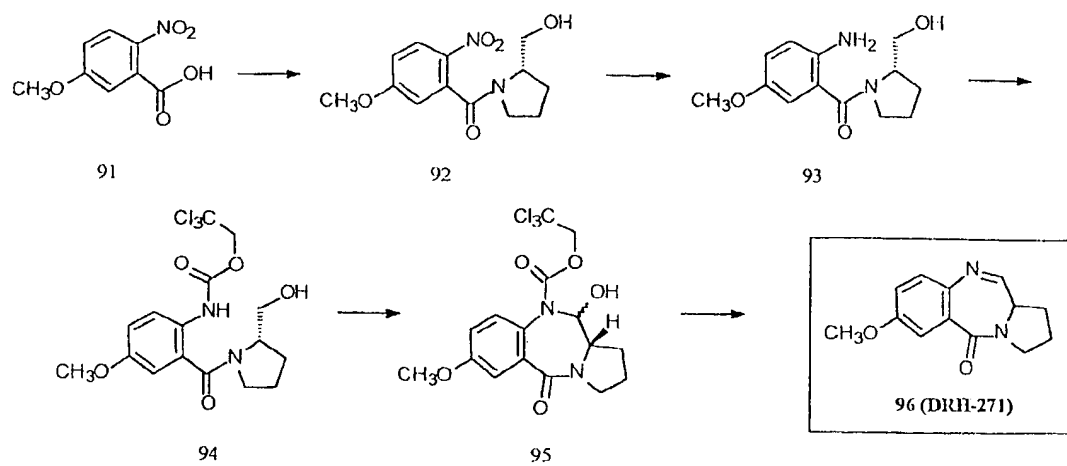


Figure 16

19/32

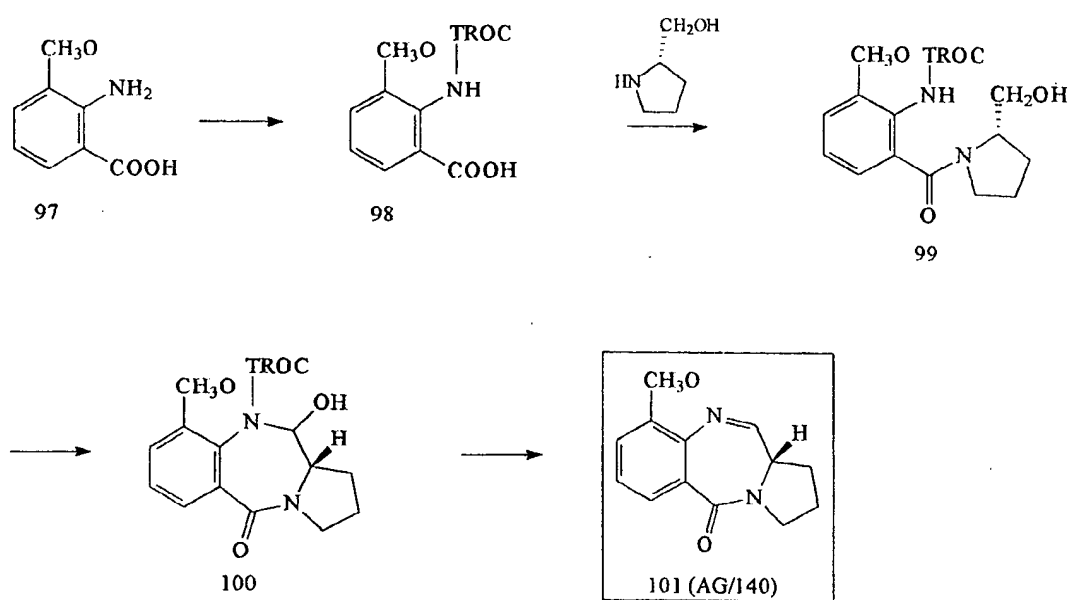


Figure 17



20/32

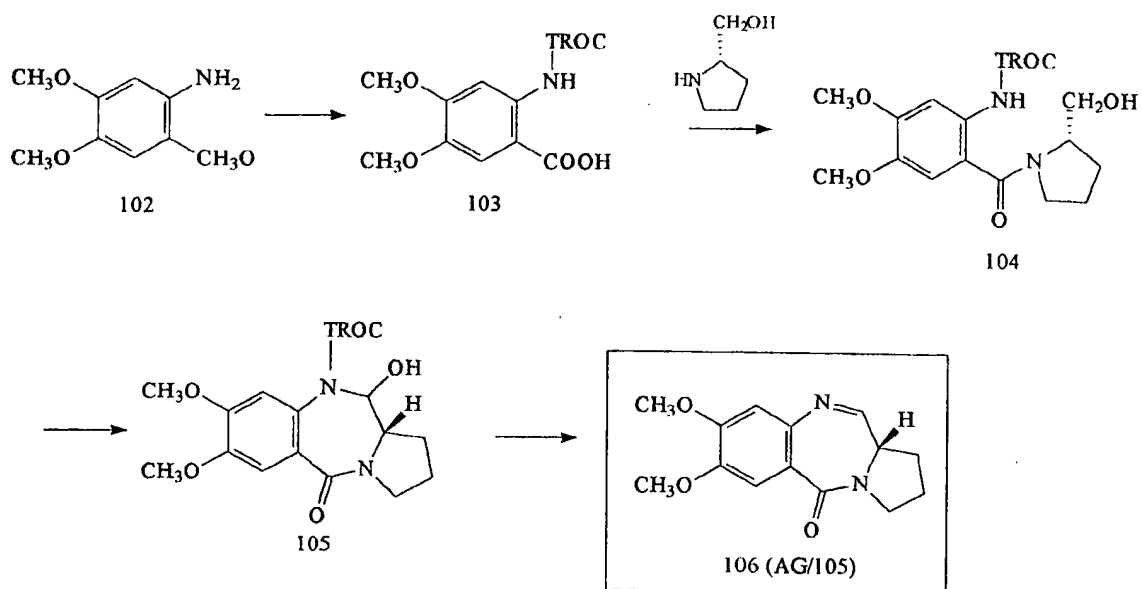


Figure 18

21/32

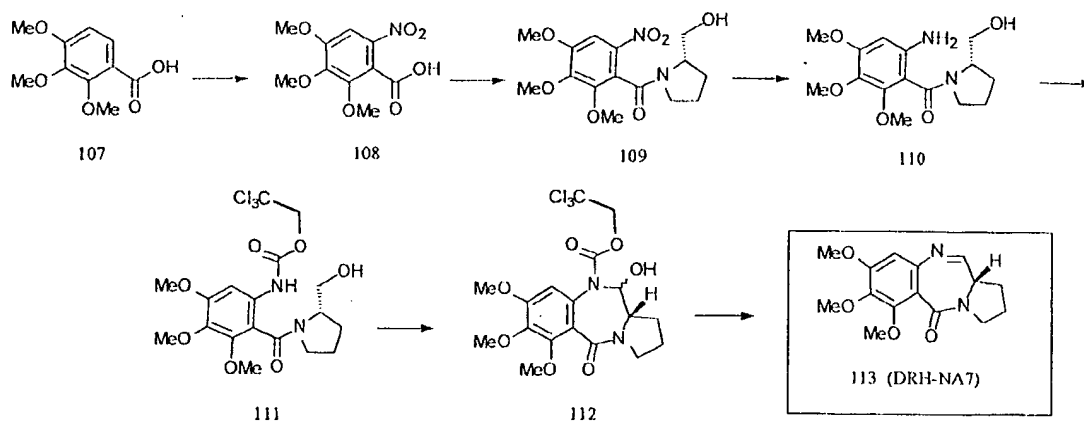


Figure 19

22/32

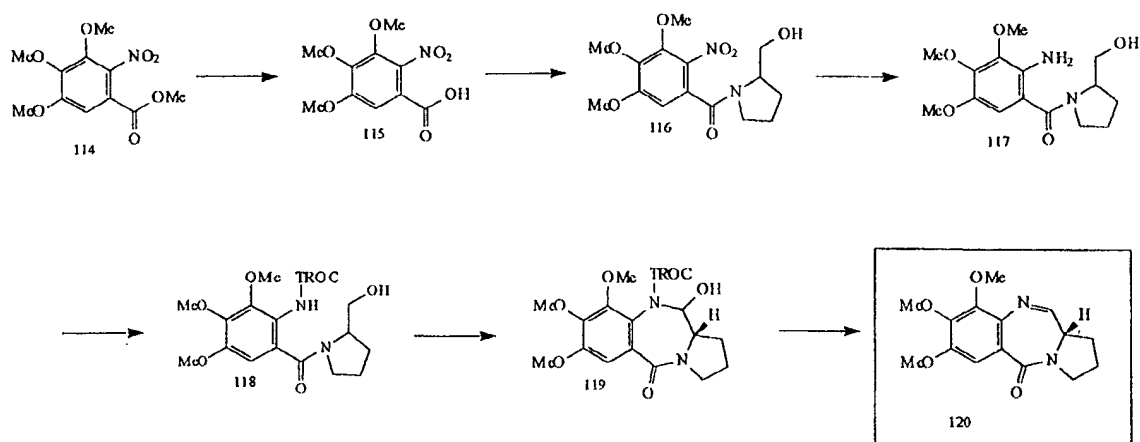


Figure 20

23/32

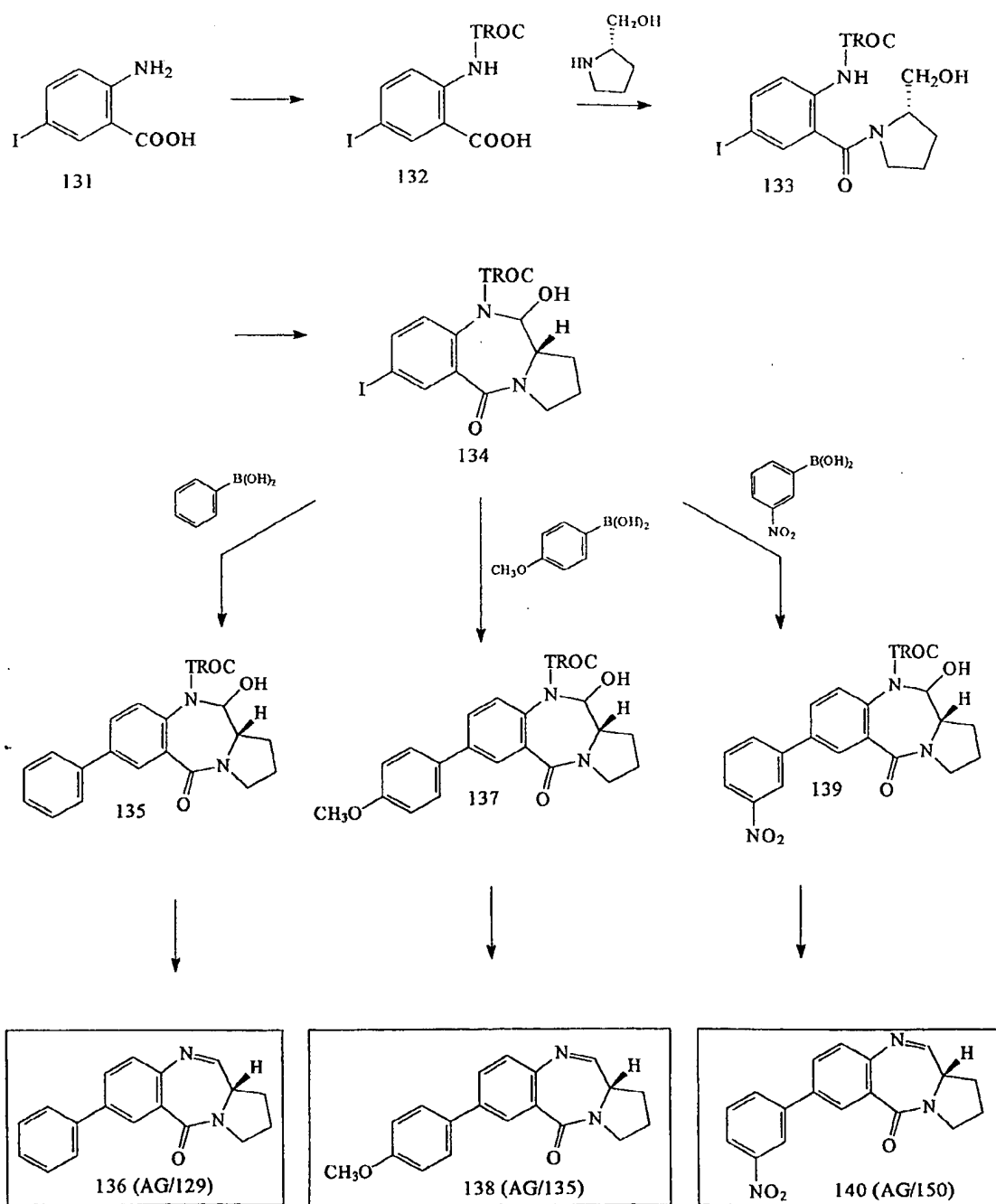


Figure 22

24/32

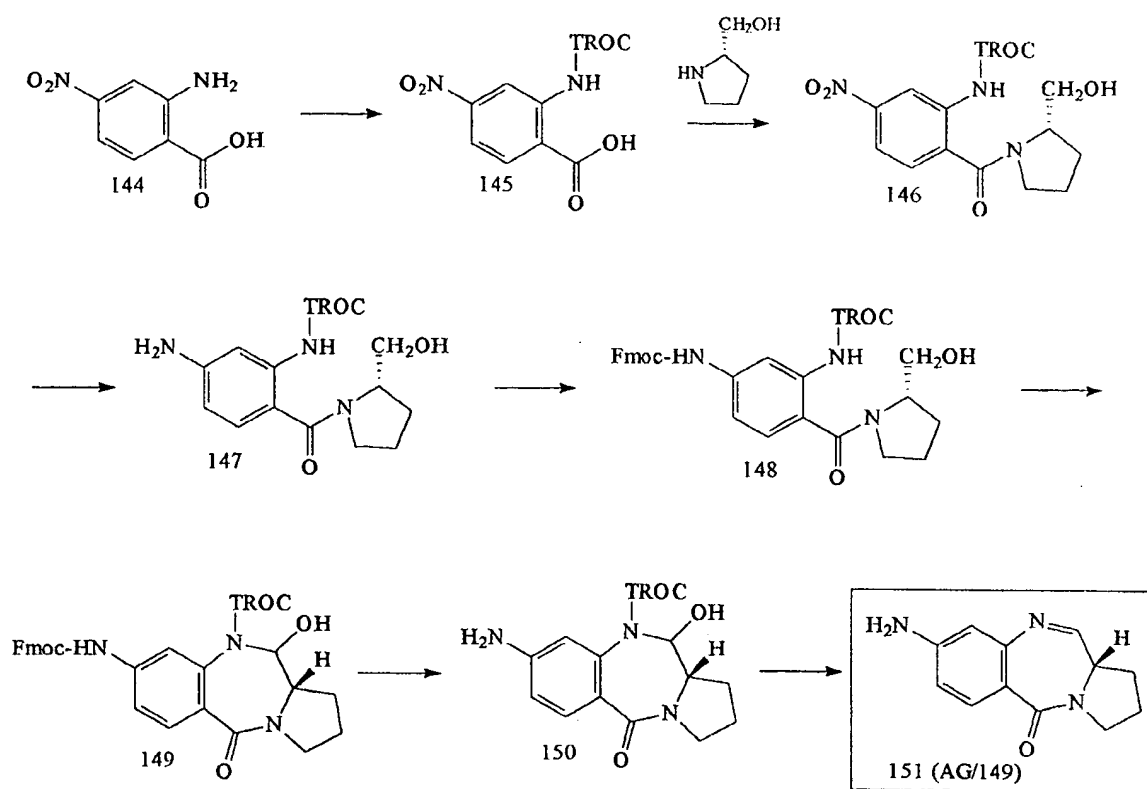


Figure 24

25/32

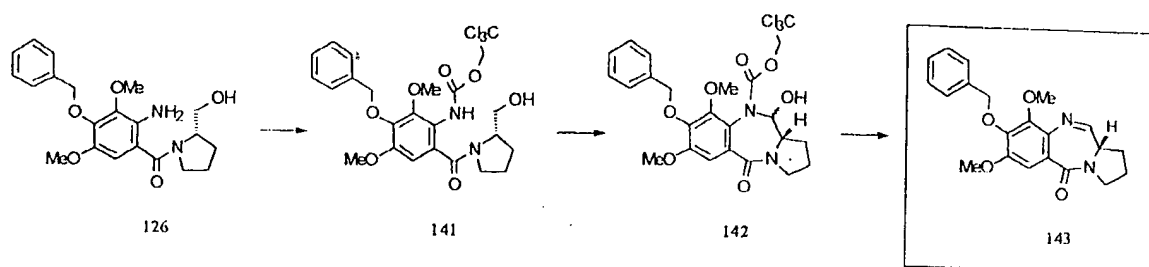


Figure 23

26/32

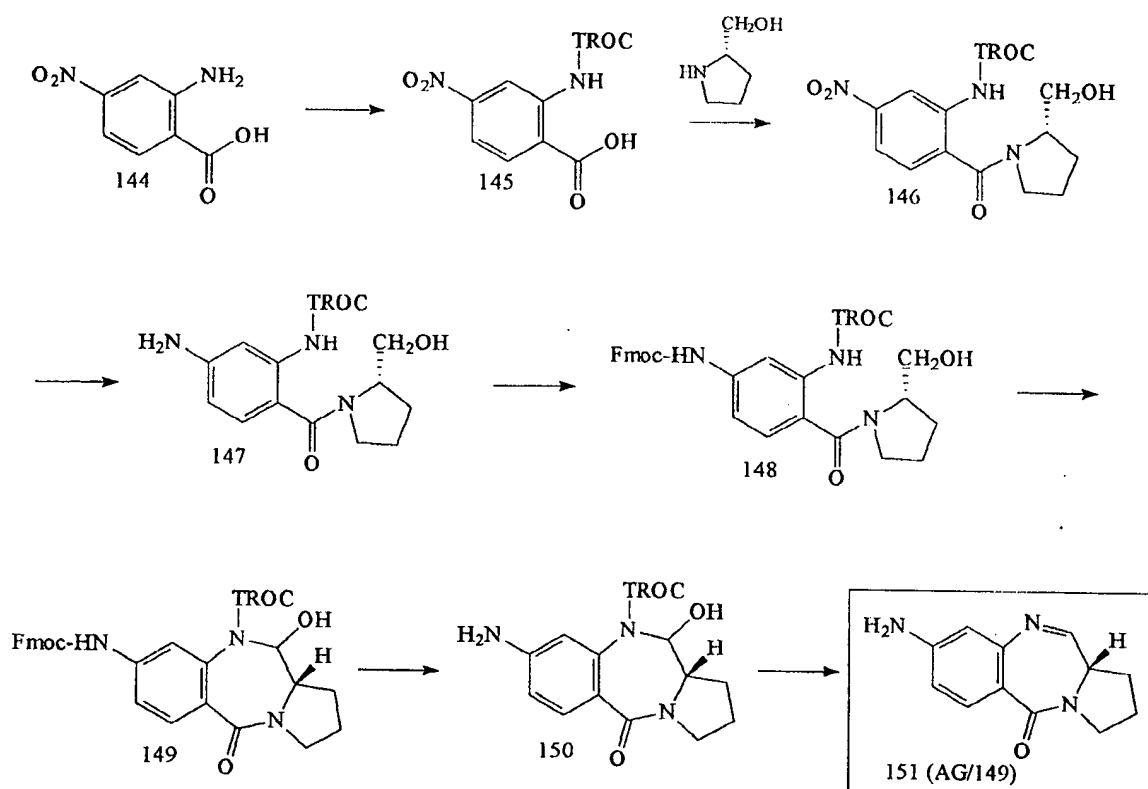


Figure 24

27/32

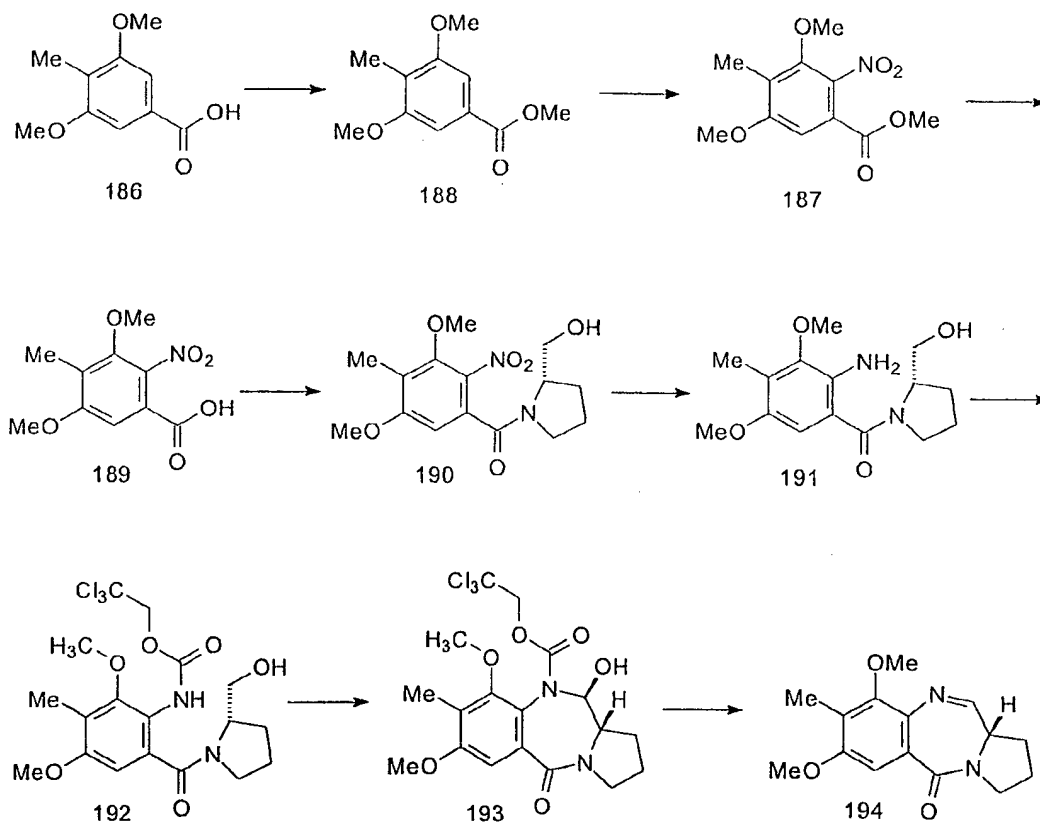


Figure 25



28/32

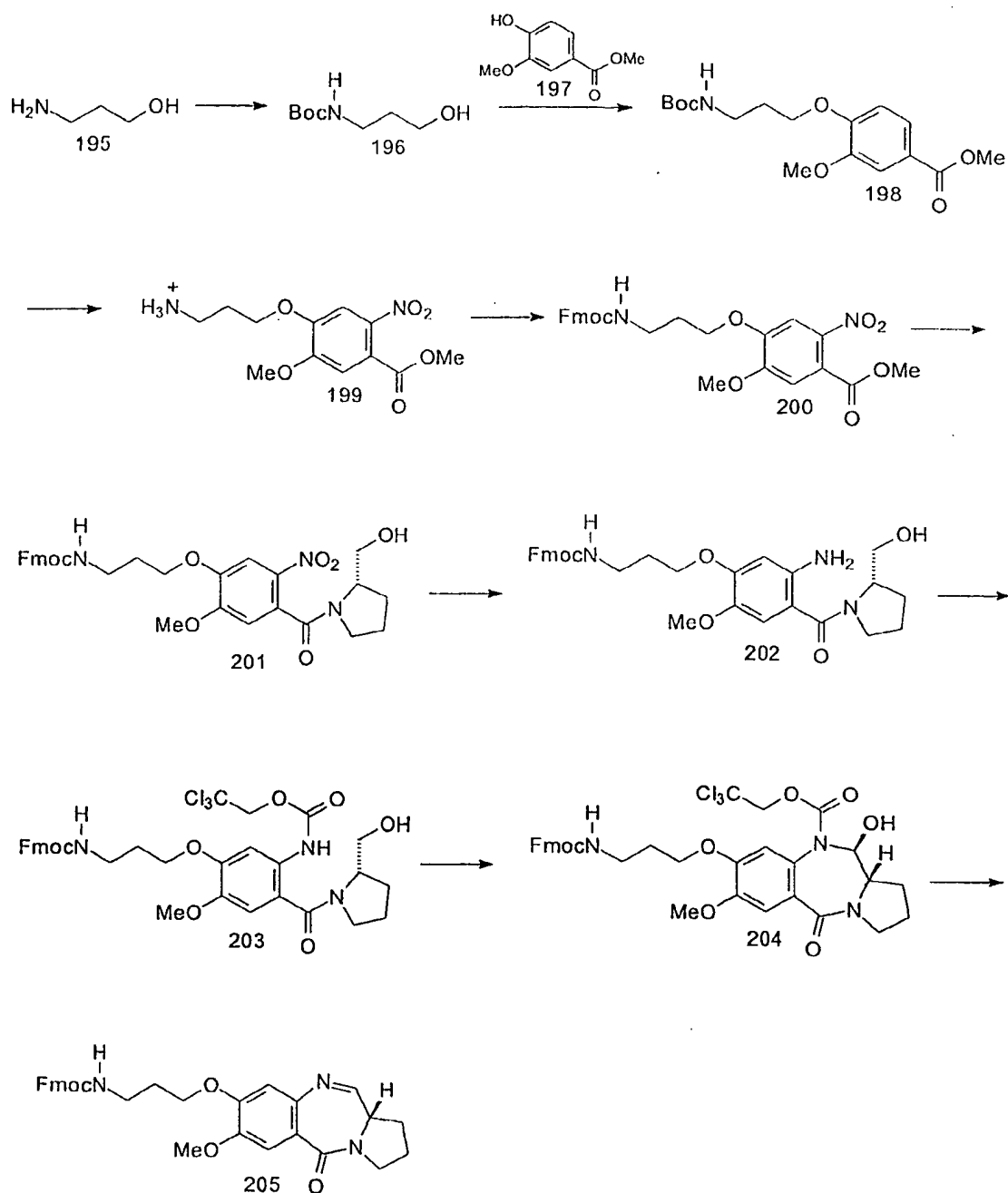


Figure 26

29/32

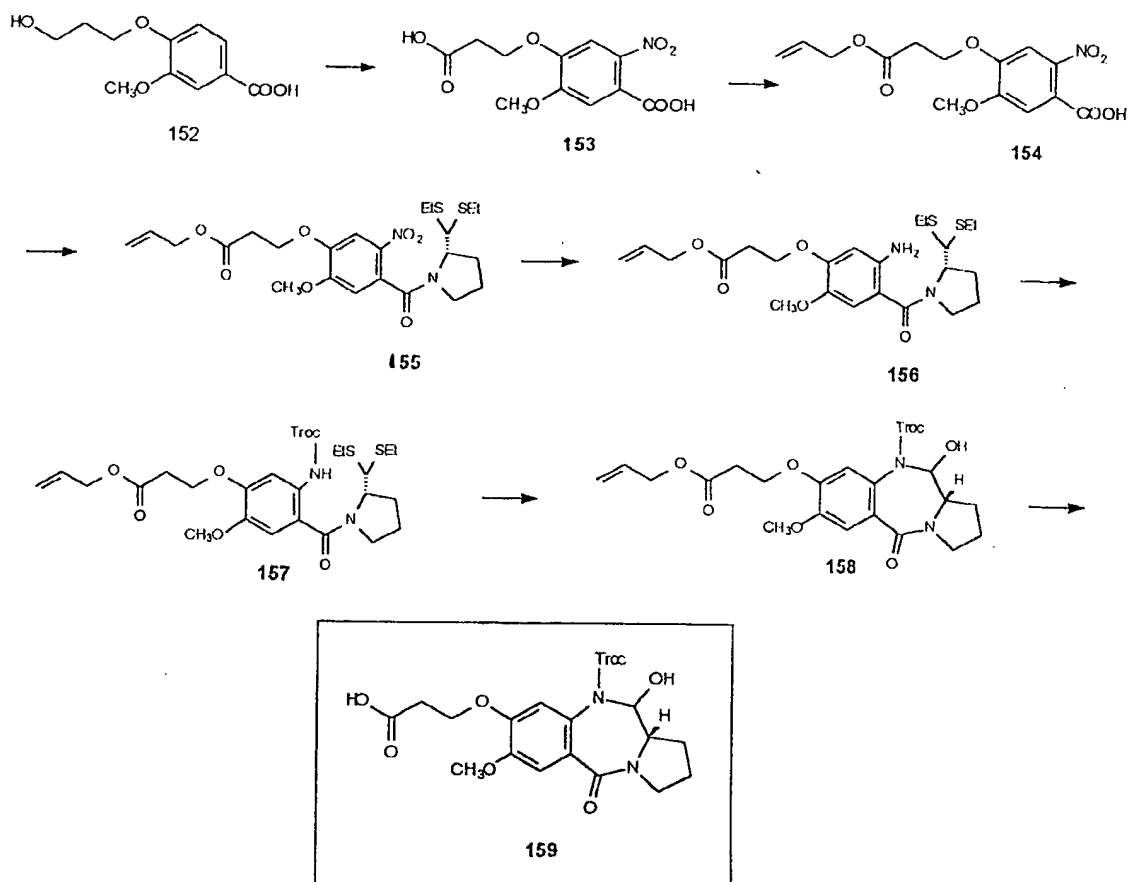


Figure 27

30/32

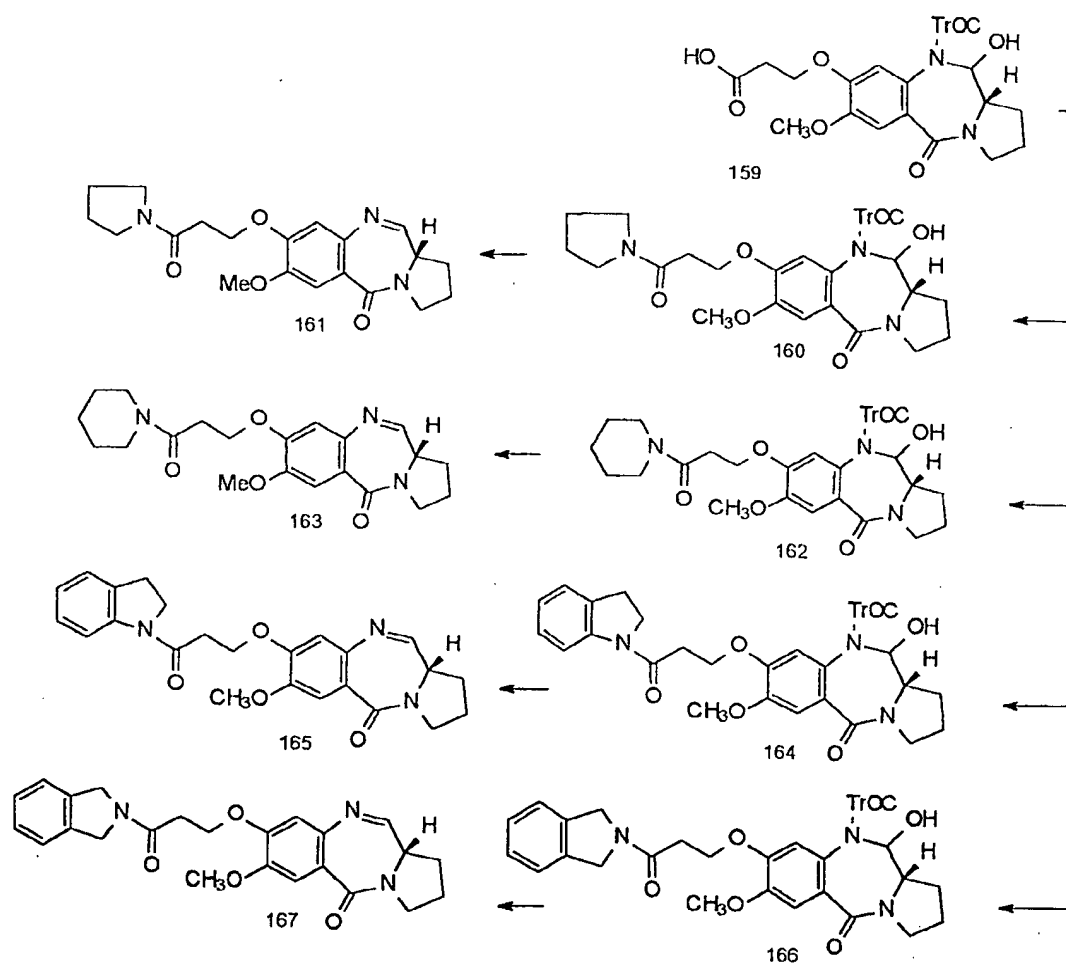


Figure 28

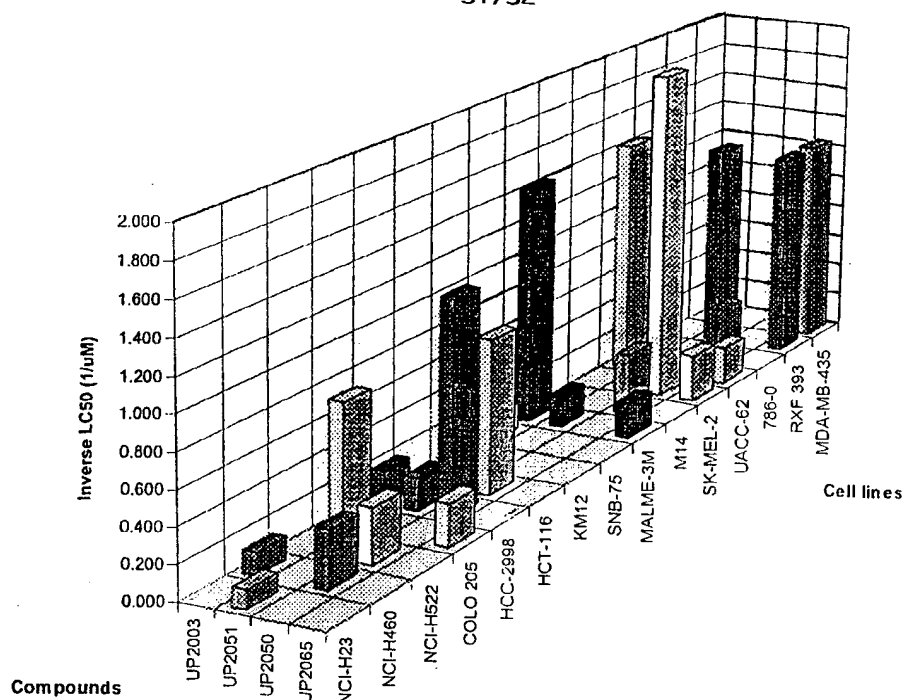


Figure 29

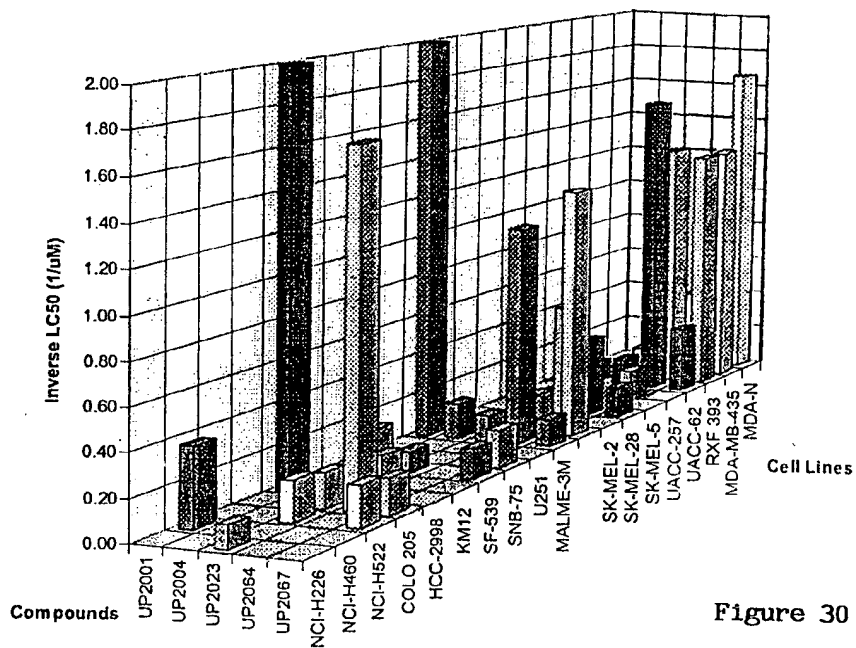


Figure 30

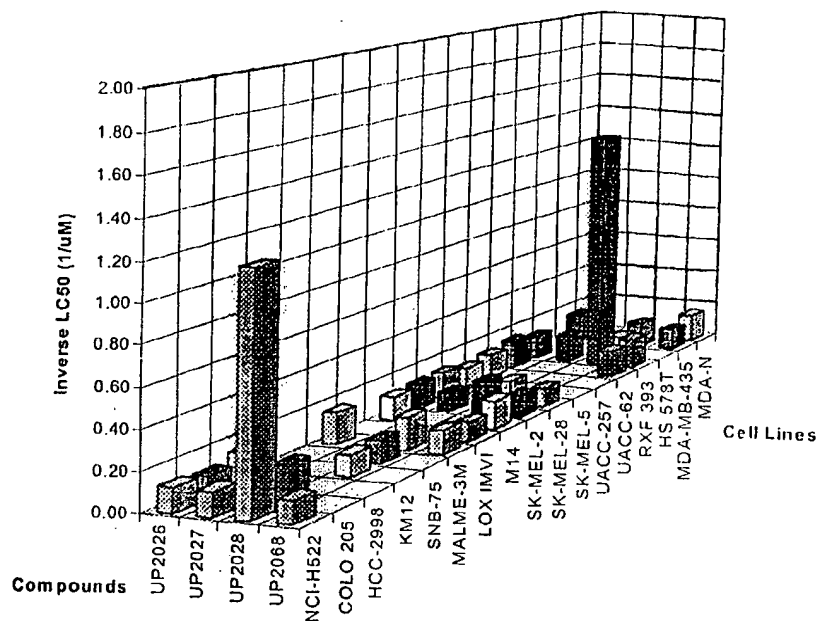


Figure 31

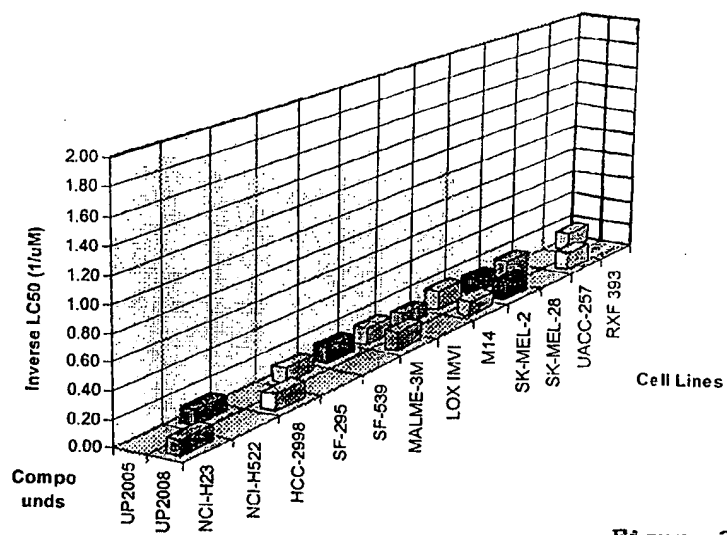


Figure 32